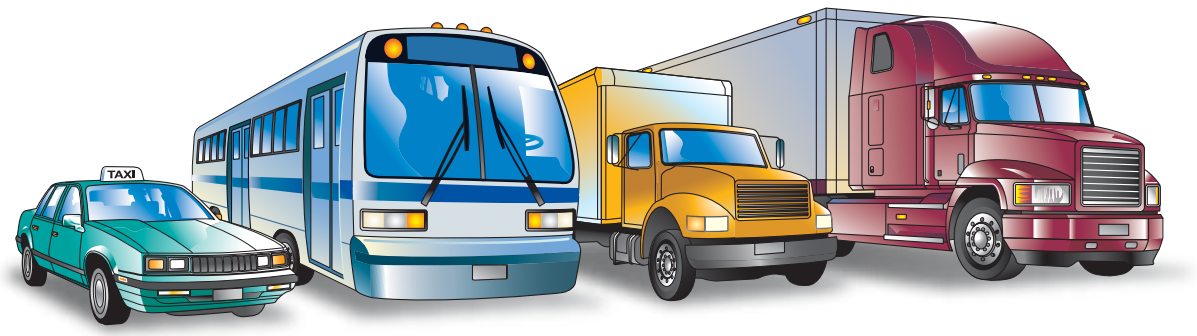
Yukon

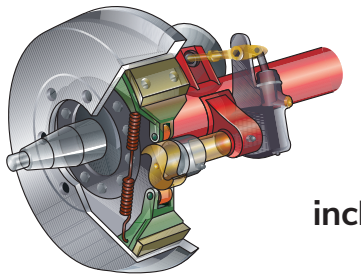
driving commercial vehicles

a guide for professional drivers
includes complete
information on air brakes

driving commercial vehicles

a guide for professional drivers





includes complete information on air brakes

ISBN 978-1-55362-703-6

Government of Yukon thanks the Government of British Columbia for giving us permission to use material from B.C.'s Driving Commercial Vehicles manual.

For more information contact:

Motor Vehicles Office, Gold Creek Building, 2251 Second Avenue, Box 2703, Whitehorse, Yukon, Y1A 2C6. Phone 867-667-5315, or toll-free in Yukon at 1-800-661-0408, extension 5315. Fax 867-393-6220. Online at www.hpw.gov.yk.ca/mv

Statement of Limitation

Yukon has prepared the Driving Commercial Vehicles manual from material in the B.C. Driving Commercial Vehicles manual to help you study for a Yukon commercial class driver's licence. The Manual is not intended to take the place of professional training. Government of Yukon does not claim that a person who studies the Driving Commercial Vehicles manual will be successful in getting the desired licence. Government of Yukon is not responsible for any consequences that may result from the use of this manual.

Throughout this Manual, references are made to acts and regulations that govern driving in Yukon. These references are written in plain language to help you understand their impact on individual drivers. If there are differences between the material in this manual and any of these acts or regulations, the acts and regulations apply.

This adaptation is not an ICBC publication and is not an official version of Driving Commercial Vehicles, A Guide for Professional Drivers and Air Brake Equipped Vehicle Drivers manual. It may not be based upon the most current version of Driving Commercial Vehicles, A Guide for Professional Drivers and Air Brake Equipped Vehicle Drivers manual published by ICBC. ICBC has not verified the content of this adaptation and makes no representation whatsoever as to its accuracy or currency.

ICBC is not responsible and accepts no liability of any kind for any consequences whatsoever that may result from the use of this publication.

contents

Introduction 1
Using this guide 1
Inside this guide 2
Licence study chart 2

Chapter 1 Getting your driver's licence 3
What you'll learn 3
Licence classes 3
Medical fitness 4
Vision 5
Air brake endorsement 5
How to apply for an air brake endorsement 5
How to apply for a Class 1, 2, 3 or 4 driver's licence 6
How to apply for a heavy trailer endorsement 6
Knowledge tests 7
Road testing 7
Pre-trip inspection test 8
Road test 8
Road test vehicles 9
Retest 10
Commercial driver training 11
Air brake courses 11
Keeping your licence 11
Upgrading your commercial licence 11
Downgrading to a non-commercial licence 11
Downgrading to a lower commercial licence class 12
Review questions 12

Chapter 2 Heavy vehicle braking 13
What you'll learn 13
Starting and stopping 13
Force multipliers 14
What's compressed air? 15
Leverage and air pressure 15
Power to move and power to stop 16
Stopping distance and stopping time 16
Speed and weight facts 17
How much heat can brakes handle? 18

Retarders ... 19
Using retarders ... 19
Braking ... 20
Icy roads ... 20
Downgrades ... 21
On highways ... 21
In town ... 22
Water on roadways ... 22
Runaway lanes ... 22
Combination unit braking ... 22
Anti-lock braking system ... 23
Automatic traction control ... 24
Review Questions ... 24

Chapter 3 **Basic driving skills** ... 25
What you'll learn ... 25
Sharing the road ... 25
Following distance ... 25
Taxi, limousine, ambulance or van ... 26
Bus, truck or other heavy vehicle ... 26
Traffic flow ... 26
Driving faster than the flow ... 26
Driving slower than the flow ... 27
Tailgaters ... 27
Construction zones ... 28
Danger zones ... 28
Manoeuvring ... 29
Steering into turns ... 29
Wheel positions during turns ... 29
Turning radius ... 29
Off track ... 30
Curves and turns ... 32
Curves ... 32
Negotiating narrow bridges ... 33
Turning right ... 33
Sharp right turns ... 34
Turning left ... 36
Traffic circles and roundabouts ... 36
Traffic circles ... 36
Roundabouts ... 37
Backing up ... 37
Backing up with a guide ... 39

Backing up without a guide ... 39
Seeing and being seen ... 40
Using your mirrors ... 41
Looking ahead ... 41
Which lane should you use? ... 41
Lane use ... 41
Emergency vehicles ... 42
Emergency workers on roads ... 42
Shifting gears ... 42
Knowing how to shift gears ... 43
Double-clutching ... 43
Knowing when to shift gears ... 43
Shifting skills ... 44
Shifting gasoline-powered (not governed) engines ... 44
Shifting gasoline- or diesel-powered governed engines ... 44
Multi-speed rear axles and auxiliary transmissions ... 45
Entering curves ... 45
Passing and being passed ... 45
Passing ... 46
Being passed ... 46
Parking ... 46
Crossings ... 47
Intersections ... 47
Alleys, lanes and side roads ... 48
Railway crossings ... 49
Controlled and uncontrolled crossings ... 49
Crossing in a large vehicle ... 49
Acts of nature ... 51
Animals on the road ... 51
Weather conditions ... 51
Night driving ... 52
Vehicle safety ... 53
Tires and wheels ... 53
Tire pressure ... 53
Tire wear ... 53
Tire condition ... 54
Tire problems ... 54
Disk wheel problems ... 55
Cast spoke wheel problems ... 55
Brake failure warning devices ... 55
Braking systems ... 55
Flashing lights ... 56

Disabled vehicles ... 56
Personal safety ... 57
Carbon monoxide poisoning ... 57
Seatbelts ... 57
Airbags and head restraints ... 58
Cellphones and other devices ... 58
Impairment ... 59
Criminal Code penalties ... 61
Other costs of impaired driving ... 61
Vehicle impoundment ... 61
Prescribed and over-the-counter drugs ... 62
Fatigue ... 62
Emotions ... 62
Fire ... 62
Firefighting ... 63
Fire extinguishers ... 63
Vehicles required to carry fire extinguishers ... 64
Review questions ... 64

Chapter 4 **Fuel-efficient driving** ... 65
What you'll learn ... 65
Fuel efficiency — a growing priority ... 65
Making smart choices ... 65
Smart driving practices ... 65
Preparation and planning ... 66
Fuel ... 66
Route planning ... 66
Dealing with the weather ... 66
Starting ... 66
Smart driving techniques ... 67
Start out easy ... 67
Choose the right gear ... 67
Ease off the throttle ... 67
Use see-think-do ... 67
Road and traffic conditions ... 68
Reduce idling ... 68
Maintaining your vehicle ... 69
Choosing a fuel-efficient vehicle ... 70
Choose the right truck ... 70
Look for aerodynamic features ... 70
Tire choice ... 71
Accessories ... 71

Review questions ... 72

Chapter 5 **Skills for driving trucks and trailers** ... 73
What you'll learn ... 73
Driving with a trailer ... 73
Backing up ... 73
Towing trailers ... 74
Towing doubles ... 74
Swerving and whipping ... 75
Parking ... 76
Preparing to tow ... 76
Coupling and uncoupling ... 76
Coupling with a fifth wheel ... 76
Uncoupling units ... 81
Other types of connections ... 83
Coupling with a pintle hitch ... 83
Uncoupling pintle hitch units ... 86
Loading ... 87
Loading cargo ... 87
Arranging and distributing loads ... 88
Securing cargo ... 90
General cargo securement requirements ... 90
General requirements for tiedowns ... 91
Number of tiedowns ... 91
Strength of tiedowns ... 93
Determining working load limit ... 93
Chain connector links ... 93
Front-end structures ... 98
Load projections ... 99
Specific cargo types ... 100
Logs ... 100
Building products ... 101
Metal coils ... 102
Paper rolls ... 102
Concrete pipe ... 102
Intermodal containers ... 103
Vehicles as cargo ... 104
Roll-on/roll-off and hook-lift containers ... 104
Boulders ... 105
Livestock ... 105
Hanging meat ... 105
Liquid or dry bulk tank loads ... 105

Transporting dangerous goods 105
Vehicle and load dimensions 107
Height 108
Width 108
Length 109
Weight 109
Oversize and overload permits 109
Overload permits 110
Oversize permits 110
Pilot cars 110
Signs 111
Distance from oversize vehicle 111
Reporting to weigh scales 111
Fixed weigh scales 112
Portable weigh scales 112
Review questions 113

Chapter 6 **Skills for driving buses, taxis and limousines** 115
What you'll learn 115
Passenger safety 116
Manoeuvring 116
Leaving the curb 117
Bus right-of-way 117
Passing parked cars 117
Operating a bus, taxi or limousine 118
Taking on and letting off passengers 118
Smoking 119
Focus on driving 119
Standing passengers 119
Refusing to transport passengers 119
Transporting people with disabilities 119
Inside lights 120
Vehicle cleanliness 120
Vehicle inspection 121
Emergency equipment and exits 121
Defects and breakdowns 121
Fuelling 121
Baggage 121
Smoking and using alcoholic beverages 122
Reporting a defect or deficiency 122
Operating a school bus 122
Unfit vehicles 123

Rental buses 123
Brake maintenance 123
Mechanical defects 123
Refuelling 123
Emergency equipment and exits 123
School bus signs 123
Exterior mirrors 124
Passengers must be seated 124
Cleanliness 124
Taking on and letting off passengers 124
Operating emergency vehicles 125
Review questions 126

Chapter 7 **Hours of service requirements** 129
What you'll learn 129
National safety code 129
Hours of service 129
On-duty time 130
Off-duty time 130
Day 130
Work shift 131
Daily hours (cycles) 132
Deferring off-duty time 132
Reset provision 133
Sleeper berth 133
Personal use exemption 135
Logbooks 135
Sample logbook 136
Drivers operating within 160 km of home terminal 137
Other jurisdictions 137
Driving north of the 60th parallel 137
Driving into the U.S. 138
Review questions 140

Chapter 8 **Air brakes** 141
What you'll learn 141
Why air brakes? 141
Basic air brake components 142
Air brake chamber components 142
Long stroke and regular stroke brake chambers 143
Air brake chamber — air pressure applied 143
Foundation brakes: s-cam type 144

Compressor 145
Intake stroke 146
Compression stroke 147
Governor 147
Reservoirs 148
Foot valve 148
How air brakes work 149
Brakes applied 149
Brakes released 150
Dual air brake systems 150
Components of a dual air brake system 151
Supply, primary and secondary reservoirs 151
One-way check valve 151
Reservoir pressure gauges 152
Low-air warning device 152
Quick release valve 153
Relay valve 154
Dual system with primary system failure 155
Parking brakes 155
Spring parking brakes 156
Applying and releasing spring parking brakes 157
Spring parking brake — released 157
Spring parking brake — service brake applied 158
Spring parking brake — spring brake applied 159
Driver alert — compounding of brakes 159
Spring parking brake — manual release 159
Spring parking brakes in dual air brake systems 160
Blended air 161
Dual air brake system — partial system failure 161
Safety actuator parking brakes 162
Tractor-trailer air brake systems 163
Trailer with relay emergency valve — charging 164
Trailer with relay emergency valve — applying 164
Trailer with relay emergency valve — dynamited 165
Trailer with spring parking brakes — charging 165
Trailer with spring parking brakes — service brake application 166
Trailer with spring parking brakes — dynamited 167
Tractor protection 167
Trailer air supply valve 168
Hand valve 168
Two-way check valve 169
Bobtail tractors 169

Dual air tractor-trailer system — foot valve applied 170
Dual tractor-trailer system — primary air system failure 171
Dual tractor-trailer system — trailer breakaway 172
Other types of foundation brakes 172
Wedge brakes 173
Air disc brakes 173
Air-over-hydraulic brakes 174
Other air brake system components 175
Air dryers 175
Alcohol evaporators and alcohol injectors 176
Automatic drain valves 176
Front wheel limiting systems 177
Automatic front wheel limiting systems 177
Manual front wheel limiting systems 177
Spring parking brake emergency release system 178
Pressure protection valves 178
Application pressure gauges 178
Anti-lock braking systems 179
Trailer ABS air brake systems 180
Review questions 181

Chapter 9 **Air brake adjustment** 183
What you'll learn 183
Brake adjustment — it's critical 183
Brake adjustment — it's the law 183
S-cam brake — released 183
S-cam brake — applied 184
S-cam brake — incorrectly adjusted and cold brake drum 184
S-cam brake — incorrectly adjusted and hot brake drum 185
Checking and adjusting s-cam brakes — manual slack adjuster 185
Applied stroke method (service brake application) 186
Pry method of free stroke measurement 186
Brake adjustment indicators 187
Brake adjustment — manual slack adjuster 187
Adjustment 188
S-cam brakes — automatic slack adjuster 189
Checking and adjusting automatic slack adjusters 189
Slack adjusters with hexagonal adjusting bolts 190
Slack adjusters with square adjusting bolts 191
Air brake adjustment myths 191
Review questions 192

Chapter 10 **Vehicle and air brake pre-trip inspections** 193
What you'll learn 193
You're responsible 193
Vehicle condition 194
Cargo securement 194
Written report requirements 195
Pre-trip inspection report for your road test 195
Conducting a pre-trip inspection 197
Before you begin 197
Tractor-trailer combination pre-trip inspection — Class 1 198
1. Under hood 199
2. In cab 200
3. Air brake system test 202
4. Circle check for lights 203
5. Mechanical circle check 203
6. Brake response, tug and steering wheel slack tests 207
Inspecting double trailers 207
Single unit truck pre-trip inspection — Class 3 208
1. Under hood 209
2. In cab 210
3. Air brake system test 212
4. Circle check for lights 212
5. Mechanical circle check 213
6. Brake response, tug and steering wheel slack tests 215
Bus pre-trip inspection — Class 2 or Class 4 (unrestricted) 216
1. Engine compartment 217
2. In cab 218
3. Circle check 220
4. Passenger compartment check 222
5. Brake response, tug and steering wheel slack tests 222
Passenger vehicle pre-trip inspection — Class 4 223
1. Under hood 223
2. In passenger compartment 224
3. Circle check 225
4. Brake response tests 226
Pre-hill inspections 227
In-service brake checks 227
En route inspections 228
Post-trip inspections 229
Lights and reflectors 229
Review questions 230

Chapter 11 Signs, signals and road markings 231
What you'll learn 231
Signs 231
Regulatory signs 232
School, playground and crosswalk signs 233
Lane use signs 233
Turn control signs 234
Parking signs 234
Reserved lane signs 234
Warning signs 235
Object markers 236
Construction signs 237
Information and destination signs 237
Railway signs 238
Signals 238
Lane control signals 238
Traffic lights 239
Road markings 240
Yellow lines 240
White lines 241
Reserved lane markings 242
Other markings 242
Review questions 243

Chapter 12 For more information 245
Dangerous goods 245
In case of an emergency 245
Federal contacts 245
Canadian Transport Emergency Centre (CANUTEC) 245
Transport Canada 246
Commercial vehicle information 246
Licensing information 246
Medical qualifications 246
Acts and regulations 246
National Safety Code 246
Other acts and regulations 246
Travel information 247
Road reports (B.C.) 247
Weather 247
Travelling into the U.S. 247
Canada Customs 247

Reporting forest fires 247
Taxi 247
Metric conversion table 248

introduction

Operating commercial vehicles or vehicles equipped with air brakes requires special knowledge and skill, and the cost of a mistake can be very high. When large vehicles are involved in crashes, the damage — to vehicles, cargo and human lives — can be catastrophic. Almost all these crashes are preventable and you can help ensure they don't happen.

Yukon government and the commercial transport industry are working together to reduce the number and the severity of crashes. You have the most important role in preventing crashes, since most are caused by driver error.

The *Commercial Vehicles Handbook* gives you the information you need to apply for a Class 1, 2, 3 or 4 commercial licence, or an air brake endorsement or heavy trailer endorsement. To become a professional driver, you'll need to learn and practise the skills described in this guide.

This guide also includes information and tips on fuel-efficient driving habits and practices that can reduce fuel consumption and emissions.

Skill and ability alone aren't enough. You also need a professional attitude when you sit behind the wheel. Your safety and the safety of others will depend on your knowledge, attitude and actions.

Using this guide

This guide contains the basic information you need to take the tests you must pass to qualify for a commercial licence, an air brake endorsement or a heavy trailer endorsement. It's also designed to be used as a source text — if you're taking an approved air brake course.

The tests you take will depend on the class of licence or endorsement you want.

This guide can provide you with information on how to drive and information on air brake systems but it's not a training manual. Once you have your full class 5 licence, you along with your appropriately licenced co-driver may begin gaining the practical experience you'll need to pass the required road test. You must spend time operating the type of vehicle you want to be licensed for. You'll also need instruction from an appropriately licensed driver or from a professional driver training facility. You may find additional helpful information in manufacturer's books, such as your vehicle's transmission guide, and in other reference material on operating commercial vehicles.

Inside this guide

The **table of contents** should help you find information easily. In each chapter we've included examples and tables, as well as **definitions, fast facts and driving tips** to make the information as clear and easy to use as possible.

You'll also find a 'what you'll learn' section at the beginning of each chapter. **What you'll learn** provides a detailed breakdown of what's covered in each chapter. You can also go back to it after you've studied the chapter and use it as a checklist to determine how well you've learned everything covered. Also, you'll find **Review questions** at the end of most chapters. You may want to use them as you prepare for your test.

Licence study chart

This table will help you focus on the chapters you'll need to prepare for your test.

If you're applying for:	Study these chapters:											
Class 1 licence	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	
Class 2 licence	1	2	3	4	Pages 108 – 109	6	7	8*	9*	10	11	
Class 3 licence	1	2	3	4	5		7	8*	9*	10	11	
Class 4 licence	1	2	3	4	Pages 108 – 109	6	7			10	11	

* Study this chapter if your vehicle is equipped with air brakes.

1 getting your driver's licence

This chapter tells you how to apply for a Class 1, 2, 3 or 4 licence.

What you'll learn

After studying this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❑ describe Yukon's driver licence classes
- ❑ know which vehicles require an air brake endorsed driver's licence
- ❑ describe the steps to get a commercial driver's licence, an air brake endorsement or a heavy trailer endorsement.

warning

Driving without a valid driver's licence or correct class of licence may breach your insurance coverage if you're in a crash. Your insurance claim may be denied, including claims for your own injuries, or damage that you might cause to your vehicle, or to other people or property. You could be responsible for paying these costs.

Need more information? Call Your local Motor Vehicle office.

fast fact

You must hold a full-privilege Class 5 or equivalent licence before you can apply for a commercial licence, or a heavy trailer endorsement.

Licence classes

For more information, check with your local Motor Vehicle office.

Class 1 	• semi-trailer trucks • permits you to drive all types of vehicles except Class 6	18
Class 2 	• motor coaches, transit buses, school buses, special activity buses with seating for over 24 passengers • permits you to drive all types of vehicles except Class 1 and Class 6	18
Class 3 	• heavy vehicles, with two or more axles, that weigh over 11,000 kg. such as dump trucks, large tow trucks, fuel delivery trucks, moving trucks, buses without passengers, large motor homes over 11,000 kg. • towing trailers weighing under 4,550 kg. • permits you to drive Class 5 vehicles • Class 4 vehicles may be driven if approved by a driver's medical and your licence lists Class 3/4	18
Class 4 	• taxi, limousine, ambulance, bus up to 24 passengers, special activity buses, handicapped bus • permits you to drive Class 5 vehicles	18

definitions

A **bus** is a large motor vehicle designed to carry passengers. All 15 passenger vans that are registered commercially, this includes government, rental, municipal, federal, self government and dealer require a class 4 to operate even when carrying just one passenger.

driving tip

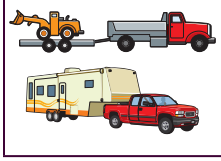
For more information on towing trailers with a GVW in excess of 4550 kg contact your local Motor Vehicle office.

fast fact

If you drive without a valid driver's licence, the vehicle you're driving may be impounded.

definition

Construction vehicles include tractors, graders, loaders, shovels, rollers, scrapers or other self-propelled road building machine used for highway grading, paving or other construction work.

Class	Typical vehicles	Minimum age
Class 5 	• two-axle vehicles including cars, trucks and tow trucks that weigh up to 11,000 kg. by itself or when towing another vehicle or trailer under 4,550 kg. • motorcycles 50 cc and under, construction vehicles, ATVs, snowmobiles and off-road vehicles • **novice stage drivers, please refer to additional GDL restrictions and conditions** • a full-privilege Class 5 licence is a learner's licence for all other licence classes	17.5
Class 6 	• motorcycles and mopeds	17.5
Class 7	• permits the learner to operate vehicles in Class 5 and 6 • to get a Class 7 licence, you need to go through the GDL program; see chapter 9	15
Class 2, 3, 4 and 5 heavy trailer endorsement 	• trailers or towed vehicles over 4,550 kg. • no air brakes • trailer or towed vehicle must not exceed the vehicle's safe towing capacity	18

Medical fitness

Commercial drivers need to be in good physical condition. When you apply for a commercial driver's licence, you'll:

- be asked if you have certain medical conditions that may affect your fitness and ability to hold a commercial driver's licence.
- be required to submit a driver's medical for the class of licence you wish to apply for.
- be required to complete a vision screening (see below for details).

If you've any questions about a medical condition and whether it may affect your fitness to hold a commercial driver's licence, contact your local Motor Vehicle office.

Vision

Commercial drivers are required to meet a higher vision standard than Class 5 drivers. Your vision will be screened at a Motor Vehicle office when you apply for your licence. If a problem is found, you may be required to have your eyes examined by an ophthalmologist or optometrist.

Your vision will be checked to measure:

- your ability to read from a distance (visual acuity)
- your ability to see objects on each side of you (peripheral vision)

Air brake endorsement

To operate vehicles equipped with air brakes on a highway (other than a vehicle defined as a construction vehicle), you must have a Yukon driver's licence with an air brake endorsement (code 15).

Code 15 is shown in the "endorsement" section of a driver's licence.

There are two ways to apply for an air brake endorsement

1. Complete a Yukon recognized air brake course that is available through commercial driving schools and Yukon College. Once you have completed the course you will need to attend your local Motor Vehicle Office to pay the fee and have the air brake endorsement placed on your licence.
2. Study the applicable sections of this guide to prepare for the air brake endorsement tests.
   - When you feel you are ready go to your local Motor Vehicle office, pay the air brake knowledge test fee and take the knowledge test.
   - Make and pay for an appointment to take the air brake practical test.
   - Take your air brake practical test. You'll need to bring a vehicle equipped with air brakes to take this test.

   Note: Be sure to bring your driver's licence when doing any transactions at Motor Vehicles.
   - Once you have successfully passed both the air brake knowledge and practical tests a code 15 air brake endorsement will be placed on your licence.

fast fact

Applicants who need contact lenses or eyeglasses to meet the required vision standards must use those lenses during their vision screenings.

fast fact

An air brake endorsement is required to operate privately owned motor homes / recreational vehicles that are equipped with air brakes.

How to apply for a Class 1, 2, 3 or 4 driver's licence

Commercial drivers must meet a high standard. Before you begin the application process, you must meet these prerequisites:

- hold a full-privilege licence that is a minimum of a Class 5 or Class 6, or an out-of-territory equivalent
- meet the minimum age requirements (see Licence classes chart)
- meet the required medical standards.
- Study the applicable chapters of this guide to prepare for the knowledge test.
- You'll need to present one piece of primary and one piece of secondary identification (see inside of back cover)
- You'll need to pay the knowledge test fee and take the knowledge test
- We'll conduct a vision and medical screening. You'll be asked questions relating to your medical health — you must disclose any known medical conditions.
- Practise with an appropriately licensed driver and/or attend a driver training school.
- When you're ready, contact your local motor vehicle office to pay for and schedule your road test. Be sure to ask about the type of vehicle you must bring for your road test.
- Take your road test, which includes a pre-trip inspection test (and an air brake pre-trip inspection test if your vehicle has air brakes).

Note: Remember to have your driver's licence with you for your road test, if you don't your test will be cancelled and you will have to pay and re-book.

- Submit a driver's medical for the class of licence you tested for by a physician who knows your medical history. The Registrar of Motor Vehicles will determine whether you're fit to drive commercial vehicles.

Note: The doctor's fee for completing a routine medical form is not covered by Yukon Health Care.

fast fact

Every carrier you work for is required to check your driving record before hiring you and once a year after hiring you.

fast fact

A full privilege class 5 licence is a learner's licence for all other classes of licence.

fast fact

For more information on medical and vision standards, contact your local motor vehicle office.

How to apply for a heavy trailer endorsement

A heavy trailer endorsement for a Class 2, 3, 4 or 5 driver's licence allows you to tow trailers of any weight provided that neither the truck nor trailer has air brakes. To apply for the endorsement:

1. Study the applicable chapters of this guide to prepare for the knowledge test.
2. A full class 5, 4, 3, or 2 licence is considered a learner's licence for a heavy trailer endorsement. You can practice towing an overweight trailer with a codriver that has held either a class 1 licence or a heavy trailer.
3. Practise with with your codriver until you feel confident in your ability to safely tow a heavy trailer.
4. When you're ready, contact your local Motor Vehicle office to schedule your road test. Be sure to ask about the type of vehicle you must bring for your road test.

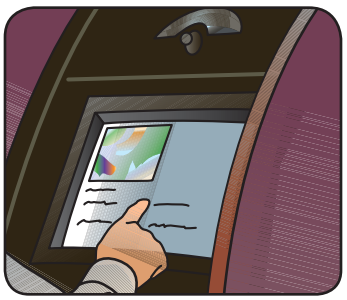
fast fact

A heavy trailer endorsement is required to tow any trailer with a GVW in excess of 4550 kg even if the trailer is your own private trailer.

5. Take your road test, which includes a pre-trip inspection.

   Note: Remember to have your driver's licence with you for your road test, if you don't your test will be cancelled and you will have to pay and re-book.

Knowledge tests



You need to take knowledge tests whenever you apply for a new licence. You must be able to complete these tests without assistance. The tests are all multiple choice. The answers to all the knowledge test questions are in this guide.

There are traffic sign questions on every commercial test. To prepare it is good to review the signs shown in **chapter 11, signs, signals and road markings**, as well as the signs shown in other chapters of this guide.

Refer to the licence study chart on page 2 to learn which chapters of this guide you should study.

Road testing

When you're ready to take a road test, contact your local Motor Vehicle office to book a road test appointment. Refer to **chapter 13, for all Motor Vehicle contact information.**

When you book your appointment, be sure to ask what type of vehicle you must bring for your road test. If your vehicle is equipped with air brakes, remember to bring the necessary tools and equipment to do a brake adjustment.

All road tests consist of:

- a pre-trip inspection
- an air brake pre-trip inspection (if your vehicle is equipped with air brakes)
- a road test.

During your road test you must demonstrate your ability to:

- do a pre-trip inspection
- use basic skills for controlling your vehicle
- handle your vehicle in traffic.

A Class 1 road test takes about two hours. Class 2, 3, 4 and heavy trailer endorsement road tests take fewer than two hours.

Plan to arrive for your road test at least 10 minutes early. If you can't keep your road test appointment, you need to notify Motor Vehicles.

You'll have to pay a fee if you don't show up for your scheduled road test and don't provide either 48 hours notice or a valid reason for not attending.

fast fact

When up grading from a class 4, 5 or 6 to a class 1, 2 or 3 with air you can do the air brake practical test and the driving test all in one session.

fast fact

You're responsible for ensuring that your vehicle is properly insured for use during your road test.

Pre-trip inspection test

The National Safety Code (NSC) requires most commercial drivers to complete trip inspections. If you're applying for a Class 1, 2 or 3 licence, a heavy trailer endorsement, or an air brake endorsement, you'll need to conduct a pre-trip inspection.

If your vehicle is equipped with air brakes with manual slack adjusters you'll need to perform a brake adjustment as part of the test. Make sure you have the proper tools to carry out this adjustment.

The pre-trip inspection part of your road test is your opportunity to show that you know how, when and why you must complete a trip inspection. Under the NSC, pre-trip inspections must always be done before the first run of the day. Even if you conducted a pre-trip inspection earlier in the day, your driver examiner will ask you to do a pre-trip inspection as part of your road test.

During the inspection, tell your examiner what you are checking for and how you know if each part of your vehicle is in good working order.

You can find more about pre-trip inspections and pre-trip inspection tests in **chapter 10, vehicle and air brake pre-trip inspections**.

Road test

You must be able to demonstrate these skills competently during your road test:

- starting and stopping
- shifting gears
- turning
- steering
- backing up
- parking
- merging with highway traffic
- exiting from highways
- driving in traffic

fast fact

The National Safety Code sets out minimum safety standards for all commercial drivers, vehicles and carriers in Canada.

fast fact

If you're taking a road test in an air-brake-equipped vehicle, you must have an air brake endorsement on your driver's licence or have passed the air brake knowledge test and be in the process of testing for your endorsement.

fast fact

If you take your Class 1 or 3 road test using an automatic transmission, your Class 1, 2 or 3 driver's licence will be restricted to automatic transmissions only.

During your road test, concentrate on the traffic and don't think about what your examiner may be recording.

Road test vehicles

You need to provide an appropriate vehicle when you take your road test. Make sure that the vehicle meets safety standards, and that valid registration, licence and insurance papers are in the vehicle.

The vehicle must be representative of the licence class. The following are typical vehicles accepted for road tests:

- Class 4 — any clean and well maintained car or pickup truck
- Class 3 — a large tandem or tridem rear axle truck such as a moving van or dump truck
- Class 2 — a large bus with a seating capacity of more than 24 passengers
- Class 1 — a tandem or tridem rear axle tractor trailer combination with air brakes.
- Heavy trailer endorsement — a truck and trailer combination without air brakes. The trailer's GVW must be in excess of 4,550 kg.

fast fact

There are many different truck and truck trailer combinations, for detailed licencing information contact you local Motor Vehicle office.

Check with your local Motor Vehicle office for specific vehicle requirements.

If the vehicle's carrying a load, make sure that it's properly secured and won't escape, shift or sway.

The load must not exceed the vehicle's GVWR or licensed GVW, and in the case of a Class 1 or heavy trailer endorsement road test, must meet minimum weight and load requirements.

See **chapter 5, skills for driving trucks and trailers**, for definitions of GVW and GVWR.

For more information on acceptable vehicles for taking a road test, contact your local Motor Vehicle office.

Strategies to ensure your vehicle is safe

You need to provide a clean, safe, reliable vehicle that meets legal requirements and is acceptable for the class of licence you're applying for. Also, make sure you're familiar with the vehicle.

If your vehicle is unsafe or does not meet requirements, your road test may be cancelled and you will have to reschedule your appointment to a later date. Here is a list of some of the typical reasons that a Class 1 to 4 road test may be cancelled. Avoid disappointment — conduct a pre-trip inspection of the vehicle to find and correct any defects before going for your road test:

1. **Brake lights, signal lights or headlights not working, obscured by mud or dirt, or badly cracked or missing lenses** — these lights help you to be seen in traffic, so they need to be clean and function properly.
2. **Air brakes out of adjustment** — make sure the brakes are in good working order and properly adjusted.

3. **Cracked windshield or illegally tinted windows** — it's important that you and the driver examiner be able to see out the windshield, so a badly cracked windshield just won't do. Tinted windows may reduce your ability to see other road users — and their ability to make eye contact with you. Yukon law only allows certain windows and only certain portions of the windshield to be tinted and limits the degree of tinting — no aftermarket tinting on the windshield or front side windows is allowed.
4. **Insecure load** — if loaded, make sure the load is properly secured.
5. **Vehicle not properly licensed or insured** — vehicles must display a valid licence plate and registration decal. They must be clearly visible, not obscured by mud or dirt. Make sure the insurance papers are in the vehicle — with a combination vehicle, make sure both the tractor and trailer insurance and registration papers are on hand. Also make sure the insurance covers you to drive the vehicle (if you are renting a vehicle, the rental agreement must name you as a driver).
6. **Seatbelts not working or frayed** — for your road test, make sure both the driver and passenger seatbelts work properly, and that the seating area is clean.
7. **Unsafe tires** — make sure the tires are in good condition, have plenty of tread, are properly inflated, and there are no flat tires. Temporary spare tires may not be used on a road test (they are intended only to get the vehicle to the nearest repair shop at reduced speeds so that the proper tire can be repaired or replaced).
8. **Doors or windows not operating** — for safety reasons both the driver's side and passenger side doors must open and close properly, from both the inside and the outside. There are times on the road test that you or the driver examiner may need to open a window, so they need to function properly.
9. **Faulty exhaust** — a leaking exhaust pipe or missing muffler is unsafe and dangerous — it may cause carbon monoxide poisoning. Excessively loud mufflers are illegal and interfere with conducting your road test.
10. **No wheel blocks** — these are required to safely secure large commercial vehicles to conduct a pre-trip inspection.

Also, remember to bring tools and equipment to conduct the pre-trip inspection, including wrenches, a pry bar, chalk or marker, and a watch/timer to check air brakes. You should also wear sturdy clothing, a hard hat, eye protection, boots, and a safety vest.

As well, make sure your vehicle is clean and tidy inside, and that lights and windows are clean.

Loose objects inside can be dangerous if you have to stop suddenly, so these should be removed or stored.

Retest

If you fail any of your tests, contact your local Motor Vehicle office for information on what you should do next. You will not get your licence until you've passed all your tests.

Commercial driver training

Becoming a safe commercial driver requires both education and practical experience. You may decide that driver training will help you to get the necessary knowledge and skills.

Air brake courses

An air brake course is highly recommended as even experienced drivers learn more about air brakes by taking the course.

After successfully completing your air brake course the course provider will provide Motor Vehicles with the student rooster with your name on it.

driving tip

To find an air brake course, check online or in the yellow pages of the phone book under Driving Schools. Many community colleges also offer these courses.

Keeping your licence

The Registrar of Motor Vehicles will require you to take medical exams on a regular schedule as long as you hold a commercial driver's licence.

If you have a medical condition that may affect your fitness to drive, you may need to take medical exams more frequently.

You must also be re-examined when asked by the Registrar of Motor Vehicles.

A re-examination may include a:

- vision screening
- medical report from a specialist
- knowledge test (which may include a traffic signs test)
- road test (including a pre-trip inspection).

fast fact

Motor Vehicles requires all Class 1, 2, 3 and 4 drivers to submit a Driver's Medical regularly.

A Driver's medical is required when you first upgrade from a class 5 to a commercial licence.

The doctor's fee for completing this routine medical report is not covered by Yukon Health Care.

Upgrading your commercial licence

Once you have your commercial licence, you may want to upgrade to another licence class (for example, from a Class 3 to a Class 1). In order to upgrade from a class 3 to a class 1 you would have to write the class 1 and 2 knowledge tests and pass the class 1 road test.

A supervisor with an appropriate class of licence must accompany you while you practise driving.

fast fact

If you hold a commercial class out-of-Territory licence, some tests may be waived. Please contact your nearest Motor Vehicle office for details.

Downgrading to a non-commercial licence

To downgrade from a commercial class licence to a class 5 you simply need to visit your local Motor Vehicle office to make the change.

If you fail to submit your driver's medical on time you will be automatically downgraded to a class 5 until it is submitted.

Downgrading to a lower commercial licence class

If you want to downgrade your driver's licence classification (for example, from Class 1 to Class 2 or Class 3), you must meet the requirements of the lower licence classification. Please check with your local Motor Vehicles office for information.

Review questions

1. What kinds of vehicles require the driver to have an air brake endorsed driver's licence in order to operate them?
2. Which driver licence classes allow you to operate a school bus?
3. What are the steps to obtain an air brake endorsement?
4. What classes of licence or licence endorsements allow you to operate a trailer equipped with air brakes weighing over 4,550 kg?

2 heavy vehicle braking

What you'll learn

After reading this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❏ explain why heavy vehicles take longer to stop than smaller passenger vehicles
- ❏ explain why air brakes are used on heavy vehicles
- ❏ describe the basic scientific principles of braking
- ❏ identify the elements of stopping distance
- ❏ explain the effects of weight and speed on stopping distance
- ❏ explain how to brake safely in different situations.

Starting and stopping

Stopping seems simple. When you drive a car and you want to stop, you press on the brake pedal and the car comes to a stop. And when you want to go somewhere in a car, you start it, press on the accelerator, and the car begins to move.

But what actually happens to cause the vehicle to stop? And what causes a vehicle to move? To answer these questions, we need to know some basic scientific principles.

Your car's engine, like the diesel engine of a truck, is a heat conversion machine, taking the energy of heat from the exploding mixture of fuel and air in the combustion chamber, and converting it to motion through the engine crankshaft and drivetrain to the wheels.

A brake — whether a brake for a car or a commercial vehicle — is also a heat conversion machine, but works exactly opposite to an engine. Brakes convert the energy of motion back into the energy of heat through the friction between the brake drums or rotors and the brake linings or pads.

A simple kind of brake is that used by a skater on rollerblades — the skater tips the rollerblade to the rear, and a pad rubs against the pavement to slow and stop the skater. The pad gets hot, and so does the pavement. This is because the energy of **motion** has been converted to the energy of **heat** through the **friction** between the pad and the pavement. Both the pad and the pavement need to be able to absorb the heat created while stopping.

A vehicle's brakes work on these same principles. Attached to each wheel is either a drum brake or a disc brake that rotates with the wheel. To stop the vehicle, brake linings rub against the brake drum, or in the case of disc brakes, brake pads rub against the brake rotor. This creates friction, converting the vehicle's energy of motion into the energy of heat, which stops the vehicle. The heat is absorbed and dissipated into the atmosphere, primarily through the brake drums/rotors.

definition

Heat is a form of energy. In an internal combustion engine, the heat energy produced by engine combustion is converted to the energy of **motion** through the moving parts of the engine and drive train, turning the wheels.

Even though the energy of motion turns the vehicle's wheels, the vehicle won't go anywhere unless there's **traction** between the tires and the road surface.

In stopping a vehicle, the energy of **motion** is converted to the energy of **heat** through **friction** between the lining/pad and drum/rotor surfaces of the vehicle's brakes.

fast fact

The final factor in stopping is in the contact between the vehicle and the road through the tires.

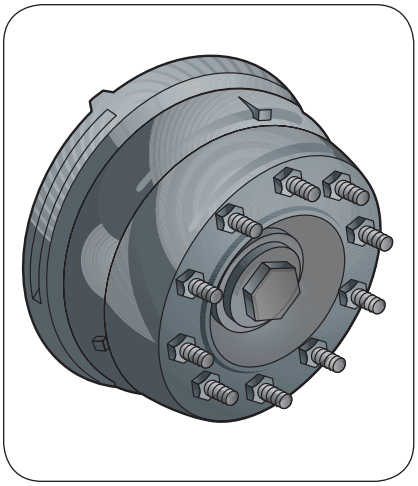
Bald or defective tires may degrade braking performance.

The basic principle behind braking systems: friction converts the energy of motion to heat energy.

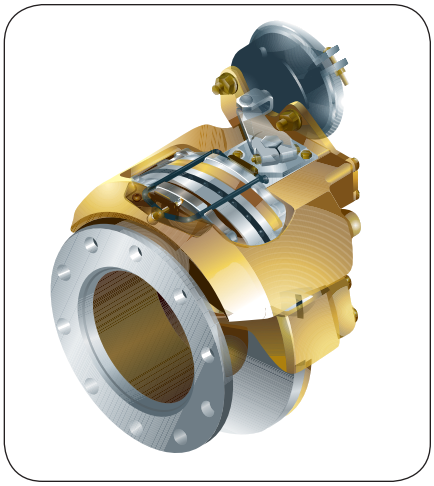
You might say the energy has gone full circle:

Heat Energy → **Energy of Motion** → **Heat Energy**

(from the engine) → (through the drivetrain) → (through the brakes)



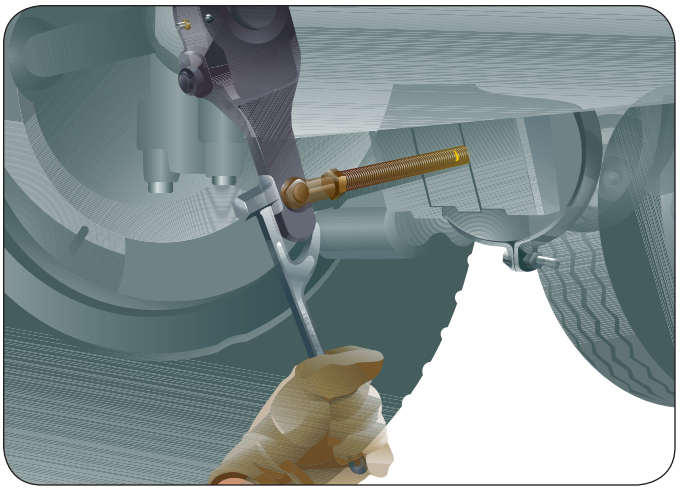
Drum brake



Disc brake

Force multipliers

The force generated at the wheel to stop is a lot more than the force you apply when pushing down on the brake pedal.



The driver is using a tool to gain leverage to measure the brake chamber pushrod travel.

In this diagram, the driver is pulling on an air brake slack adjuster to measure if the brake is within adjustment tolerance.

The slack adjuster, besides adjusting for brake wear, acts as a lever. Leverage is a form of force multiplication.

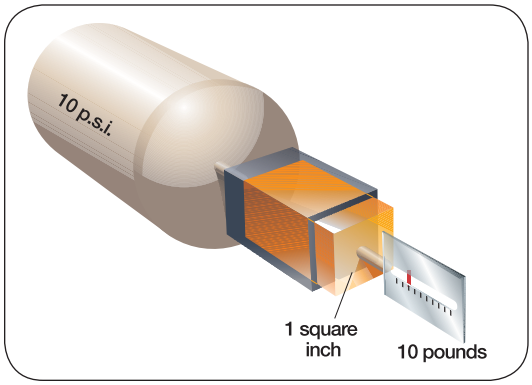
Trucks and buses are much heavier than cars, so they need even more mechanical advantage.

What's compressed air?

Air can be compressed (squeezed) into a much smaller space than it would normally occupy. The tires on a car are filled with compressed air to support the weight of a vehicle.

Squeezing air into a smaller space increases the air's resistance. This resistance creates pressure, which can be converted into mechanical force to apply the brakes. Air brakes generate more braking force than hydraulic brakes.

If a constant supply of compressed air were directed through a pipe that's one-inch square (see diagram below), and if a one-inch square plug were placed in the pipe, the compressed air would push against the plug. Holding a scale against the plug would register how many pounds of force the air was exerting against the plug.

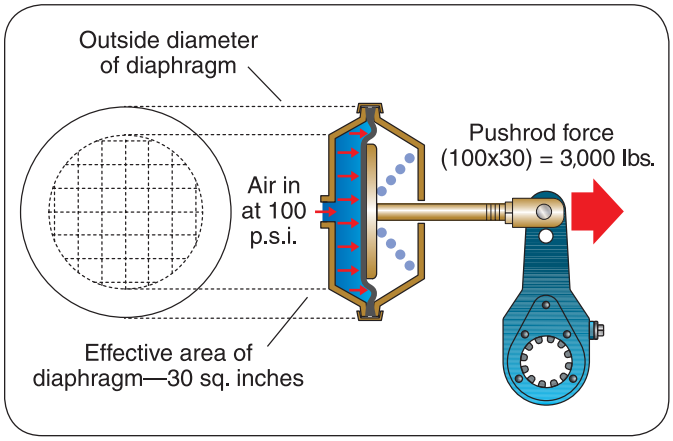


If the scale registered 10 pounds, for example, then it could be said that the force was 10 pounds on the one square inch surface of the plug. This would be 10 p.s.i. or 68.9 kPa.

The more the air's compressed (that is, the greater the air pressure), the greater the force that would be exerted on the face of the plug.

Leverage and air pressure

Air chambers are very powerful. A typical type 30 chamber, if applied with air pressure at 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa), develops a pushrod force of 3,000 pounds. This force is then applied to move the lever (the slack adjuster) to apply the brakes.



Through force multiplication, 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa) of air pressure produces a pushrod force of 3,000 pounds.

Power to move and power to stop

A typical compact car weighs about 1,000 kg and has about 120 hp. It can accelerate to 100 km/h within about 200 m and in less than 10 seconds.

A heavy tractor-trailer combination can weigh up to 63,500 kg when loaded. Even though it may have a diesel engine producing over 400 hp, because of the weight of the combination and its load, it might take over one kilometre and over one minute to accelerate to 100 km/h.

Now think about stopping a tractor-trailer combination that's going 100 km/h. How much energy is needed to stop it? You certainly want to stop it in a much shorter distance than one kilometre and in much less than one minute. In an emergency, the combination might have to stop in as little as seven seconds — roughly $^{1}/_{9}$ of the time it took to reach 100 km/h.

To stop the vehicle this quickly requires a stopping force of nine times the acceleration force — the equivalent of approximately 4,000 hp.

With a tractor-trailer combination equipped with eight equally loaded axles and 16 brakes, each brake has to provide approximately $^{1}/_{16}$ of the braking force. If one or two of these brakes isn't correctly adjusted, the others have to do more than their share of the braking, resulting in a longer stopping distance. If the axles are not equally loaded, wheels with lighter loads may skid, also resulting in a longer stopping distance.

The other brakes would also have to work harder and that might be more work than they're manufactured to do. Excessive use of the brakes could result in a buildup of more heat than the brakes can absorb and dissipate. Too much heat can result in brake damage and possible failure.

Stopping distance and stopping time

To stop a vehicle, you need to **see-think-do**. Total stopping distance is the distance your vehicle will travel from the moment you:

- **see** — a hazard
- **think** — decide to stop
- **do** — place your foot on the brake pedal until you stop.

This distance can also be expressed as the time it takes to stop.

When you see a problem ahead while driving, it'll take you about $^{3}/_{4}$ of a second of **perception time (see-think)** and another $^{3}/_{4}$ of a second of **reaction time (do)**. Only then will your vehicle begin to slow.

A car's brakes begin to work almost instantly when you press on the brake pedal. This is not the case with air brakes because there's a **brake lag time** of approximately $^{4}/_{10}$ of a second between when you apply the brake and when the brakes begin to function. Add to this the **braking time**, which is the time — or distance — the vehicle travels before it stops.

This is why it's so important to allow enough distance when following other vehicles.

Passenger cars and light truck drivers should use the two-second rule. Watch the vehicle ahead pass some checkpoint on the roadway, such as an overpass or sign post. Start to count: "One thousand and one, one thousand and two." That's two seconds.

fast fact

Reaction time is the time it takes between recognizing a hazard ahead and applying the brakes.

An average driver's reaction time is about $^{3}/_{4}$ of a second.

definition

Driver's perception time

+ reaction time

+ brake lag time

+ braking time

= total stopping time

driving tip

Total stopping time will be even longer if brakes are incorrectly adjusted or vehicle is on a downgrade.

The most common air brake system defect found during a commercial vehicle inspection is brakes that are out of adjustment.

driving tip

Total stopping distance or time depends on the ability of the brake linings or pads to produce friction, the brake drums to dissipate heat and the tires to grip the road.

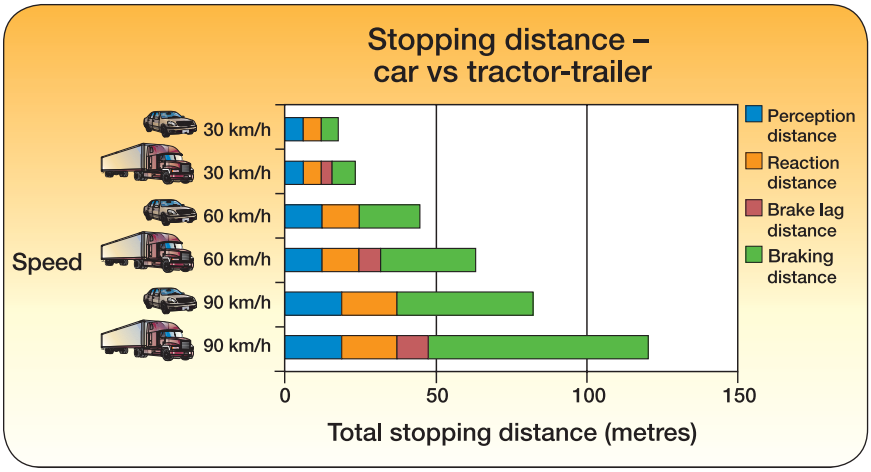
Total stopping distance includes perception time, reaction time, brake lag time and braking time.

Always allow enough following distance or time and choose a speed that will allow you to stop safely.

Drivers of buses, trucks and other large heavy vehicles should never be less than five seconds behind the vehicle ahead at highway speeds.

Refer to **chapter 3, basic driving skills,** for more information on following distance.

Stay even further back when conditions are less than ideal.



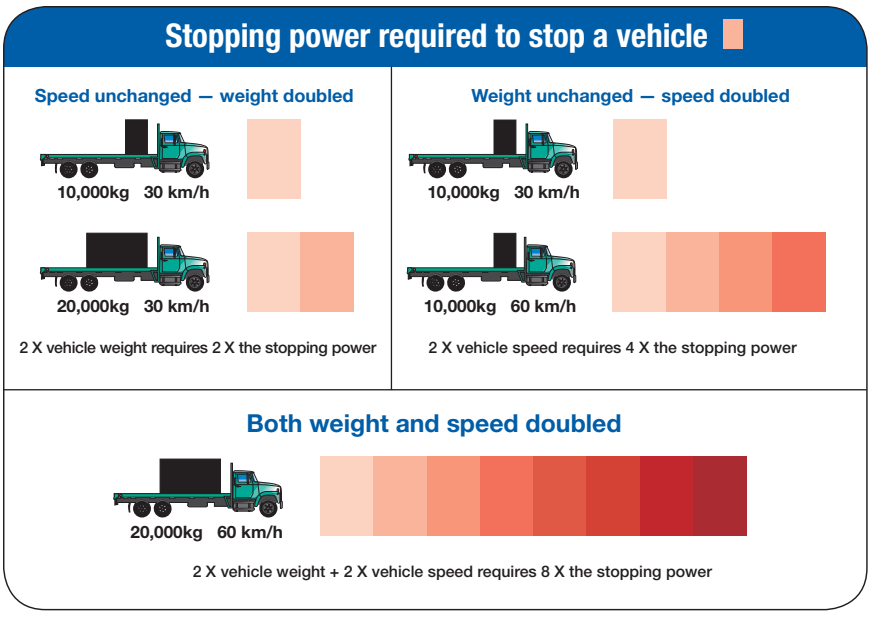
fast fact

Driving without due care and attention and unsafe speed are the top two factors assigned to commercial drivers involved in police-reported casualty crashes.

Speed and weight facts

Speed and weight affect the stopping power required to stop any vehicle, and how far it will travel before it stops. You need more stopping power whenever the speed you're travelling and/or the weight of your vehicle increases:

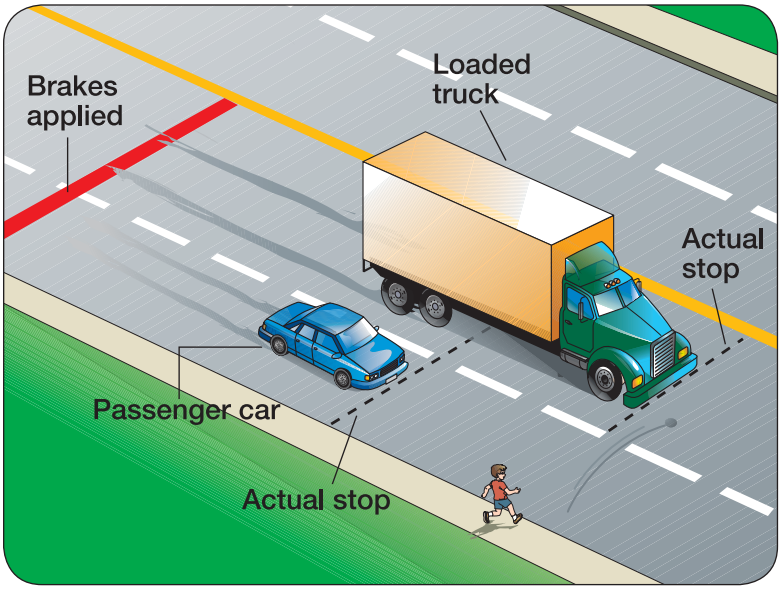
- 2 X vehicle speed requires 4 X the stopping power
- 2 X vehicle weight requires 2 X the stopping power
- 2 X vehicle speed and 2 X vehicle weight requires 8 X the stopping power.



A typical compact car weighs about 1,000 kg. The truck in the illustration on the previous page may weigh 25,000 kg when fully loaded — over 25 times heavier than a car. And heavy tractor-trailer combinations can weigh up to 63,500 kg.

There's only so much stopping power available, and the faster the vehicle is travelling, the more power it needs to stop. This is why it's so important to drive at a safe speed, at a safe following distance, and within the vehicle's stopping capability.

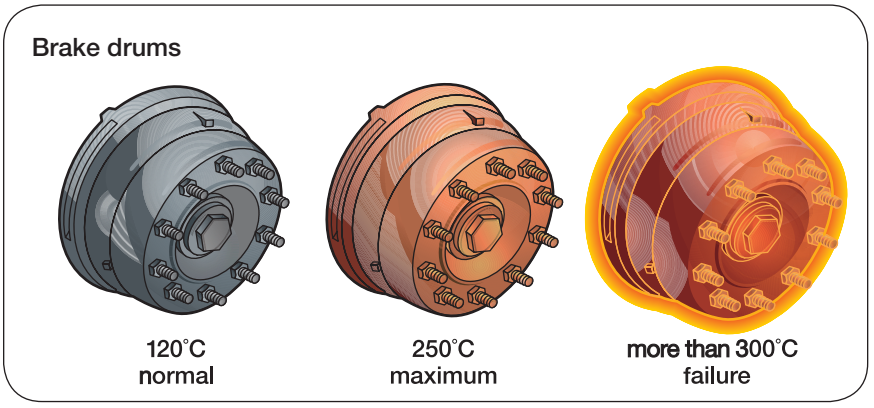
Compared to cars, trucks and buses have larger brake components, more wheels and more brake linings/shoes or rotors/pads. But trucks and buses have longer stopping distances.



The truck is going to take much longer to stop than the car — even more so if going downhill.

Another factor in stopping distances is the slope or grade of the road. A vehicle travelling down a hill will need a longer stopping distance than a vehicle travelling at the same speed on a level surface because of the effect of gravity. A vehicle travelling up a hill will stop in a shorter distance than a vehicle travelling the same speed on a level surface, again because of the effect of the grade.

How much heat can brakes handle?



Most brake components operate best at around 120° C and should not exceed 250° C.

definition

Brake fade occurs when your brakes stop working properly because they're overheated. Your vehicle takes longer to stop, or may not stop at all if you haven't properly controlled the speed.

In normal stopping, the brake components heat up to about 120° C (almost 250° F). The brake components are constructed to withstand more heat, and can handle up to about 250° C under hard braking.

Heat will continue to build up with excessive hard braking until it exceeds the capability of the brake components to absorb and dissipate the heat. As brake drums heat up, they expand away from the brake linings. Too much heat can result in brake fade, brake damage and/or brake failure. Brake components or tires may actually catch fire.

Retarders

definition

Retarders provide an auxiliary slowing effect and assist the main brake system to slow the vehicle.

Retarders are designed to provide auxiliary slowing of the vehicle, such as for controlling the speed on long downgrades without the use of the main braking system. Engine retarders (also known as engine brakes) help to save the main braking system for emergency stopping.

Here are the four main types of retarders:

- engine retarders
- exhaust retarders
- hydraulic driveline retarders
- electric driveline retarders.

Many retarders can absorb as much or more horsepower as the engine can develop.

An engine brake control switch.

Using retarders

driving tip

Make sure you're familiar with the manufacturer's operating procedures before operating any retarding device.

An engine retarder is more efficient at a higher engine r.p.m. and a lower vehicle speed, so it's important to select the right gear. Select your gear before you start down a hill. You're more likely to miss a shift if you wait until you're on the downgrade.

Be cautious if you're using retarders/engine brakes on slippery road surfaces. Some can actually cause the drive wheels to lock up, stalling the engine, and can result in loss of control or even cause a tractor/trailer to jackknife.

definition

The term **r.p.m.** stands for revolutions per minute. This refers to the number of complete turns the crankshaft makes in one minute.

Most trucks have a tachometer in the instrument panel to indicate the engine's r.p.m.

fast fact

You can be fined if you are operating a vehicle with brakes that are not adjusted correctly or not performing adequately.

driving tip

Don't wait until you spin out on a hill to put on the tire chains.

It's extremely difficult to mount chains when you are on a hill. Instead, use a designated chain-up area.

All modern trucks are manufactured to meet safety standards, including noise levels. A well-engineered truck with an engine retarder and a properly maintained muffler system shouldn't be noisy.

Many municipalities post signs restricting drivers from using engine retarders/engine brakes. Obey these signs.

Braking

Bringing your vehicle to a stop on a level roadway usually means squeezing gradually and firmly on the brake pedal with your foot. But sometimes you may have to react more quickly.

Just before your vehicle comes to a full stop, reduce the pressure you're placing on the brake pedal. This will prevent your vehicle from jerking back. Practise stopping until you become familiar with how much pressure you need to ease off the brake to smoothly stop where you want.

Watch the driving technique of the driver ahead. If the driver in front of you is a tailgater, expect frequent panic stops. Professional drivers maintain a safe following distance and plan for gradual stops. By making your stops slowly you give the driver behind you plenty of notice that you're reducing your speed.

To stop safely, ensure that your brakes are correctly adjusted, your load is balanced and your tires are in good condition. Also, be certain that your tires are properly inflated.

To ensure a smooth, controlled stop every time:

- travel at a speed that allows you to see a safe distance ahead
- maintain a safe following time or distance
- use good braking skills.

Icy roads

To stop on icy roads, use extremely light pressure on the brake to control your vehicle's speed. This will help prevent the wheels from locking up. A slowly revolving wheel on an icy surface will be more effective than a locked wheel skidding on an icy surface. Vehicles equipped with anti-lock braking systems (ABS) will require a different technique for braking on an icy road surface, as shown later in this chapter.

You need snow tires and/or chains on icy roads. Many highways have designated chain-up areas to allow you to mount chains before getting onto steep hills. Make sure you're familiar with how to mount chains on tires — practise mounting them before you find yourself in conditions where you need to put them on your vehicle.

Make sure tire chains are properly sized for your tires and tightly mounted (don't deflate tires to install tire chains). Stop and check tire chain tightness at the first safe opportunity. Reduce speed when driving with tire chains.

In extremely bad conditions, parking your vehicle may be safer than driving. Check weather and road conditions before you encounter icy roads.

fast fact

Frequent use of the service brakes will cause them to heat up and reduce their stopping ability.

The result can be a dangerous condition called brake fade.

Some steep hill warning signs show the steepness of the grade. The higher the percentage, the steeper the hill. This hill has an 18 per cent gradient, which is very steep.

fast fact

Engine retarders are most effective at a higher r.p.m. and with the transmission in a low gear. Save your brakes so you'll be able to stop if road and traffic conditions require their use.

fast fact

Always obey the regulatory stop and check brakes signs.

Downgrades

There's a limit to the amount of heat that brakes can absorb and dissipate. The highest brake temperatures occur when braking from highway speeds while on long downgrades, or from repeated use of the brakes without enough cooling time between applications. Almost all brake failures and downhill runaway crashes are caused by overdriving the ability of the brakes to deal with heat. In other words, poor speed control.

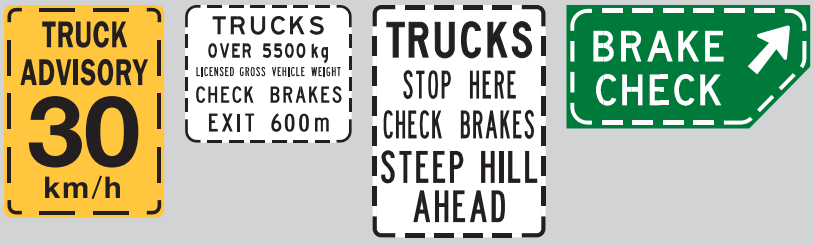
Whether in town or on a highway, you'll usually need to descend a hill more slowly than other traffic in order to avoid overdriving your brakes. You should be in a lower gear to go down the hill than used to climb it. **Never shift to a higher gear** on a downgrade unless the speed on the grade can be controlled with a retarding device or engine compression.

On highways

Truck advisory speed limits are often posted. Follow these speed limits. Use your four-way flashers to alert other drivers that you're driving slowly down the hill. Stay in the far right lane where possible. Control your speed all the way down every hill so you can respond to any emergency.

Select a safe speed that's not too fast for the weight of your vehicle, length, and steepness of the grade, weather, and road conditions. Use an appropriate low gear to hold that speed, and use the vehicle's retarding device.

If you've selected an appropriate safe speed, are in the right low gear and are using your vehicle's retarding device, you should be able to go down the hill without using the service brakes.



These signs, showing special instructions for commercial vehicles, may be placed before a downhill grade. The one in the top left corner shows the speed suggested for descending the grade. The other signs direct you to check your brakes.

If this doesn't control your speed, and speed is increasing above your chosen speed:

- apply the brakes hard enough to reduce speed by 10 to 15 km/h — the brakes are cold at this point
- downshift to a lower main gear (don't use the splitter valve for shifting on a downhill).

Continue down the grade, using engine compression, transmission gearing and your vehicle's retarding device to control your speed. If the speed increases again, repeat this process. Be careful using this procedure on icy roads.

Keep your vehicle in gear all the way down the hill.

In town

- select a safe speed that's not too fast for the weight of your vehicle, length, and steepness of the grade, weather and road conditions
- select an appropriate low gear to hold that speed
- use the vehicle's retarding device unless signs prohibit their use.

You must control the speed of your vehicle so it can be stopped at any time for any emergency while descending a hill.

Water on roadways

Water can reduce braking efficiency. Avoid driving through large amounts of water whenever possible. If you have to drive through water on the roadway, cover the brake pedal with your foot as you approach the water. Place a slight drag (that is, apply a slight constant pressure) on the brakes while you drive through the water. The slight drag placed on the brakes will reduce the amount of water entering the brake drums and shoes. Always reduce your vehicle's speed before driving through large pools of water on the roadway.

During extremely wet conditions, or after driving through water, test your brakes by applying a slight pressure with your foot on the brake pedal. Keep this pressure on for a short distance to dry out the brakes.

Runaway lanes

Runaway lanes are located beside the road on some downhill grades.

These lanes are there to help slow and stop vehicles if their brakes fail as they are going downhill. Runaway lanes should be used only to control your speed or stop.

These lanes are there for safety. Don't use them for any other purpose.

These two road signs alert you to runaway lanes.

This sign is posted in advance of a runaway lane.

This sign is found at the entrance to a runaway lane.

Combination unit braking

When you step on the brake pedal of a vehicle with air brakes, all of the brakes apply at the same time and at the same pressure. Trailers equipped with electric or vacuum brakes work in a similar way.

Applying brake pressure too forcefully or only applying the trailer brakes on slippery roads may cause the wheels to lock up, which can result in a skid or jackknife. Use extra caution when applying brakes in a curve.

Remember that the brakes, tires and suspension of a combination vehicle work best when the vehicle is legally loaded and the load is properly distributed among axles. When the cargo area is empty and there's no ABS, the vehicle's wheels may bounce and lock up. This can make braking more difficult and increase your stopping distance.

You need to take extra care to safely tow two trailers. It can be difficult in an emergency to stop a multiple trailer combination in a straight line. In bad weather, slippery conditions and mountain driving, the risk of skidding and loss of traction increases. Look far ahead, leave plenty of following distance, and slow down to help avoid having to make emergency stops.

Anti-lock braking systems

Anti-lock braking systems (ABS) are mandatory in Canada on all trucks and buses over 4,560 kg manufactured since April 1, 2000 and on all commercial trailers equipped with air brakes.

ABS is an addition to a normal air brake system. It helps prevent wheel lockup or skids caused by overbraking on slippery road surfaces.

Contrary to what many people believe, ABS doesn't allow you to drive faster or stop sooner. In fact, on some surfaces such as gravel, the braking distance needed with ABS may be longer.

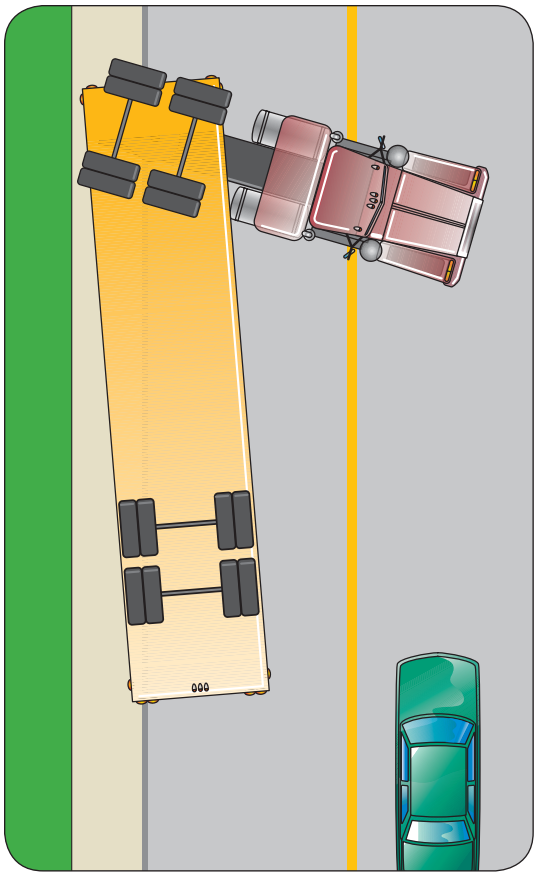
ABS can help prevent wheel lock-up on surfaces where conventional brakes usually lock up, including slippery surfaces. This means you can brake hard without skidding and losing steering control. ABS may also help you prevent your vehicle from jackknifing.

ABS is only as good as the driver. Learn the correct technique and practise it so that you're ready in an emergency. Read the manual from your vehicle manufacturer to learn how to use your ABS properly.

definition

A **full jackknife** occurs when a tractor and the trailer form an angle of 90 degrees or less, relative to one another.

Warning: this can happen even at very low speeds. Jackknifing is often caused by poor braking techniques, including improper use of retarders.



A fully jackknifed tractor/trailer combination.

driving tip

It's a good idea to practise using ABS so that you're familiar with how it works and feels.

A few tips for **emergency** stopping with ABS:

- Apply firm, hard continuous pressure to the brake pedal until the vehicle stops.
- Don't pump the brakes — this turns the system on and off.
- Don't be alarmed by brake noise, pedal movement or shudder. This is normal. Keep applying firm pressure.
- Be extremely cautious when steering around obstacles. Remember that steering and handling characteristics will be affected by the size and load of the vehicle you're driving, and by the trailer you may be towing.
- When you operate combination vehicles, make sure you know which of the units have ABS. If the tractor and trailers do not **all** have ABS, apply the brakes as if you were operating a combination without ABS.

Automatic traction control

Automatic Traction Control (ATC) is an optional addition to an ABS system. It uses the pulsating signal from the speed sensors to detect loss of drive wheel traction on slippery road surfaces.

Using the same wheel sensors used by ABS, ATC can sense if a wheel has lost traction and is spinning instead of helping to accelerate the vehicle. If a drive wheel begins to spin, the traction control system will apply that brake, transferring power to the opposite side. In extremely slippery conditions, the traction control system will reduce engine power, allowing the wheels to regain traction.

Most vehicles equipped with ATC will have an information decal on the dashboard and a dash-mounted lamp that will light if wheel spin occurs.

Review questions

1. What's the final factor that will determine if the vehicle will move?
2. How is brake heat dissipated?
3. If the weight of the vehicle is doubled, how many times must the stopping power be increased?
4. What causes brake fade?
5. What can cause jackknifing?
6. What's the difference between ABS and ATC?
7. What's one of the hazards of stopping a tractor/trailer combination?
8. When should a retarding device be used?
9. What's brake lag time?

3 basic driving skills

This chapter includes information on basic skills, driving in traffic and vehicle and personal safety.

What you'll learn

After studying this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❏ describe various techniques for driving safely in traffic
- ❏ define the term danger zone and describe how to reduce the size of your danger zone
- ❏ describe the factors that affect your vehicle's turning characteristics and techniques to help you turn safely
- ❏ describe how to back up safely
- ❏ describe when and how to shift gears
- ❏ describe how to handle each of the following special situations: passing and being passed, parking, intersections, crossing railway lines, various weather conditions and night driving
- ❏ identify potential vehicle and personal safety issues and describe how to reduce risks for yourself and other road users.

Sharing the road

When you're sharing the road with other vehicles, it's important that you know how to follow safely, deal with tailgaters and identify your danger zone. These sections provide information that can help you drive safely when there are pedestrians, cyclists and other vehicles on the road. This chapter will also further develop the road safety topics introduced in chapter 2.

Following distance

You can establish a safe following distance using different rules. The rule you should use depends on the type of vehicle you're driving.

In all cases, rules for determining how closely you can safely follow another vehicle apply to ideal driving conditions. If conditions are less than ideal, **increase your following distance**. Driving conditions are affected by:

- road conditions
- vehicle conditions
- your physical and mental condition
- traffic conditions
- lighting conditions
- weather conditions.

fast fact

More than 27 per cent of all greenhouse gas emissions in Canada are produced by the road transportation sector. Heavy-duty vehicles account for 19 per cent of this total.

Good safe driving habits can reduce fuel consumption by as much as 30 per cent, save thousands of dollars a year in fuel and maintenance costs, and reduce emissions.

For more smart ways to be fuel-efficient, visit Natural Resources Canada's Office of Energy Efficiency website at www.oee.nrcan.gc.ca or call 1-800-387-2000.

Taxi, limousine, ambulance or van

Drivers of passenger cars and light trucks should use the two-second rule for keeping a safe following distance:

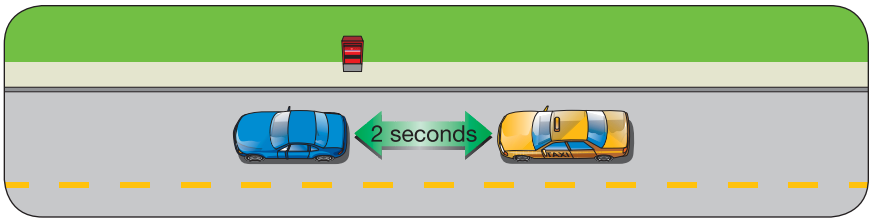
1. Watch the vehicle ahead pass some checkpoint on the roadway, such as an overpass or sign post.
2. Start to count: "One thousand and one, one thousand and two." That's two seconds.

If the checkpoint is reached before the count is finished, your following distance isn't enough — drop back, pick a new checkpoint and count again.

If you're following a motorcycle, you'll need to leave even more space because motorcycles can stop quickly.

Lengthen your following distance on the highway and when road or weather conditions are poor.

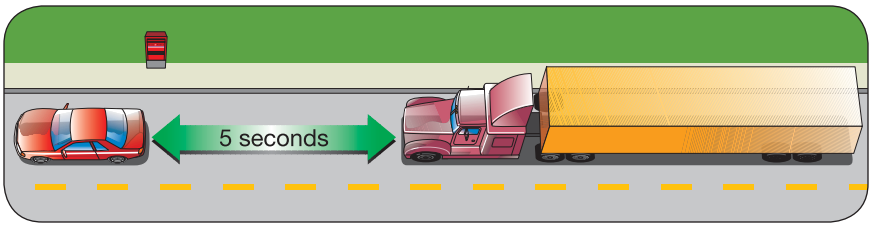
Remember to leave at least two seconds between your vehicle and the vehicle in front when driving a taxi, limousine, ambulance or van. A mailbox is the checkpoint in this illustration.



Bus, truck or other heavy vehicle

Since you need more time and distance to stop if you're driving one of these vehicles, keep at least a five-second following distance.

Keep at least a five-second following distance when driving a bus, truck or heavy vehicle.



When conditions are less than ideal, increase the number of seconds and adjust your following distance.

Traffic flow

definition

Traffic flow refers to the movement of a group of vehicles travelling on one road. The actions of any vehicle within this group may affect several or all of the other vehicles.

Your travelling speed depends on driving conditions, including traffic flow. You need to match your travelling speed with the traffic flow while staying within the speed limit.

Driving faster than the flow

If you drive faster than the traffic flow, you increase your chance of crashing into vehicles in front of you.

- You won't be able to maintain a safe following distance, which means you will be unable to stop quickly and safely.

- You increase your chance of making a wrong decision. Driving faster than the traffic around you requires more lane changes. Each lane change represents a problem that requires quick decision-making. The more decisions you make, the greater the chance you'll make a wrong one.
- You'll tire more quickly. Driving faster than the traffic flow creates tension and causes mental and physical fatigue.

Maintaining a steady speed, within legal limits, at a safe following distance will help give you the time needed to react in an emergency situation. Driving at a steady speed also saves money and helps the environment by reducing the amount of fuel your vehicle burns.

Driving slower than the flow

If you drive slower than the traffic flow, you increase your chance of a collision with vehicles travelling behind or beside you. Other drivers will become impatient and follow too closely or try to overtake your vehicle. After passing, they may cut in leaving you with little or no room for a quick stop.

Large vehicles tend to accelerate and travel more slowly than small vehicles. When you're unable to keep up with the traffic flow, you must travel in the right lane.

Tailgaters

Drivers of large vehicles must rely on outside mirrors for rear vision. You may not be able to see tailgaters who sit in the blind spot directly behind you.

You also may not always be able to prevent a rear-end collision caused by these drivers, but if stops are gradual, the impact may be much less.

Tailgaters are easiest to deal with when they're in front of you. It's a good safety practice to allow tailgaters to pass. Watch for these drivers by checking your rear-view mirror frequently.

When you drive a large commercial vehicle on a highway, leave at least 60 m (200 ft) between your vehicle and other large commercial vehicles.

Always use the right lane when you're travelling more slowly than other traffic and are going up or down a hill where a passing lane is provided. In some cases, signs require slower drivers to keep to the right lanes.

A slow moving vehicle warning sign.

Vehicles may build behind you when you're driving on a one-lane road and travelling more slowly than other traffic, such as when going up a hill. Allow them to pass as soon as it's safe.

It's a good safety practice to use your four-way flashers when you're driving slowly up or down a hill (some companies require this).

Vehicles, machinery or combinations of vehicles that travel at less than 40 km/h should display a red triangle **slow moving vehicle** sign. Don't put this sign on any stationary object or on any vehicle that's travelling faster than 40 km/h.

Traffic-control person ahead.

Construction zones

Look for construction zones ahead and look out for traffic-control persons, construction workers and equipment. Remember, road construction doesn't just occur in the daytime.

In some construction zones, you may need to wait for a pilot car to escort you through the work zone. Leave plenty of following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle immediately ahead. Avoid changing lanes in a construction zone. Also leave space between you, the construction crews and their equipment.

Check radio, television and websites for the latest in traffic reports and updates to find out what's happening along your area roads and intended route. Consider taking an alternate route.

Danger zones

The section of road a vehicle travels through before it can stop is called the vehicle's danger zone because it's physically impossible for you to stop in time to avoid a collision with any object or person.

As your speed increases, the length of your danger zone increases. Less than ideal road conditions, such as rain, snow, ice or gravel, increase the length of your danger zone. Driving fast in these road conditions increases your danger zone even more.

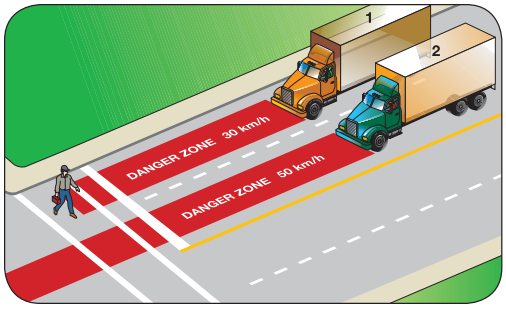
Reduce your danger zone by slowing down. Remember, it's easier to keep out of trouble than get out of trouble.

Your danger zone is reduced when your vehicle's speed is reduced. You also reduce your danger zone when you cover the brake pedal with your foot any time you see a potential hazard developing (for example, whenever you approach an intersection).

fast fact

Professional drivers:

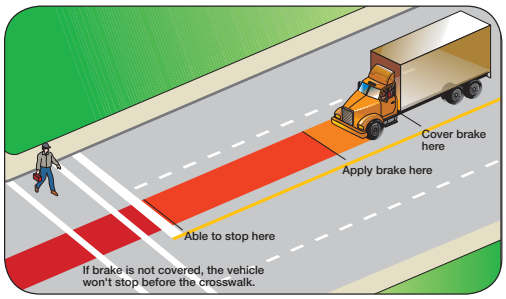
- set their pace according to existing conditions and traffic flow
- maintain a safe stopping distance ahead and behind
- maintain driving space all around their vehicle
- have time to read the traffic pattern
- continuously plan an escape route in case the danger zone becomes occupied.



Truck 1 is approximately 2½ vehicle lengths from the crosswalk when the driver sees the pedestrian. Under ideal conditions, the driver may be able to stop just in time.

The driver of truck 2 can't stop in time, even under ideal conditions.

See **Speed and weight facts** in **chapter 2**.



As soon as you see a potential hazard in your danger zone, remove your foot from the accelerator and put it lightly on the brake pedal. This will help you apply the brakes sooner if you need to make an emergency stop.

Removing your foot from the accelerator and putting it lightly on the brake pedal when you first see a potential hazard in your danger zone reduces your reaction time. Your speed is slowing so you have a better chance of stopping before the crosswalk rather than in the intersection.

Manoeuvring

There are many different types of commercial vehicles and each type has its own driving characteristics. In most cases, commercial drivers operate vehicles that are larger, heavier and longer than others on the road. The extra size, weight and length affect the way these vehicles move, especially around turns and while backing up.

Steering into turns

Steering and handling characteristics are different for conventional, cab-over and forward-control vehicles.

In a conventional design, the driver's seat and steering wheel are positioned behind the steering axle. In a cab-over design, the driver's seat is above the steering axle. In a forward-control design, the driver's seat is in front of the steering axle. The position of the driver's seat is different in each of these configurations, which affects your viewpoint when turning. You'll start your turn at a slightly different point on the turning path depending on the type of vehicle you're driving (conventional, cab-over or forward-control).

These steering differences are apparent even in small vehicles. In large and long vehicles the differences are magnified. The length of your vehicle and the number of articulation points it has will also affect where you start your turn. You'll notice these differences and must account for them when you switch from one type of vehicle to another.

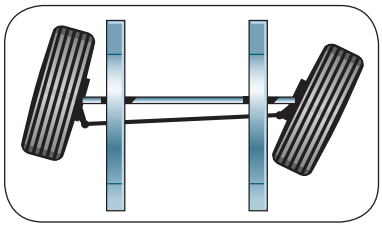
Wheel positions during turns

Steering a large vehicle has the same basic principles as a passenger vehicle. But steering a large or combination vehicle can be much more complicated.

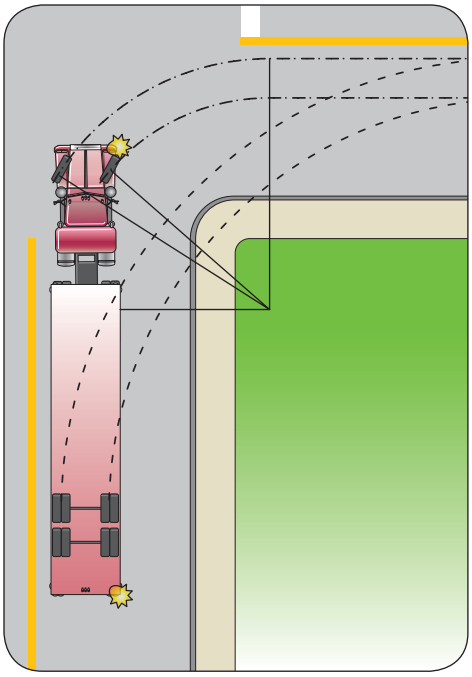
As the operator of a large vehicle, you'll need to consider these two factors which determine the sharpness of your vehicle's turn:

Turning radius

How sharply you can turn the front wheels of your vehicle depends on the make and model of the vehicle you're driving. In all cases, the wheel on the inside of the curve (closest to the direction you're turning) will turn more sharply than the wheel on the outside of the turn. The inside wheel will have a shorter turning radius than the outside wheel.



The wheel on the inside of the turn must pivot more sharply to travel on the shorter radius than the wheel on the outside of the turn.



The radius is the distance from the centre of a circle to the edge of the circle. When a vehicle turns a corner, it's travelling on a curve. If that vehicle were to continue on the same path, it would eventually drive in a complete circle. The distance from the centre of that imaginary circle to the vehicle's wheel is the turning radius.

A vehicle's rear tires have a different turning radius than its front tires. It is important to know how to judge the turning radius of your front tires to prevent your vehicle's rear tires from cutting the corner.

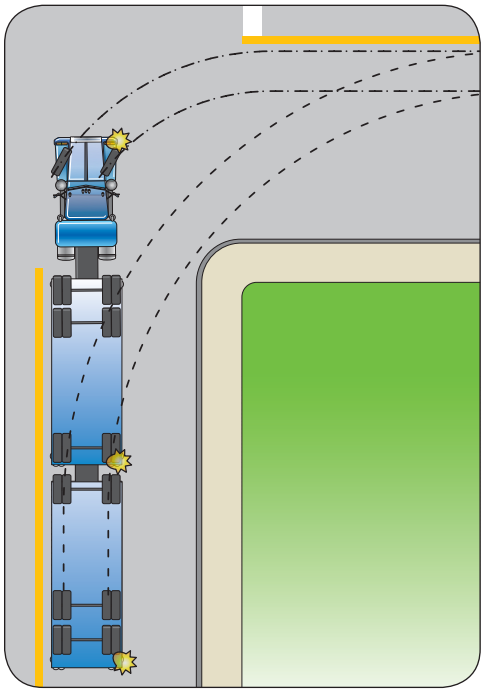
The solid lines in this illustration show the turning radius of the vehicle's steering tires.

definition

Wheelbase is the distance between the front wheels and the rear wheels of a vehicle.

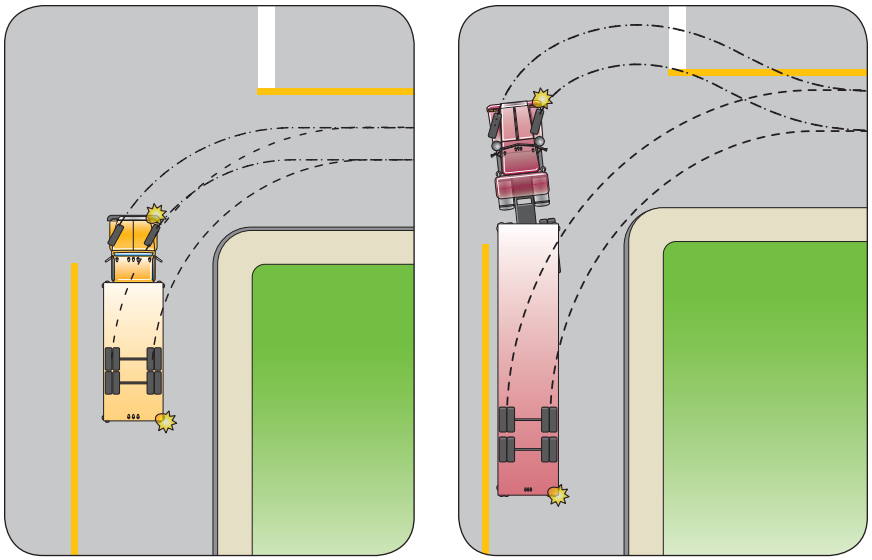
Off track

When a vehicle moves around a curve, the rear wheels follow a different path than the front wheels. The difference between the path of the front wheels and the path of the rear wheels is called off track. The greater the distance between the front wheels and the rear wheels of a vehicle, or a combination of vehicles, the greater the amount of off track.



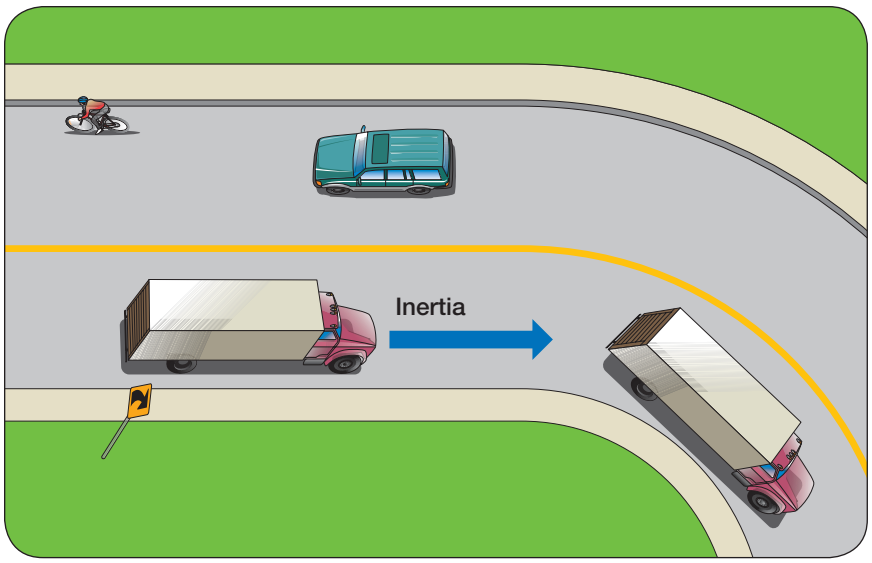
Each set of wheels behind the front wheels turn with some off tracking. A combination vehicle displays several sets of off tracking. The rear wheels of the tractor turn somewhat off track from the front wheels. The rear wheels of the trailer turn with even more off tracking.

Vehicles with longer wheelbases have more off tracking than those with short wheelbases. A combination vehicle will usually have more off tracking than a single-unit vehicle.



A single-unit vehicle and a truck-tractor and semi-trailer demonstrate different turning characteristics.

A single-unit vehicle has different turning characteristics than a truck-tractor and a semi-trailer. Each unit that has more than one set of wheels will have a turning radius and an off-track pattern within itself. The amount of off track depends on a number of factors including the wheel base of the units and the location of the pivot points between the truck and trailers (for example, draw bar connection point or location of the fifth wheel). The longer the wheel base, and the longer the draw bar length or the farther back the fifth wheel is mounted, the greater the amount of off track.



Inertia affects a moving vehicle in a curve.

Curves and turns

Several forces work against you while you move your vehicle around a curve or through a turn. You need to be aware of these and approach each curve at a speed that allows you to safely control your vehicle.

Inertia is the tendency for moving objects — in this case you and your vehicle — to continue to move forward in a straight line. When you brake, inertia tries to keep your vehicle moving. When you go around a curve, inertia tries to keep you going in a straight line.

The faster you're going and the heavier your vehicle, the more inertia pushes your vehicle away from the path of the curve. The faster you're travelling, the more difficult it'll be to keep your vehicle on the path of the curve.

Traction is the grip your tires have on the road. The amount of traction your tires have with the road's surface determines the amount of control you can maintain over your vehicle. If you enter a curve too quickly and try to slow down by applying your brakes, you may lose traction, causing your vehicle to skid, roll over or jackknife.

Reduce your speed before you enter a curve. Enter each curve at a speed that doesn't require you to brake and allows you to apply gradual power while you're in the curve. Make sure you obey any suggested speed signs in curves to avoid tipping over.

definition

Traction is the grip created between a vehicle's tires and the road.

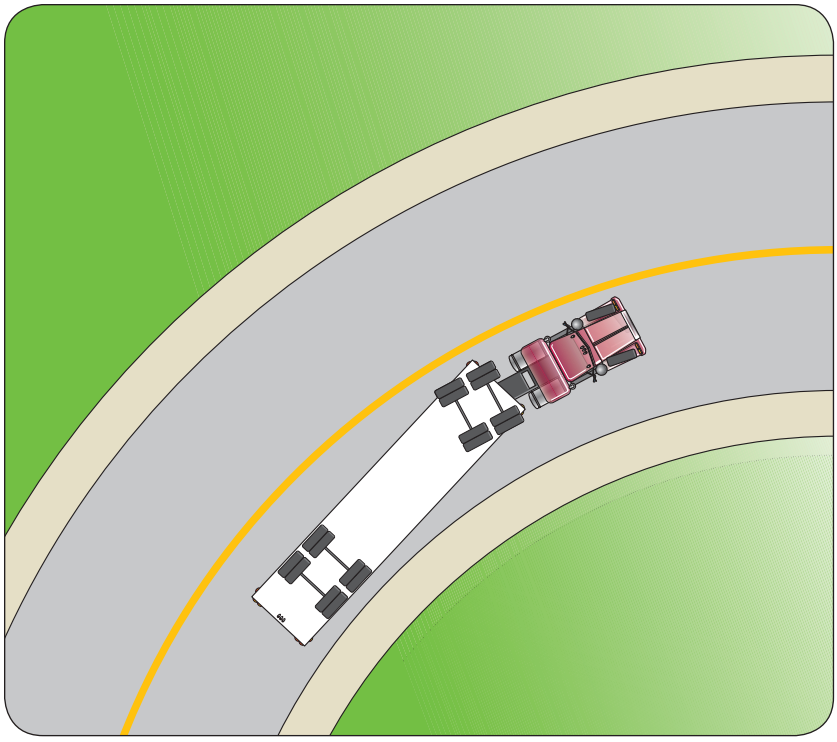
fast fact

Tires that are in poor condition provide poor traction.

Curves

When you curve to the right, keep the front wheels close to the centre line so that your rear wheels don't drop off the pavement or go onto the pavement shoulder.

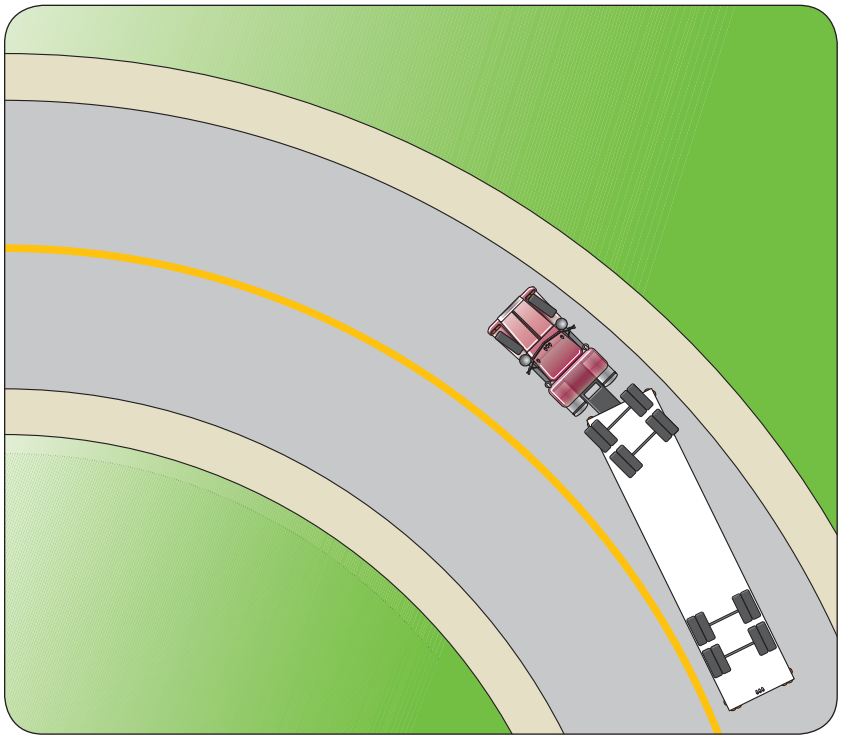
Curve ahead — trucks and buses slow to suggested speed to avoid tipping over.



Position of a tractor and semi-trailer's wheels when turning to the right.

When curving to the left, keep the front wheels close to the right edge of the lane to keep your driver's side rear wheels out of the next lane of traffic.

Curve ahead — slow down.



Position of a tractor and semi-trailer's wheels when turning to the left.

Always watch for signs warning of curves and turns, and adjust your speed and approach.

Negotiating narrow bridges

Entering a narrow bridge with a curved approach requires the driver of a large unit to use caution and skill. You must be familiar with the amount of off track your vehicle displays. Use this information to adjust your speed and approach to the curve so that you can enter the bridge safely.

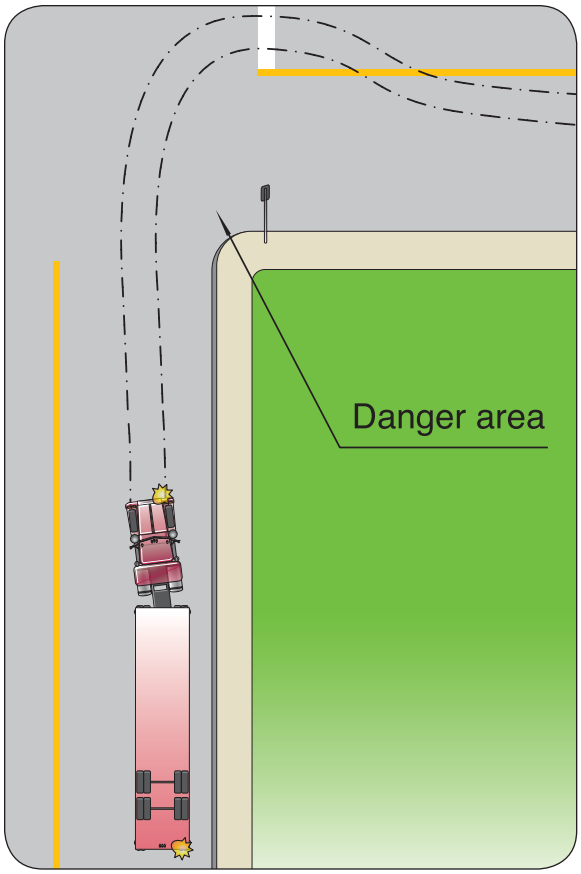
Turning right

When turning right, you need to think about the length of your vehicle including the trailer(s), the off track of the rear wheels, the layout of the streets and the particular intersection where you'll be turning, and traffic at or near the intersection.

These factors will influence your plan for positioning your vehicle to start the turn, and how far from the curb you want to be upon completion of the turn.

If the turning arc of your front wheels is too small, off tracking may cause the back wheels of your trailer to scrape the curb or even leave the road. You'll almost certainly crowd anyone, such as a cyclist, who's travelling on your right side. Running your rear wheels over curbs and sidewalks can damage your tires and seriously injure pedestrians and cyclists. You may hit a power pole, sign post or lamp standard if your vehicle doesn't have enough room to turn. This type of collision can damage your vehicle, as well as the object it hits.

Combination vehicles take more room to turn than single vehicles. Allow yourself enough room to make the turn. Don't accidentally drive up onto the curb and hit an object such as a lamppost.



Check whether smaller vehicles, motorcycles or cyclists are on the right side of your vehicle whenever you make a right turn. Also check for pedestrians on or near the curb. The most dangerous point in a turn is when the tractor has made the turn but the trailer hasn't. At this point the right rear-view mirror is turned so that it's almost useless.

If the streets are narrow and you can't make the right turn without swinging into another lane, you may need to turn wide as you complete the turn. If you must cross into the oncoming lane to make the turn, watch out for vehicles coming toward you. Give them room to pass by or to stop. Don't back up for them, because you might hit someone behind you.

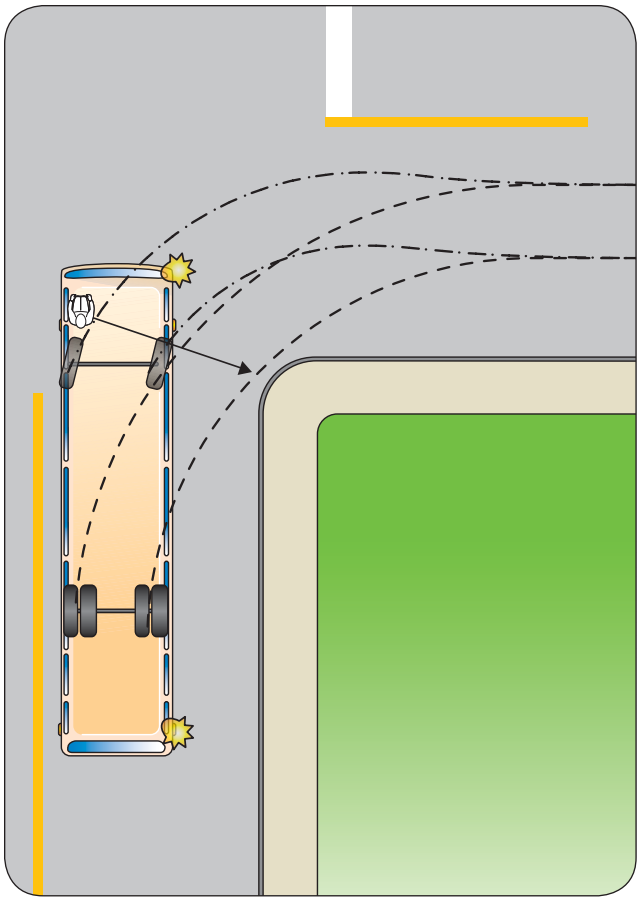
You should keep the rear of your vehicle close to the curb. This'll prevent other drivers from passing you on the right.

Use extreme caution and ensure the movement can be made safely. It's your responsibility to be certain you can move safely without holding up traffic.

Sharp right turns

To make a sharp right turn (particularly with a forward-control vehicle such as a bus):

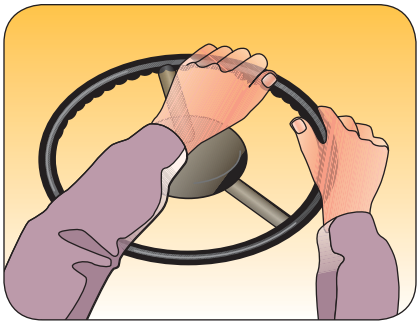
1. Position the vehicle one to two metres from the curb on the approach to the intersection.

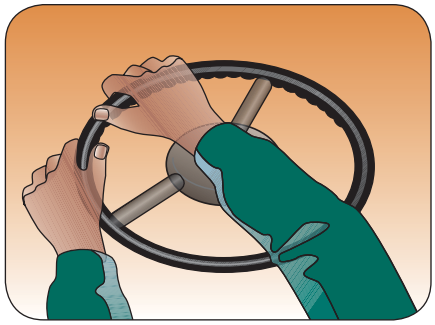


The driver moves the bus into the intersection until the curb on the side street becomes visible. The driver then begins the turn.

2. Drive straight until the curb line of the side street can be seen through the front entrance door (if you're operating a bus).
3. Enter the turn at a low speed. This will allow you to turn the steering wheel more slowly, which will let you make a smoother turn using less energy.

The hand-over-hand steering method is recommended when you need to do a lot of turning. Pull on the right half of the wheel for right turns and the left half of the wheel to make left turns. Don't grasp the inside of the steering wheel. If you do and the wheel slips or jerks, you may injure yourself.





These hand positions are recommended for right- and left-hand turns. Always use both hands to steer your vehicle.

Turning left

Just as with right turns, ensure your vehicle's turning arc is large enough to keep your vehicle from cutting the corner. If you turn too soon, the left side of your vehicle may hit another vehicle in the intersection or run over a median because of off tracking.

If you're turning into a multi-lane street, the size of your commercial vehicle may make it difficult to turn into the leftmost lane. Instead, you may choose to turn into a lane to the right. Be sure it's safe and available to you.

If there are two turning lanes, you should turn from the right-hand turn lane as this lane will better accommodate your vehicle's off tracking.

As with right turns, check for pedestrians and cyclists when turning left.

Traffic circles and roundabouts

A roundabout sign.

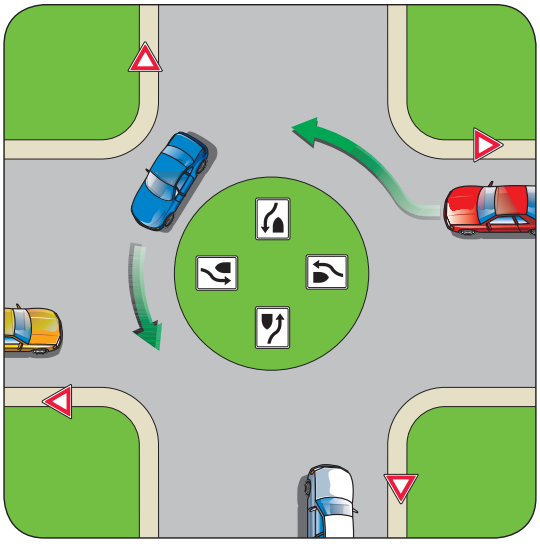
These are found in some areas to help ensure safe passage of traffic through an intersection without having to stop the flow of traffic. Roundabouts, while generally larger than traffic circles, work the same way:

- slow down as you approach the circle
- yield to any traffic in the circle
- if another vehicle arrives at the traffic circle at the same time as you do, yield to a vehicle on your right
- go around the traffic circle to the right (counter-clockwise).

Traffic circles

Traffic circles are designed for use in residential streets where trucks and buses don't usually travel.

If you're driving a large truck or bus through a traffic circle, encroaching onto the median is okay to get through.



Turn right to enter a traffic circle and turn right again to leave it. Yield to vehicles that are already in the traffic circle. If another vehicle arrives at the traffic circle at the same time as you do, yield to the vehicle on your right.

driving tip

Traffic circles and roundabouts often have a truck apron around the edge of the island in the middle. Large vehicles may need to drive over the apron in order to drive through the traffic circle or roundabout.

Slow down when approaching a roundabout and yield to traffic already in it. Take care when driving a large commercial vehicle, since you may need to take up more than one lane to get through the roundabout. When exiting, signal "right" in advance of your exit location.

This sign warns to keep away from large vehicles such as trucks and buses in roundabouts.

Roundabouts

Some roundabouts have more than one lane. Lane use signs and markings may be displayed at the approaches to indicate where you can go in each lane when you're in the roundabout.

Make sure you know where you want to go — and are in the proper lane to get there — before you enter.

Take care when driving through a roundabout in a large commercial vehicle. Due to your vehicle's off track, you may need to take up more than one lane. Make sure there are no vehicles in the lane beside you.

In the example above, the red car has entered the roundabout from the south in the right lane after first yielding to vehicles in the roundabout. The driver may either turn right at the east exit or continue straight and take the north exit.

The blue car entered from the south in the left lane, and has merged into the left lane in the roundabout. Because the blue car entered from the left lane, the driver can't immediately turn right at the first exit (east), but can take either the north or west exit.

The tractor-trailer combination entered the roundabout from the east in the left lane and the driver is going to take the south exit. The trailer is partially in the right lane due to the length of the combination.

The driver of the green car must yield to the tractor trailer already in the roundabout.

Backing up

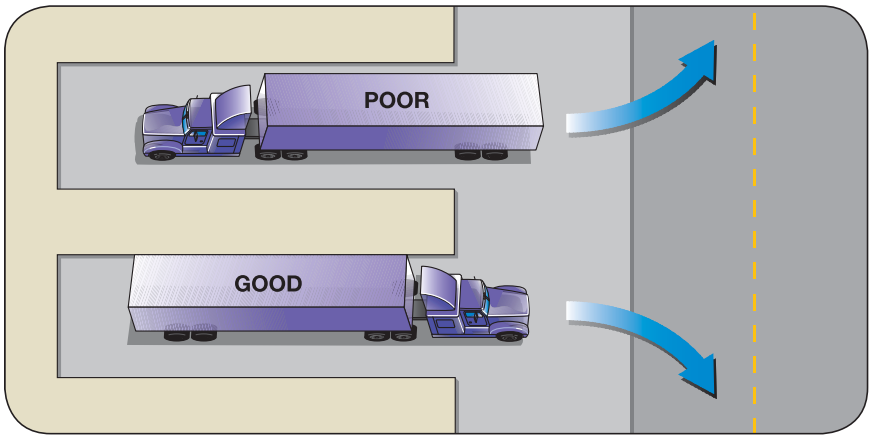
Backing up must always be done with extreme caution. With a few exceptions, you'll be responsible for any crash that happens when you're backing up. This manoeuvre becomes dangerous any time you don't make certain the way is clear. You may have to check several times to be sure the way remains clear during the entire manoeuvre.

Most crashes that involved a backing-up vehicle are caused by drivers who didn't see something they should've.

Follow these tips to reduce your risk of causing a backing-up crash:

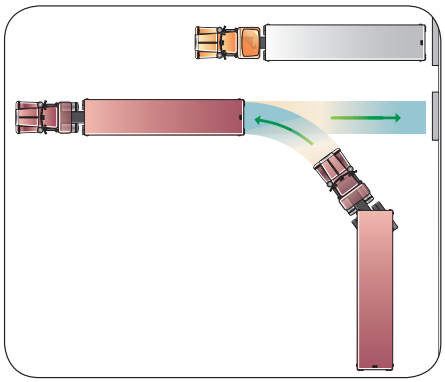
- Avoid backing up whenever possible.
- If you must back up, plan ahead to minimize the distance.
- Be certain that the area you are backing into is clear.
- Use a person to guide your vehicle whenever possible. If you can't use a guide, get out of your vehicle and walk completely around it before you start to back up. Repeat this every vehicle length.
- Sound your horn at least once every vehicle length to warn other road users that you're about to move.
- Back your vehicle out of traffic rather than into traffic.

Remember that it's easier to back out of traffic than into traffic. The driver in the vehicle at the top drove straight into the loading dock, and will now have the difficult task of backing into traffic to get back onto the road. The driver in the vehicle at the bottom backed out of traffic into the loading dock, and can now easily drive forward to get back onto the road.

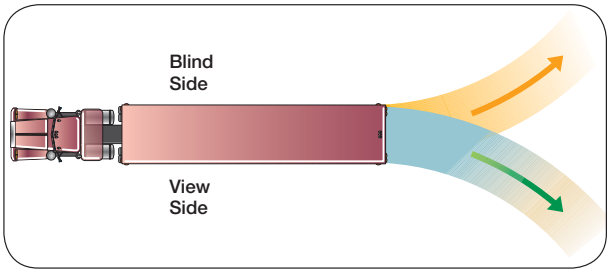


Don't back your vehicle into the blind side when it's possible to back into the view side. Make your approach in a way that allows you to see the area you are backing into before you put your vehicle into reverse.

Make your approach so that you can see the area you're backing into.



Whenever possible, back your vehicle into the view side, not the blind side.

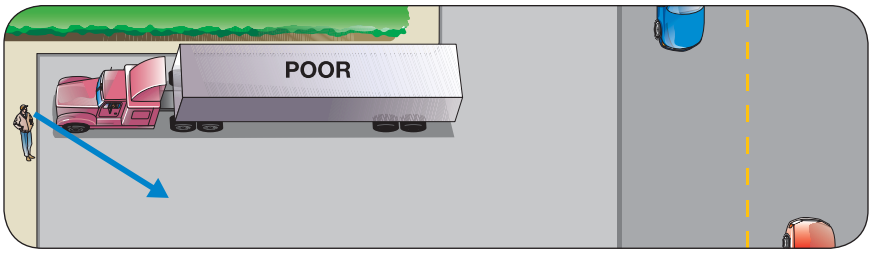


Backing up with a guide

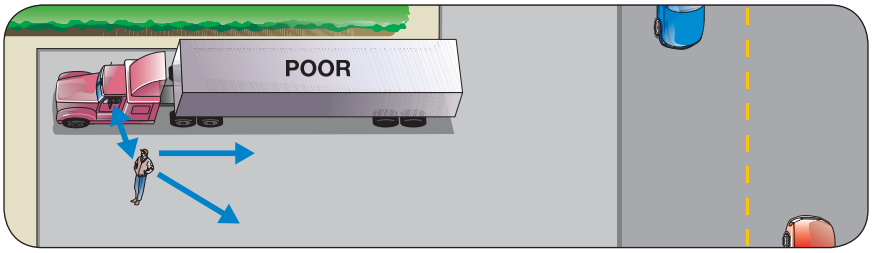
Whenever possible, use a guide — anyone who can watch carefully and warn you of hazards.

Position your guide where there's a clear, continuous view of the backing path your vehicle will follow and make sure you can see the guide throughout the manoeuvre.

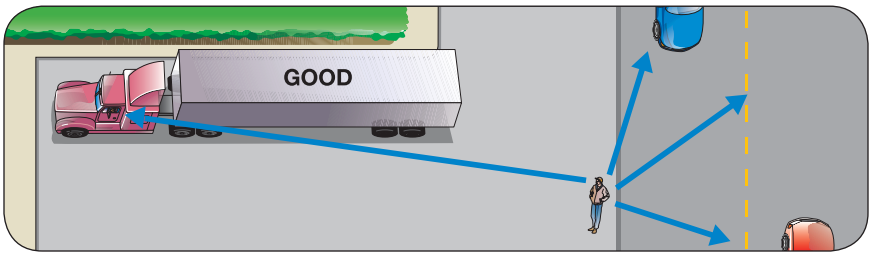
In this illustration, the guide can't see the path directly behind the vehicle.



In this illustration, the guide can only see traffic coming from one direction.



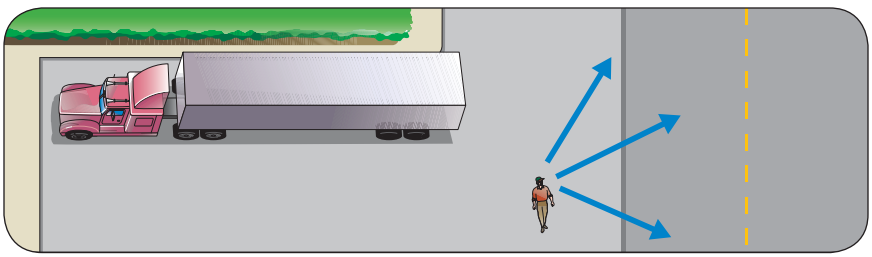
In this illustration, the driver can see the guide and the guide can see in all directions.



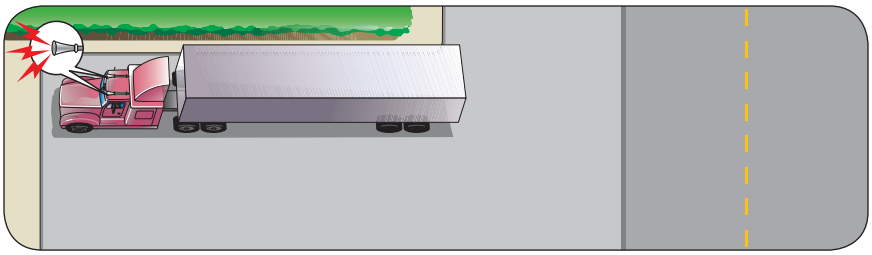
Backing up without a guide

Whenever you back up a vehicle without help from a guide:

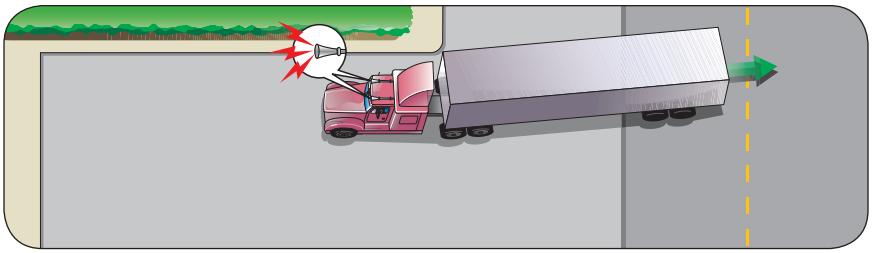
1. Step out of the vehicle and check the backing-up area for hazards. Look for clearances and obstacles above, below, to the sides, to the rear and to the front of your vehicle.



2. Enter the cab, sound your horn and watch both mirrors as you back up very slowly. A good practice is to sound the horn for each vehicle length you travel.



3. Stop, exit the cab and recheck behind, above, below, to the sides and ahead if you're backing up a long way. A series of short backing up manoeuvres is safer than one long one.



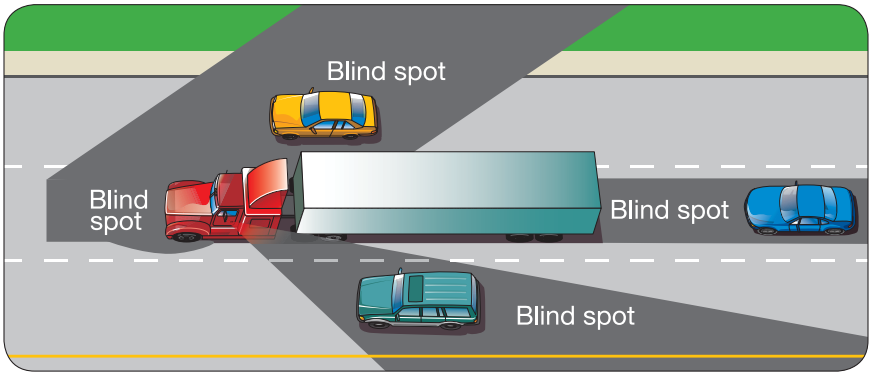
Seeing and being seen

While large vehicles usually offer a better view of the road ahead and to the sides than passenger cars, they also have dangerous blind spots.

Big windshields and a high seat position give you a good view down the road but there's an area immediately in front of your vehicle where you can't see anything. The longer the hood on your vehicle, the longer the blind spot.

The higher seat position can also hide a car or pedestrian alongside of your vehicle, particularly on the passenger side. Large side mirrors provide a clear view of the road behind you, except for the blind spot immediately behind every vehicle.

Check carefully for vehicles and bicycles that may be travelling in your blind spots. Pay particular attention in slow urban areas where cyclists often share the road.



Watch for other drivers in any of your vehicle's blind spots.

Always stay far enough behind the vehicle you're following to allow you to make your stops in a smooth, gradual way, even if the vehicle ahead makes a panic stop. Giving yourself enough room to make gradual stops reduces the likelihood of you hitting another vehicle and gives drivers behind lots of notice that you're reducing your speed. This reduces your chance of being hit by a tailgater.

Finally, never assume that the other driver has seen you. Many collisions are the result of drivers not seeing something the other driver expected them to see.

Using your mirrors

fast fact

Convex or spot mirrors make things look smaller and farther away than they actually are.

To drive defensively, it's important to know where your vehicle is in relation to other vehicles on the road. Scan the traffic ahead, behind and to your sides constantly. Look ahead for clues that will tell you whether other vehicles are about to change speed or stop. Frequent checks in your rear- and side-view mirrors will alert you to drivers who are passing or getting ready to pass you. These checks also help you know whether there are vehicles behind you. Give all drivers plenty of warning whenever you're about to stop, change directions or change lanes.

Looking ahead

driving tip

By looking ahead, keeping good space margins, and anticipating road hazards, you can avoid sudden stops and changes in speed. These smart driving habits also save fuel.

You should develop the habit of watching the traffic well ahead of your vehicle. Look for traffic lights, turn signals, pedestrians and vehicles pulling into your lane or making other lane changes. Approach every intersection considering whether the lights are likely to change. A light that's been the same colour for some time is "stale." That means it could change before you reach the intersection. Be prepared to stop. Traffic lights are synchronized on some streets, so by driving at the posted speed you'll make every green light. Adjust your driving speed to take advantage of this.

Which lane should you use?

driving tip

Choose a lane that will allow you to go where you want to go and maintain a steady speed. The fewer lane changes you do, the better. Frequent lane changes increase the risk of a collision and can increase fuel consumption.

Choose the lane that gives you the best vision, allows you to go where you want to go, and that best allows you to blend in with other traffic. A right-hand lane is best on a multi-lane divided highway. This is especially important if you're driving more slowly than other vehicles or if signs direct you to keep out of the left lane.

On freeways, drive in the far right or centre lane, leaving the left lane for higher-speed traffic and passing vehicles.

Lane use

Look ahead for lane-use changes so you're prepared if the lane ends or becomes a turning lane. Be sure that you're in the lane that allows you to go where you want.

fast fact

On a divided highway with two or more lanes, the nearest edge could be the left shoulder.

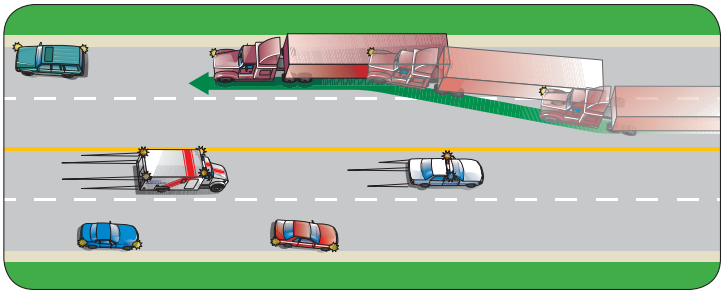
Emergency vehicles

Police cars, ambulances and fire engines are equipped with flashing lights and/or sirens. Yield the right-of-way to vehicles that are using flashing red or blue lights and sirens (or other audible warning signals such as buzzers or horns). You must quickly:

- drive to a position parallel to and as close as possible to the nearest edge or curb of the roadway
- stop your vehicle clear of any intersection
- remain stopped until the emergency vehicle has passed.

Don't assume that there's only one emergency vehicle on the road. Listen and look for others. When you resume driving, stay well back from the emergency vehicle(s).

You must yield the right-of-way to emergency vehicles such as police cars and ambulances. Whenever you see flashing lights and/or hear sirens, be sure to pull off to the side of the road and stop. If you're travelling in the left, or fast lane on a divided highway that has a median in the middle, pull off to the left side of the road.



Emergency workers on roads

Slow down and leave plenty of room when passing stopped emergency vehicles displaying flashing red and/or blue or amber lights. These include police cars, fire trucks, ambulances, tow trucks and vehicles used by vehicle inspectors, conservation officers and park rangers.

All traffic must slow down when approaching stopped emergency vehicles displaying flashing lights.

Exception: this rule doesn't apply if you're on a divided highway and approaching the emergency workers from the opposite direction. If you're in the lane next to a stopped emergency vehicle — in either direction — change lanes if traffic permits.

Shifting gears

You're probably familiar with operating automatic transmissions. As a commercial driver you may operate vehicles with manual transmissions that have 10 or more gears. Heavy vehicles are usually powered by diesel engines equipped with engine fuel governors.

You need the knowledge, instruction and practice to operate large vehicle transmissions smoothly. Before you start out on any trip, you also need to be familiar with the shift pattern and shift points of your vehicle.

There are many different manual transmissions used in commercial vehicles, so only general information is given in this guide. Consult your manufacturer's manual for more information.

fast fact

If it's difficult to shift to the next gear after the transmission is left in neutral too long, don't try to force the shift. Instead, shift back to neutral, release the clutch and increase engine speed to match road speed. Then try again.

Knowing how to shift gears

Most heavy vehicles with manual transmissions don't have synchromesh gears and so it's essential that you become skilled at double-clutching.

Double-clutching

Double-clutching means depressing the clutch pedal twice in the process of moving from one gear to another. Shifting gears by double-clutching requires practice. Shifting to a higher gear is called upshifting, and is done when you want to go faster. Shifting to a lower gear is called downshifting, and is done as you slow down. Upshifting and downshifting with double-clutching are performed slightly differently.

To upshift, follow these steps:

1. Release the accelerator pedal. Depress the clutch pedal and shift to neutral at the same time.
2. Release the clutch pedal.
3. Let the engine and gears slow to the r.p.m. needed for the next higher gear.
4. Depress the clutch pedal and shift to a higher gear at the same time.
5. Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator at the same time.

To downshift, follow these steps:

1. Release the accelerator pedal. Depress the clutch pedal and shift to neutral at the same time.
2. Release the clutch pedal.
3. Depress the accelerator to increase the engine speed to the r.p.m. needed in the lower gear.
4. Depress the clutch pedal and shift to a lower gear at the same time.
5. Release the clutch pedal while maintaining constant pressure on the accelerator.

Knowing when to shift gears

At any given speed, the engine is developing both torque and horsepower. Torque is the ability of the engine to move the vehicle. Horsepower is used to develop speed. Peak torque is found at a lower engine speed than peak horsepower. The vehicle should be operated between the engine's peak torque and peak horsepower. This range is referred to as the normal operating r.p.m. range of the engine. To keep within the normal operating r.p.m. range, the transmission should be shifted according to the engine's peak torque and peak horsepower.

fast fact

Lugging occurs when the engine is operated below peak torque for any length of time.

Shift the transmission progressively. To do this, use only enough torque to get the vehicle moving and then shift to the next higher gear.

Sometimes drivers can skip gears to achieve maximum speed more quickly.

To shift gears smoothly, find the transmission's shifting range. A tachometer, which indicates engine speed, can help you decide when to shift.

Progressive shifting is recommended for many new vehicles with high-torque engines. The r.p.m. you need to shift at becomes higher as you select higher gears. For example, a manufacturer may recommend shifting from first gear to second gear at 1,200 r.p.m. and from fifth gear to sixth gear at 1,350 r.p.m.

Another shifting method is to use a standard r.p.m. split. For example, if the peak engine torque is at 1,500 r.p.m. and the peak horsepower is at 2,000 r.p.m., you can upshift by accelerating to 2,000 r.p.m., then double-clutching to enable the engine speed to decrease to 1,500 r.p.m., and then upshifting. This method may not be cost-effective and may be hard on modern engines. Refer to your vehicle manufacturer's guide book to decide which shifting method is best for you.

fast fact

Shift patterns and characteristics vary depending upon the engine and transmission. Check your vehicle operator's manual for information related to your vehicle.

Shifting skills

This section will give you details about how to shift the gears of some common engines and how to shift gears on hills and curves. Large vehicles powered by gas or diesel have governors (speed controllers) which regulate the amount of fuel burned and engine r.p.m. Small vehicles don't have governors. The way you shift depends on whether your vehicle has a governor.

Shifting gasoline-powered (not governed) engines

driving tip

Smart driving techniques like progressive shifting, choosing the best driving speed, and proper braking techniques help to save fuel.

Steps to upshift a vehicle with a gasoline-powered engine:

1. Start in low gear. Use only enough throttle to start the vehicle moving.
2. When the engine begins to accelerate, quickly shift to the next gear. Shift to higher gears as soon as you have the power.
3. As your vehicle's speed increases and you begin shifting into the higher gears, allow the engine to develop more power before each shift so the rate of acceleration increases.
4. As you complete each shift, engage the clutch smoothly, and engage the throttle at the same time. This allows for a smooth engagement and no shock on drive train components.

fast fact

If you need to apply the throttle with a diesel engine to move off with a loaded vehicle, you should be using a lower gear.

Shifting gasoline- or diesel-powered governed engines

An engine governor controls the amount of fuel going to the engine and regulates the speed of the engine. A governor lets you start a vehicle on level ground and on grades without using the throttle.

Always squeeze the throttle, rather than stabbing or jabbing at it. This will result in smooth acceleration or deceleration through the gears, just like smooth braking when you squeeze the brake pedal.

Use only enough power to shift the vehicle into the next gear. Depending upon your vehicle's weight and transmission gear ratios, you may be able to skip gears on down grades or level grades. Your engine's torque characteristics will let you know when you should shift to the next gear (usually when the engine begins to accelerate quickly). Engage the clutch smoothly when you complete each shift to avoid shocking the drive train, load or passengers.

Multi-speed rear axles and auxiliary transmissions

Many large vehicles have multi-speed rear axles and auxiliary transmission features to provide extra gears. Check your vehicle operator's manual for more detailed information.

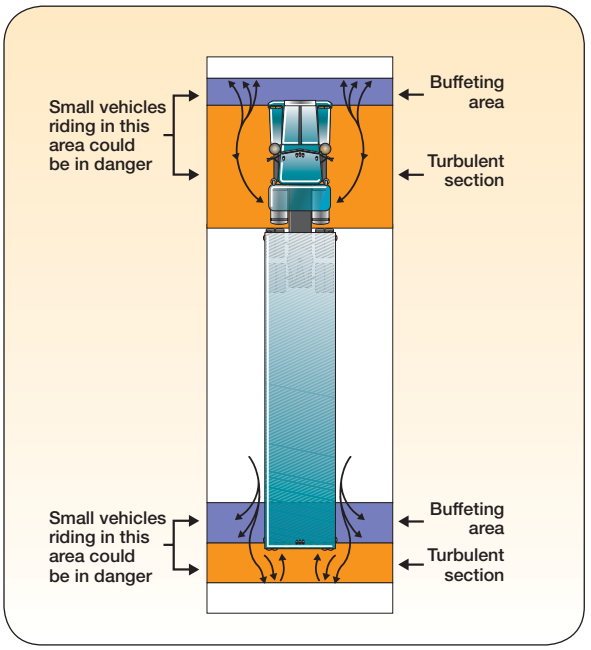
Entering curves

Before you enter a curve, slow to a safe speed and downshift to a gear that lets you use engine power all through the curve. This will keep your vehicle stable and provide good acceleration as you leave the curve.

Passing and being passed

Passing or being passed by a heavy vehicle is very different than by a passenger car.

Large vehicles travelling at high speeds create air turbulence that can be hazardous to smaller vehicles. The larger your vehicle, the more wind turbulence. A car, bicycle or other road user travelling directly in front of a truck, alongside the cab, by the back area of the trailer or at the immediate rear of the trailer is in an area of air turbulence. For cyclists, the air turbulence from your vehicle can cause them to lose control.



Areas of turbulence.

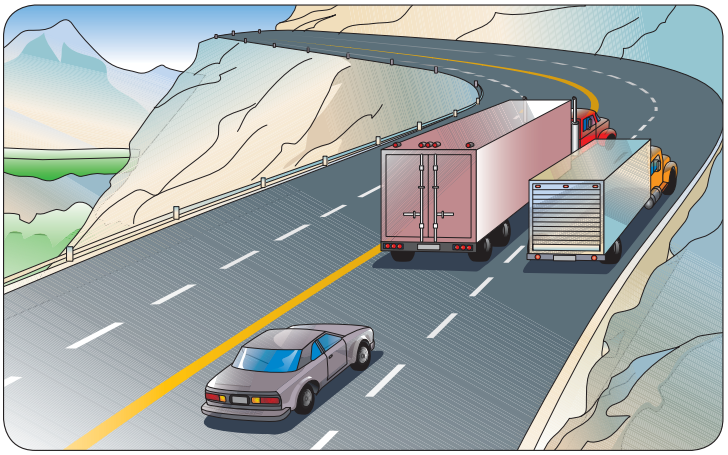
Be alert for road users who ride in these areas. They may be forced off a narrow roadway or drawn into the side of your vehicle. If a smaller vehicle continues to ride in your area of turbulence, slow down until it's out.

Use your four-way flashers to warn other drivers if you can't keep up with traffic. In some areas, these road signs are posted as a reminder.

Passing

Drivers often think big vehicles are travelling faster than they actually are. When you overtake or pass passenger vehicles, observe the speed limit and guard against startling inexperienced or nervous drivers.

Drivers often become frustrated when a commercial vehicle holds them up as it passes another commercial vehicle that's driving at almost the same speed. If the passing truck occupies the fast lane when it isn't absolutely necessary, traffic may become congested.



The truck in the fast lane is blocking a faster-moving passenger vehicle.

Being passed

By directing other drivers to pass, you may be encouraging them to risk a pass they can't complete safely. But when other drivers indicate they want to overtake your vehicle, help them to pass safely. Reduce your speed and give them room.

fast fact

Never use a trailer hand valve to hold an unattended unit. Over time the air may drain away and the brakes may release.

driving tip

You may need to leave the engine idling for three to five minutes to let it cool down after driving on the highway. Idling for any longer wastes fuel, increases emissions, and can clog fuel injectors.

For the first hour, the engine will actually stay warmer if it's turned off.

Parking

It's important to ensure your vehicle stays in place when parked. To prevent a runaway vehicle:

- Set the parking brake in the tractor.
- Place the transmission in the lowest forward gear, if parked facing uphill, or reverse gear if parked facing downhill, or park if the vehicle has an automatic transmission. If the vehicle has main and auxiliary transmissions, place both in gear. If the vehicle is equipped with a two-speed axle, the axle must be in low range.
- Apply the parking brakes on both the tractor and trailer.
- Most trailers equipped with air brakes also have spring brakes. If your trailer doesn't have spring brakes, apply the trailer brakes and block the wheels. Over time, the air pressure may bleed down and may cause the trailer brakes to release.
- If you're parking a single-unit vehicle on an uphill with a curb, turn the wheels to the left towards the centre of the road.
- If you're parking a single-unit vehicle on an uphill with no curb, turn the wheels to the right towards the edge of the roadway.

fast fact

Spring brakes are effective only when brakes are correctly adjusted.

- If you're parking a tractor-trailer combination on an uphill with or without a curb, always turn the wheels to the left towards the centre of the road.
- If you're parking any vehicle on a downgrade, always turn the wheels to the right towards the edge of the roadway.
- Stop the engine. Lock the ignition and remove the ignition key.
- You should block the wheels of any large vehicle parked on even a slight grade.

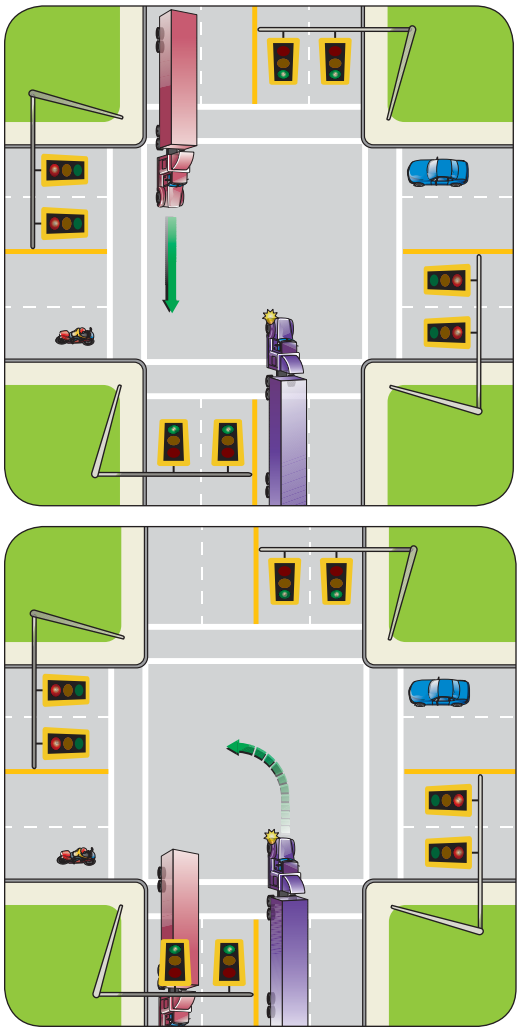
Crossings

Drivers must be constantly aware of the vehicles ahead, behind and beside them. Pay particular attention to the vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians at the crossings you drive through.

Intersections

Intersections can be confusing and all drivers need to know right-of-way rules (found in *Yukon Driver's Basic Handbook*). Don't depend on other drivers to obey these rules. Follow these commonsensical practices:

The driver of the purple truck must yield the right of way to the red truck and wait until it has proceeded through the intersection before turning.



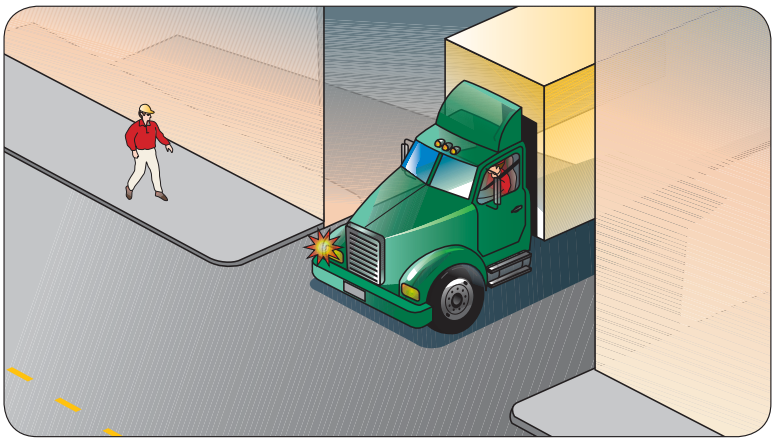
- Don't assume you have the right-of-way, even when your right-of-way is controlled by traffic signs or traffic lights.
- When you're planning to turn, get in the proper lane well before the intersection and signal other drivers to show them you intend to turn. Reduce your speed gradually before entering the intersection. Turn only when it can be done safely, and your path is clear of other traffic and pedestrians.
- Look left and right before entering any intersection. Look for and expect someone to run the sign or lights.
- Enter a limited-view intersection at a speed that allows you to stop if you need to.
- Look ahead for stale green lights. Expect them to change. Decide in advance whether you'll have to stop to avoid running through the light.
- When the light turns green, check left, right and ahead for any latecomers before you enter the intersection.
- Don't depend on other drivers for your safety: they may forget to signal; they may signal and not turn; they may turn into a wrong lane; or they may fail to yield.
- Don't change lanes, pass or overtake other vehicles as you are approaching or going through an intersection.
- Give full attention to each and every intersection, lane and driveway. Keep your vehicle under full control.
- Don't use the your vehicle's size to force other road users into giving you the right-of-way. Give the right-of-way; don't try to take it. Move only when you're certain other road users have given you the right-of-way.

fast fact

Alleys and lanes are often narrow and congested, you must drive slowly and use extreme caution when navigating these roadways.

Alleys, lanes and side roads

If you drive from an alley, lane or side road onto a highway, you must:



You must stop and yield the right-of-way when pulling out of an alley.

- Stop your vehicle before you drive across the sidewalk or sidewalk area.
- Yield the right-of-way to pedestrians in the sidewalk area and to motor vehicles on the highway.

Railway crossings

Large commercial vehicles need more space and more time to respond if a train is in the area. Also note the condition of the track and whether your vehicle will have any difficulty getting across.

Two road signs that alert you to a railway crossing ahead.

Controlled and uncontrolled crossings

All vehicles must stop at controlled railway crossings if signalled to do so. A controlled crossing has a flag person, stop sign, crossing gate or an electric or mechanical signalling device.

When you stop for a railway crossing:

1. Stop five to 15 m from the railway crossing.
2. Look both ways and listen for any approaching trains — opening your driver's side window or bus passenger loading door will help you hear better.
3. Move forward when safe. Don't shift gears while crossing.

Don't park any vehicle within 15 m of the nearest rail of a railway crossing.

Don't ever cross a railway track if a railway crossing gate is down.

Vehicles that are required to stop at all uncontrolled main railway crossings are:

- school buses carrying children
- buses carrying passengers
- vehicles transporting explosive, poisonous or flammable substances as cargo or as part of their cargo
- vehicles used to transport combustibles or corrosive liquids, or liquefied petroleum gas, whether empty or loaded.

fast fact

Uncontrolled main railway crossings don't include industrial tracks in a business or residential district or railway spur lines.

Crossing in a large vehicle

Crossing railway tracks can be especially hazardous when you're driving a large vehicle because:

- Longer trucks need to travel further and will use more time to clear a crossing.
- Heavier trucks take more time and need more room to stop before railway crossings.
- Bigger vehicles can cause a train to derail if there's a collision.
- Larger vehicles often have low clearances which may cause trailers to hang up or to displace tracks.

Minimize your crossing time — Before you cross a railway line, check that the track is clear far enough to give you at least 10 seconds to cross — more if your vehicle requires it or if you're crossing more than one track at a time.

Things that can increase the time you take to cross railway tracks include:

- the weight and length of your truck
- dragging brakes
- laws and rules against shifting gears
- rough crossing surfaces
- approach grades
- the angle of crossing.

Before you begin to cross, be certain there's room for your vehicle on the other side of the tracks. Stopping on the tracks is extremely dangerous. You must not shift gears while crossing railroad tracks.

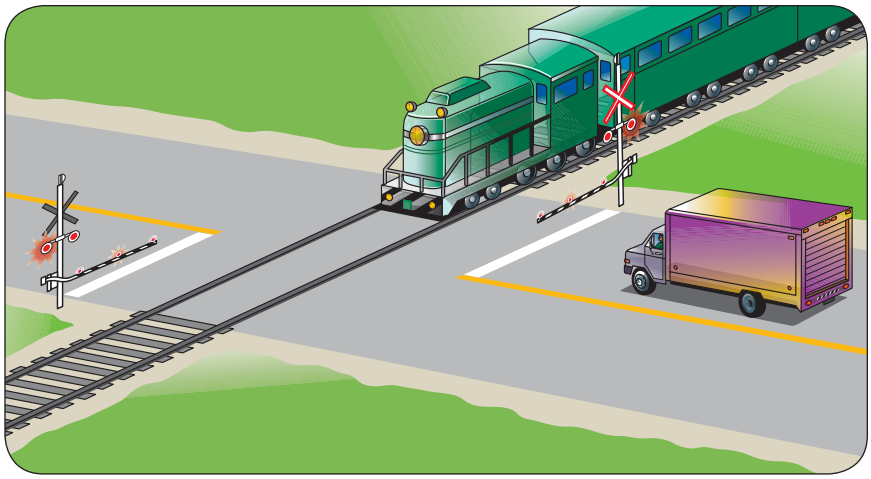
Watch for humpback crossings — Over time, humps can form at railway crossings and present a danger to many low-clearance vehicles because:

- low bed trailers may hang up on the crossing surface or the rails
- low-hanging trailer appliances (for example, dolly wheels and tool boxes) may catch on the rail.

Crossing more than one track — Take extra caution when crossing more than one track. There may be other trains. Don't assume that the train you can see is the only one in the area.

Railway crossings at rural roads — Pay extra attention when you cross railway tracks in rural areas because:

- approach grades may be steeper
- snow banks may be higher
- brush can affect visibility
- there are fewer automated warning systems
- there may be more humpback crossings.



The truck driver stopped at this controlled railway crossing because the red light was flashing. The driver must not cross the tracks until it's safe. Remember, it takes larger, heavier vehicles much longer to cross railroad tracks than smaller, lighter vehicles.

Acts of nature

No matter how well you prepare yourself and your vehicle, there will always be conditions beyond your control. These include weather conditions and the hazards brought on by darkness.

Animals on the road

In Yukon, animals on the road are a major hazard. Crashing into a large animal can cause damage and injury, not just to the animal, but to you and your passengers.

To help prevent a collision with an animal:

- Watch for animal crossing signs. Slow down in these areas.
- Slow down and use caution when you see wildlife on or near a highway, so you can react in case it crosses your path.
- Be alert, especially at dusk or dawn.
- Look for sudden, unusual spots of light on the roadway at night. This may be the reflection of your headlights off an animal's eyes.
- Take extra caution in spring and fall — vegetation growth in the ditches along the side of the road in spring is an attractive source of forage for many wildlife species, and in fall, many animal species are on the move during the mating season.
- Remember that wild animals often move in herds. If you see one animal, there may be more.

If an animal is directly in front of you:

- Check your rear-view mirror to see if there's a vehicle behind you.
- Assess the risks and decide on an action. Can you stop safely? Would vehicles behind you be able to stop safely? Can you steer around the animal? Would it be better to hit the animal and risk a crash?
- Slow down but resist the urge to slam on your brakes. This could send your vehicle out of control.
- Leave a wide margin when you drive around an animal. A frightened animal may run in any direction.
- If the animal is large and you can't stop in time, brake firmly and steer to strike the animal at an angle. Let up on the brake pedal just before hitting the animal. This will cause the front of your vehicle to rise and reduce the chance that the animal will come through the windshield.

Weather conditions

Good drivers ensure their vehicle is properly equipped for weather hazards and know when conditions are too dangerous to risk driving.

To adjust to ice, sleet or snow, you need to:

- Get the feel of the road when you start out. At a slow speed, test the steering and brakes for control.

driving tip

Make sure you know how to use your vehicle's heater and defroster controls. Some heater defrosters have a position to allow for recirculating the air in the vehicle's interior. But don't use this position in cold weather — it can cause windows to fog up.

- Reduce your speed to suit ice or snow conditions. Put on chains if necessary.
- Apply light pressure to your brake. Avoid moving the steering wheel in a quick or erratic manner.
- Keep your windows and windshields clear, inside and out. Maintain wiper blades and lights in good working order. Use the heater/defroster controls to avoid windows fogging. Be sure you can see and be seen.
- Be sure your ventilation is good and your exhaust system has no leaks.
- Stay alert for hazards ahead of your vehicle, including pedestrians, cyclists, ice patches, bridge surfaces, blind intersections, snow plows and graders.

Night driving

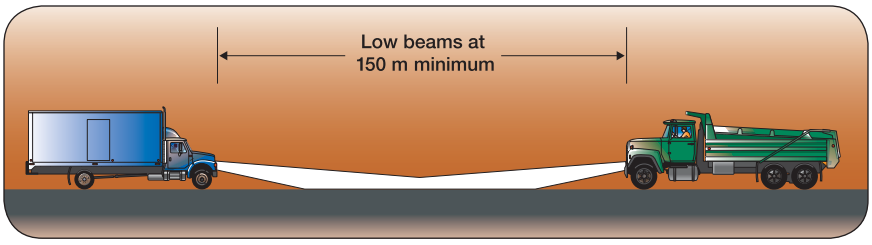
You can't see as far in the dark. Travel at a speed that allows you to stop within the distance you can see — even if it's below the posted speed limit.

Most headlights illuminate the highway for only 100 m on high beam and less on low beam. Poor weather, glare and fatigue will reduce how far you can see. Adjust your speed for the conditions.

Even when you travel at the legal speed you can overrun your lights. For example, a large, loaded truck travelling on a highway at 80 km/h can take more than 100 m to stop — further than your high beams will allow you to see under good conditions. Slow down to ensure you can see problems developing in time to stop.

Some tips for driving at night:

- Reduce your speed after sunset. Remember, your vision isn't as efficient as it is in daylight.
- Ensure your lights are clean and working — see and be seen.
- Use parking lights only for parking. It's illegal to drive at night using only parking lights.
- Switch your lights from high beam to low beam at least 150 m away from any vehicle you're approaching or following to reduce glare on the eyes of other drivers.
- Don't flash your lights at drivers who forget to switch their lights from high beam to low beam. Instead, slow down and focus your eyes on the right edge of the road to watch for pedestrians and obstacles.



These two vehicles are approaching each other at night in opposite directions with their lights on low beam.

fast fact

Driving on a flat tire may cause more damage — including a tire fire — and could mean you will have to replace the tire rather than have it repaired. Tires that have caught fire could spread to your truck or trailer.

fast fact

If you reduce a tire's air pressure when it's warm, you may upset the cooling balance and cause the tire to generate more heat.

fast fact

When the amount of contact between the tire and the road surface is reduced, steering control is also reduced.

driving tip

Driving at 110 km/h can reduce tread life by 20 per cent compared to driving at 90 km/h.

The faster you drive, the more fuel you will use.

Vehicle safety

Keep your vehicle in top condition at all times. Your tires, wheels and lights need to be in good working order.

Tires and wheels

Don't drive a vehicle with its tires, wheels or rims in poor condition — it's extremely dangerous and illegal. Inspect your tires, wheels and rims before every trip.

Tire pressure

The rolling of your wheels as you drive cause your tires to flex, creating friction and generating heat. Usually, tires release this heat to the air around them.

If your tires are the correct size and are correctly inflated, and if your vehicle is not overloaded, the heat generated by your tires shouldn't cause any problems.

If your tires are not properly inflated at the start of a trip, you risk tire damage or even a blowout because of excessive heat buildup. A major cause of failure in recapped (retread) tires is underinflation.

If your tires are underinflated, your load is too heavy or you're driving too fast, your tires will flex more. More flexing means more heat. Too much flexing can cause your tires to overheat and the tire air pressure to increase. If this pressure rises too high, your tires could burst.

Manufacturers put a load rating on their tires. Check what these ratings are for your tires. Keep the weight of your vehicle and load below the rating for any individual tire or any group of tires on a single axle.

Check and adjust tire pressure when tires are cool. Use a tire pressure gauge. If a tire has the correct pressure when it's cool, it will generate a normal amount of heat during use. This will reduce the amount of wall flexing, which also keeps heat buildup under control.

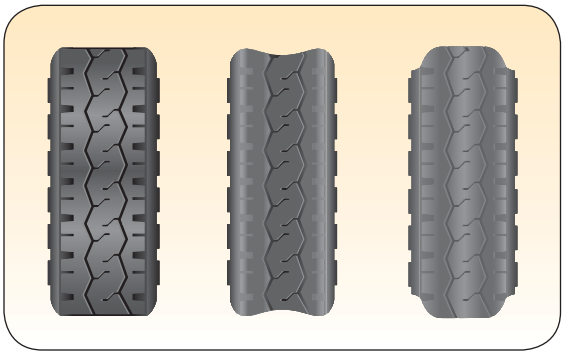
Tire wear

Improperly inflated tires also cause your tires to wear out more quickly and may reduce the amount of steering control you have.

Overinflating a tire causes excess wear in the centre part of its tread. An overinflated tire has less tread surface in contact with the road surface. Less contact between your tire and the road means less traction.

Underinflating a tire causes excess wear on the outer edges of its tread. In wet conditions, an underinflated tire will not squeeze the water out from between the tire and the road as well as a properly inflated tire and has a greater chance of riding on a film of water (hydroplaning).

Tire condition



Various types of tire wear patterns.

Never operate a vehicle that has bald or damaged tires. Tires are defective if they:

- have any tread damage, including cuts, cracks or snags, that are longer that 2.5 cm (1 in) and deep enough to expose the ply cords
- have less than 3 mm (1/8 in) of tread on a front tire or 1.6 mm (1/16 in) of tread on a rear tire and are being used on a vehicle with a GVW of 5,500 kg or more

Ensure the tread depth on your tires conforms to the standards set out in the Motor Vehicle Act Regulations.

- have less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in) of tread and are being used on a trailer
- have less than 3.5 mm (3/16 in) of tread in the case of a winter tire.

For more details on tire requirements, consult the *Motor Vehicle Act Regulations*.

Tire problems

Here are some common tire problems:

- too much or too little air pressure — use a gauge to ensure correct pressure
- tire wear — check for tread depth and tread recap separation
- cuts, abrasions, exploding cord, sidewall separation or bulges
- tires in contact with each other or tires in contact with any part of the vehicle
- cracked or leaking valve stems
- a mixture of different sizes or radial and bias-ply tires being used on the same axle — these can be mixed on the same vehicle but not on the same axle (not a recommended practice).

Note: If you change a tire, stop after a short while and check that the wheel nuts are tight. Always use a torque wrench to tighten and check wheel nuts.

fast fact

Wheel separations are usually caused by loose wheel fasteners or broken wheels/rims, or by wheel bearing failure.

Disk wheel problems

Check your wheels before every trip. If you have disk wheels, don't drive if you find:

- loose or missing lug nuts
- stripped studs
- cracks in the rim.

If you find any of the following, investigate and decide whether immediate attention is needed:

- metal or paint flakes around the nuts — may indicate wheel movement
- oil or grease leaks from the hub — if you see oil or grease, check the brake drum area to see if there's oil or grease on the brake pad.

fast fact

Rust streaks on the rim may indicate a loose lug nut or cracks in the rim.

Cast spoke wheel problems

Check your wheels before every trip. If you have cast spoke wheels, don't drive your vehicle if you find:

- missing or loose nuts or rim clamps
- cracks on the rims or hubs.

If you find any of the following, investigate and decide whether there's a problem that needs immediate attention:

- mismatched, bent or cracked lock rings
- oil or grease leaks from the hub — if you see oil or grease, check the brake drum area to see if there's oil or grease on the brake pad
- wear on the rim near the clamp or a valve stem that's too close to a spoke — may indicate that the rim has shifted
- rim damage — could allow the tire to lose pressure or come off.

Brake failure warning devices

All vehicles using air or vacuum brakes must be equipped with warning devices that will warn the driver if the air-pressure or vacuum system fails.

Braking systems

Every motor vehicle must be equipped with at least two separate braking systems. One of these systems must be mechanical, for example a ratchet and pawl (notched wheel) or spring brake mechanism. If the foot (primary) brakes fail, the driver must use the emergency (mechanical) brake, which requires more time and distance to stop the vehicle.

fast fact

For more detailed information on the proper and legal use of flashing lights, please contact your local weigh scale. Contact numbers are found in the back of this manual.

Flashing lights

Flashing lights may be mounted and used on motor vehicles under the following conditions:

- red flashing lights are used only on emergency vehicles
- red and blue flashing lights are used only on law enforcement vehicles
- amber or an amber and blue combination flashing lights are used on construction vehicles, snow removal equipment, sanding trucks, tow trucks, pilot cars and vehicles that are required by permit to use them, such as some oversize vehicles or vehicles carrying oversized loads (see **chapter 5, skills for driving trucks and trailers**).

A police vehicle has both red and blue flashing lights.

driving tip

Recommended safety equipment:

- flags or flares
- fire extinguisher
- first aid kit.

You never know when you might need it.

Disabled vehicles

Any vehicle is a hazard when it's parked on the side of a road. Large vehicles present more significant hazards. In most cases, drivers are required to put out approved warning devices when they park their commercial vehicles at the side of the road in an area that isn't designated for parking.

These commercial vehicles must carry approved warning devices:

- all vehicles with a seating capacity of more than 10 passengers
- all commercial vehicles with an overall width of more than 2.3 m
- all commercial vehicles with a load width of more than 2.3 m.

When parked in the dark, these commercial vehicles must have a minimum of two warning devices.

During daylight hours, the minimum for approved warning devices is:

- two red flags that measure at least 30 cm by 30 cm, *or*
- two warning devices that have been approved for daylight use — including flares, fuses and reflectors.

At night, you may use flares, fuses, reflectors *and* red lanterns.

If your vehicle becomes disabled:

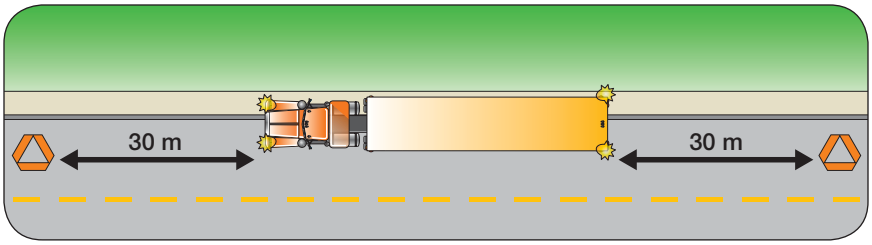
- move it as far off the travelled portion of the highway as possible
- place warning devices approximately 30 m ahead and 30 m behind the disabled vehicle.

Note: It's a good safety practice to place additional warning devices further than 30 m from your vehicle.

fast fact

Only approved warning devices should be used to mark the location of disabled vehicles.

If your vehicle becomes disabled, park as far off the road as possible. Place warning devices 30 m ahead and 30 m behind the vehicle.



Personal safety

Commercial vehicle drivers must be concerned with their personal safety to protect themselves and others on the road. This section covers information on carbon monoxide poisoning, seatbelts and head restraints, cellphone use, fatigue and impairment, and vehicle and cargo fires.

Carbon monoxide poisoning

Carbon monoxide poisoning is an ever-present danger when you operate a motor vehicle. It can seep into a driving compartment and make you dizzy or drowsy. Too much of it will make you pass out, which will almost inevitably result in a crash if you're driving. It can kill you if you continue to breathe it in after you pass out.

Carbon monoxide is especially dangerous because it's odourless, colourless, tasteless and difficult to detect. It's in the exhaust of every motor vehicle. Because it's so difficult to tell when it's present, always check your exhaust system to ensure that exhaust fumes aren't entering the driver's compartment of your vehicle.

Never run your engine in a closed garage. Don't follow any vehicle too closely, and maintain a safe distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you when you're stopped at traffic lights or stop signs.

If you feel dizzy or drowsy while driving, pull over to the side of the road. Stop. Get out and get plenty of fresh air.

Seatbelts

There's no question — seatbelts save lives. Transport Canada estimates that wearing seatbelts has saved an estimated 2,400 lives and prevented 55,000 injuries in the past 10 years.

fast fact

It's estimated that the correct use of a lap and shoulder belt system reduces the likelihood of death in a motor vehicle crash by 50 per cent.

Drivers who get in and out of their vehicles frequently as part of their work may be exempt from wearing seatbelts while they're driving at 40 km/h per hour or less. Exemptions include inner-city delivery, bus and emergency vehicle drivers. From a safety perspective, wearing a seatbelt always makes sense.

During a crash, seatbelt systems reduce the risk of occupants striking the interior of the vehicle, colliding with other passengers or being ejected. If you're belted in, you're much less likely to become injured or knocked out in a collision. Staying conscious gives you a better chance of getting out of your vehicle quickly if it catches fire or lands in water. Even during normal driving conditions, a seatbelt can help you maintain better control on rough roads or during collision-avoidance manoeuvres.

Many people think they can protect themselves in a collision. You can't hold yourself back during a collision, no matter how strong you are.

Thousands of kilograms of force work against unbelted persons during the rapid deceleration that takes place during a crash.

Adjust your seatbelt correctly by:

- placing the lap belt low over the pelvis, not over the soft stomach area — make sure it's snug
- ensuring the shoulder strap is snug across the chest
- never placing the shoulder strap under the arm or behind the back
- removing all slack.

Wear your seatbelt correctly to provide maximum protection.

Airbags and head restraints

Most large trucks aren't equipped with airbags and head restraints.

Even if your vehicle's equipped with airbags, you must wear your seatbelt. Airbags can seriously injure unbelted occupants. You must allow at least 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag unit in the steering wheel. This distance will minimize the risk of injury if the bag deploys.

If your vehicle has head restraints, it's important to adjust them to fit correctly. This will reduce the risk of neck and back injuries during a rear-end crash. Raise the head restraint so the top is at least level with the top of your ears; higher is even better.

Cellphones and other devices

Research shows that using a cellphone or other electronic communication device while driving significantly increases the risk of crashing.

All drivers in Yukon are prohibited from using hand-held electronic devices while driving. Drivers are prohibited from operating or holding hand-held cellphones or other electronic devices, sending or reading e-mails and/or texts.

Commercial drivers are permitted to use hands-free cellphones and devices that only require touching a single button to activate or deactivate, and where that single button is located in a fixed and secure location. This includes pre-programmed or voice-activated GPS devices. Two-way radios and mobile data terminals are also permitted.

crash fact

Cellphone use while driving is the number one cause of distracted driving.

Even if you need to make or receive a hands-free call, it's safer to pull over to the side of the road as soon as it's safe to do so.

Impairment

As a professional driver, your life and the lives of others depend on your ability to remain alert and fully functioning when you're behind the wheel. Alcohol, illicit drugs (for example, marijuana and cocaine), and even some prescribed drugs or stay-awake tablets can reduce (impair) your ability to function safely.

fast fact

Yukon has tough drinking and driving laws. Penalties can add up quickly — even if it's the first time you're caught.

For more information on Yukon's impaired driving laws, go to **www.gov.yk.ca.**

fast fact

If you're convicted of impaired driving and you caused a crash, the cost of your vehicle insurance will increase.

You risk a lot by driving impaired. There are penalties under Yukon's *Motor Vehicle Act* and under the *Criminal Code* of Canada. More immediate and severe penalties apply if:

- you're caught driving with a blood-alcohol content (BAC) between .05 and .08 per cent, or
- your BAC is above .08 per cent, or
- you refuse to provide a breath sample.

As well, the penalties become more severe for repeat offences.

Note: You may be prohibited if a police officer considers your ability to drive to be affected by alcohol or drugs. You don't have to have a BAC level of over .08.

Criminal Code penalties

If you're convicted of a *Criminal Code* driving offence, you're looking at some very serious penalties which could include lifetime driving prohibitions and time in jail.

Situation

A peace officer believes on reasonable grounds that the driver of a motor vehicle has consumed alcohol or otherwise introduced into their body any alcohol, drug, or other substance in such a quantity as to impair the driver's physical or mental ability to operate a motor vehicle (**24 hour roadside suspension**).

- You'll lose your driver's licence immediately for 24 hours
- You may lose your vehicle for 24 hours

BAC reading over .08/refuse to give breath or blood sample

- You'll lose your driver's licence for 90 days
- You'll pay all related vehicle towing and storage fees
- You may have your vehicle impounded for a minimum of 30 days

If charged and found guily under the *Criminal Code of Canada*, you will:

- Lose your licence for one year (first conviction)
- Be fined ($1000 minimum)
- Be prohibited from driving (one year minimum)
- You could also be jailed

You drive while you are suspended/disqualified or do not hold a valid driver's license

- You'll lose your driver's licence for 90 days
- You'll pay all related vehicle towing and storage fees
- You may have your vehicle impounded for a minimum of 30 days

Note: Drivers with three or more impaired driving offences will have their licence disqualified **indefinitely**.

Other costs of impaired driving

Besides the penalties listed above, there are other costs involved if you are caught riding or driving while impaired:

Driving while impaired or Blood Alcohol Content (BAC) over .08 or refusal to provide sample				Impaired driving causing bodily harm	Impaired driving causing death
	1st Offence	2nd Offence	3rd Offence		
Prohibition from driving	1–3 years	2–5 years	3 years – lifetime	Up to 10 years	Up to lifetime
Fine	$1,000 and up	No maximum	No maximum	No maximum	No maximum
Jail	0–5 years	30 days – 5 years	4 months – 5 years	Up to 10 years	Up to life imprisonment

fast fact

If you drive while prohibited, you may face significant penalties including a stiff fine and jail.

Money — If you're convicted of impaired driving and you cause a crash, your insurance claim may be denied, including claims for damage that you might cause to your vehicle, or to other people or property. You could be responsible for paying these costs. As well, your insurance rates will increase and you'll receive a driver penalty bill.

Job — An impaired driving conviction can prevent you from holding certain jobs.

Travel — An impaired driving conviction could create problems for you when travelling to certain countries, including the U.S. and Mexico.

Vehicle impoundment

In addition to impounding vehicles operated by impaired drivers, police can also impound the vehicle you're driving if you're caught committing any of the following offences:

- driving while unlicensed
- driving while suspended or prohibited
- driving without insurance

Police can immediately impound the vehicle for 30 days, which could escalate to 60 days or more for repeat offenders. The owner is then required to pay the vehicle towing and storage fees to get their vehicle back.

It's important for vehicle owners to understand that they are responsible for making sure that only licensed drivers use their vehicles. For example, if an employer allows a prohibited or unlicensed driver use of a company vehicle, the vehicle could be impounded.

Prescribed and over-the-counter drugs

Using medication when you drive is particularly risky. Antihistamines, sedatives, tranquilizers and even some cold remedies can cause drowsiness and decreased alertness. Read the warning on the label for any side effects

that may impair your ability to drive safely. Check with your pharmacist or physician if you have any questions. Certain combinations of medications can also affect your driving ability.

Fatigue

Long road trips and driving day after day can easily fatigue you. Over time this can lead to chronic fatigue. Stay-awake tablets may keep you physically awake but they don't necessarily reduce mental fatigue, which affects your ability to make good decisions.

There's no safe substitute for proper rest or sleep. If you're relying on stimulants like coffee to stay awake, or if you're having trouble sleeping, you're likely suffering from fatigue. Pull over in a safe location and get some sleep. To help yourself get enough rest and stay alert, follow the hours of service regulations set by the National Safety Code (see **chapter 7, hours of service requirements**) and be sure to get enough sleep every 24 hours.

Emotions

Your emotions can prevent you from focusing on the task of driving.

Safe driving demands your full attention at all times. Arguments at home or at the terminal, annoyance with other drivers, illness or financial problems are some of the things that can distract you from the important job of driving.

Your safety and your livelihood depend on your ability to stay calm and focused when you're behind the wheel. There's no room in the cab for road rage or any other distracting emotion.

Fire

To help prevent fires in and around your vehicle:

- Never start a vehicle with a fuel leak. Repair the leak and use an appropriate absorbing material to soak up the spilled fuel. Dispose of your cleaning material properly.
- Shut off engines when refuelling vehicles.
- Keep the nozzle of the fuel hose in contact with the filler pipe on your vehicle at all times when refuelling to ground the connection. If there's a ground strap, also connect it to the filler pipe.
- Don't smoke in garages or near fuelling areas.
- Never throw cigarette butts out of cab windows — they could blow back into tarps or loads.
- Check your tire pressure often. Soft tires build heat and can cause a fire. If your vehicle had a tire that was soft or flat when you last moved it, make sure the tire is cool. Check the pressure before the vehicle is moved again. If you must move the vehicle, the tire should be removed and replaced.
- Ensure all your vehicle's brakes, including the parking brake, are fully released when your vehicle is moving. Dragging brakes generate heat which can ignite grease in the hubs when the vehicle stops. Check your hubs and brake drums often for overheating.

fast fact

If your vehicle has a fuel leak, a peace officer may order your vehicle out of service until the leak is repaired.

fast fact

Diesel fuel is toxic — don't touch it or clean it up with a cloth.

It's always a good idea to keep a fire extinguisher in your vehicle. Some commercial vehicles are required to carry firefighting equipment.

Firefighting

Fighting a fire requires quick thinking and fast action. If your vehicle carries firefighting equipment, check it daily. Make sure you know how to use any fire extinguishers you carry and what types of fires they can extinguish. Learn any fire hazards associated with your vehicle or with the loads you carry.

fast fact

You must be properly trained before you carry any dangerous goods.

To reduce the risk at a fire, follow these general guidelines:

- Don't risk your own life. Fuel fires can spread quickly or explode.
- Tell the first spectator to call the fire department. Warn others if there is any danger of an explosion, or exposure to toxic substances. Tell them to keep at a safe distance.

Assess the situation and decide whether it's safe to take any further action:

- If a fire is on a combination unit, disconnect the tractor from the trailer and separate the units. Do this only if it doesn't put you in danger.
- Fight fires with the wind at your back if possible. This reduces the chances of being asphyxiated.
- If the fire is in the electrical system, disconnect the battery cables. When a vehicle is in a crash, shutting off switches and disconnecting battery cables can prevent fuel fires.
- If a fire starts under the hood, direct the extinguisher from underneath the vehicle or through the radiator. Don't open the hood to fight the fire.
- Use your extinguisher to put out the flames, but try to keep some extinguishing fuel in reserve in case of flare-ups.
- Don't use water on gasoline or oil fires. Water will spread these fires. Use an appropriate extinguisher, sand or dirt to smother them.

Fire extinguishers

There are two main categories of fire extinguishers: multi-purpose dry chemical extinguishers and carbon dioxide (CO_2) extinguishers. The multi-purpose dry chemical extinguishers are easier and safer to use, but the CO_2 extinguishers are more effective.

Multi-purpose dry chemical extinguishers are available in two classes. If its cylinder is marked BC, it can be used to put out grease, oil, gasoline and electrical fires. If its cylinder is marked ABC, it will also put out Class A fires such as paper, cloth, etc.

CO_2 extinguishers are extremely effective but should never be used in an enclosed space. You could smother yourself if you use these in a confined space. You could also blister your skin.

Vehicles required to carry fire extinguishers

One fire extinguisher must be carried on:

- all public passenger vehicles
- all school buses — the fire extinguishers must meet Canadian Standard Association (CSA) Standard D250.

Vehicles transporting explosives must carry two fire extinguishers.

Review questions

1. What rule should you follow to maintain a safe following distance when operating a taxi, ambulance or a van?
2. What rule should you follow to maintain a safe following distance when operating a bus, truck or truck-tractor and semi-trailer?
3. Why should a commercial vehicle travel in the right (slower) lane of traffic?
4. As your speed increases, the length of your danger zone increases. What other conditions increase the length of your danger zone?
5. What determines the amount of off track a vehicle will have?
6. Why is it dangerous to allow the rear wheels of your vehicle to cross the centre line of the roadway when you negotiate a left turn or curve?
7. What are the risks of running rear wheels over curbs when making sharp turns to the right?
8. What precautions must you take before and while you're making a turn?
9. What special precautions must the driver take when it's necessary to "block off" more than one lane of traffic to negotiate a sharp turn?
10. What should a driver do before entering a narrow bridge from a curved approach?
11. What are some of the steps you can take to help avoid crashes when backing up?
12. Describe how and when you upshift and downshift.
13. How can the area of air turbulence around your vehicle endanger other users on the road?
14. As a professional driver, what can you do to help other drivers safely pass your vehicle?
15. Which vehicles must stop at all uncontrolled railroad crossings?
16. What are the dangers of driving a vehicle with underinflated tires?
17. How does the *Motor Vehicle Act Regulations* define a defective tire?
18. What do you do if your commercial vehicle becomes disabled?
19. Which types of commercial vehicles are required to carry fire extinguishers?

4 fuel-efficient driving

This chapter focuses on fuel-efficient driving techniques for large diesel-powered commercial vehicles. Many of these techniques can also be applied to smaller commercial vehicles such as taxis and small buses.

What you'll learn

After studying this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❏ describe fuel-efficient driving techniques to drive smart and save money
- ❏ describe vehicle maintenance practices that help conserve fuel
- ❏ describe commercial vehicle components and features that help make a vehicle more fuel efficient.

fast fact

Nearly 30 per cent of all greenhouse gas emissions are produced by motor vehicles.

Fuel efficiency — a growing priority

Drivers and transportation companies want to control fuel costs. And the environment is also a consideration. Nearly 30 per cent of all greenhouse gas emissions in Canada are produced by vehicles.

There are many ways to be a more fuel-efficient driver.

Making smart choices

Your driving habits affect how much fuel you use, how often you need to refuel, and vehicle maintenance costs.

Fuel-efficient driving techniques can improve fuel economy by up to 30 per cent. Fuel-efficient driving is also safe driving. By looking ahead, keeping good space margins and anticipating road hazards, you can avoid sudden stops and changes in speeds. These and other smart driving habits also save on fuel and maintenance costs.

Smart driving practices

Smart fuel-efficient driving is more than how you use the throttle when driving your vehicle. It includes:

- Planning and preparation for your trip.
- Proper vehicle maintenance and inspections.
- Using proper techniques to start your vehicle.
- Proper driving techniques.
- Reducing idle time.

Preparation and planning

Fuel

Use the correct fuel for the season. Summer fuel can improve fuel economy by as much as three per cent, but can cause engine problems in cold weather.

Think about where you'll be driving. For example, if you delivered a load to California in the winter and refuelled to return to the Yukon, that fuel may not be appropriate for Yukon winter temperatures.

Consider using biodiesel fuel. It provides power similar to conventional diesel fuel, but contributes less carbon dioxide or sulfur to the atmosphere, and is low in particulate emissions.

fast fact

Choosing to drive on a flat multi-lane highway improves fuel efficiency by:

- four to 11 per cent compared to a flat two-lane highway
- as much as 18 per cent compared to a mountainous highway
- 25 to 35 per cent compared to driving on suburban roads.

Route planning

Plan your route carefully. The most fuel-efficient route is often one that avoids heavy commuter traffic, busy city driving, and hills.

Flat routes are more fuel efficient than mountainous routes. Highway driving is more fuel efficient than driving on congested city streets.

Dealing with the weather

Weather conditions affect fuel efficiency. Driving on snow-covered roads can increase fuel consumption by 15 to 20 per cent.

Here are ways to minimize the effects of weather:

- Pay attention to weather forecasts. Plan your route to avoid bad weather where possible by changing trip times or routes.
- Adjust speed to suit conditions like when there's a strong headwind.
- Slow down and maintain a safe following distance.

Starting

Fuel efficiency begins when you start the engine. Proper warm-up helps lubricate engine components, reducing wear and leakage, and saves fuel costs. Here are some suggested techniques for starting heavy-duty diesel engines:

- Use zero throttle (keep your foot off the accelerator).
- Don't pump the throttle — it isn't effective and wastes fuel.
- Let the engine warm up for three to five minutes only or seven to 10 minutes if the temperature is below 0° C. Any longer wastes fuel and can cause engine damage. Don't use the throttle — let the engine warm up gradually.
- Check that oil and air pressure rise to their normal operating ranges.
- If you add ether when operating in cold temperatures or to help start the engine, use it sparingly. It can damage the engine. Before adding it, check the owner's manual to see if it's permitted.

Smart driving techniques

Proper driving keeps you safe on the road and reduces fuel consumption.

Start out easy

- After starting the engine and letting it warm up, accelerate slowly, keeping the engine speed (r.p.m.) down for several kilometres.

Choose the right gear

- Select a gear that doesn't require using the throttle.
- Practise progressive gear shifting. Shifting before you reach the maximum governed r.p.m. reduces engine wear, decreases noise and saves fuel.
- Run the engine in the highest gear range to keep it in a low r.p.m. range.
- Change gears smoothly. Shifting properly can improve operating costs by 30 per cent.
- Always use the clutch. Failing to use the clutch can wear down the teeth on the gears in the transmission.

Ease off the throttle

- Back off the throttle when going over the top of a hill and select a lower gear to go down the hill.
- Use cruise control in appropriate locations. It can reduce fuel consumption.
- Reduce your average speed — driving faster consumes more fuel.
- Use the retarder properly. Turn it off when you don't need it — let the terrain work for you.

driving tip

Driving faster consumes more fuel. If you drive at 105 km/h instead of 90 km/h, you'll be travelling 15 per cent faster. But you'll consume about 20 per cent more fuel.

Use see-think-do

see — Scan for hazards and anticipate them. Pay attention to other road users and the areas where hazards could occur.

think — Decide which hazards are the most dangerous. Think quickly about possible solutions. Decide on the safest action.

do — Do manoeuvres to keep yourself and others safe.

Using see-think-do allows you to anticipate hazards and maintain a constant speed, avoiding unnecessary slowing and stopping. This maintains your vehicle's momentum, which means you don't have to build up lost speed. Power not used is fuel not burned.

Avoiding quick or sudden stops and starts is also smart, fuel-efficient driving.

Road and traffic conditions

Different road and traffic conditions present different challenges. As a professional driver, it's important to keep the following in mind.

- Adjust your driving to the visibility. Wear sunglasses to reduce glare in bright conditions in daylight, and reduce speed when driving in poor lighting conditions.
- Keep your seat properly adjusted to help keep you comfortable and alert, allow you to easily access the controls, see through the windows and use the mirrors.
- Keep your eyes moving to check for hazards. Look well ahead, and check your mirrors and blind spots frequently. This helps reduce sudden stops and starts and lane changes — and saves fuel.
- Listen to your radio and check highway display signs for news of traffic conditions.
- Maintain a safe following distance. Drivers of buses, trucks and other large heavy vehicles should never be less than five seconds behind the vehicle ahead at highway speeds. This allows you to gradually slow down or move over if needed, and avoids sudden changes of speed.
- Look ahead and anticipate stops. It's more fuel efficient to let off the throttle to gradually slow down than to apply the brakes at the last minute.
- Look ahead to anticipate traffic lights:
  - If you see a red traffic light that's been red for awhile, gradually slow down. If the light turns green before you arrive at the intersection, by not coming to a complete stop you save fuel.
  - On some major streets, traffic lights are timed so that if you drive at a certain steady speed, you may make all the lights, which saves stopping and starting and saves fuel.

fast fact

Idling can burn up to four litres of fuel per hour.

If fuel costs $1.50 per litre, cutting one hour of idling per day would save over 1,000 litres of fuel and over $1,500 in fuel costs per year.

Reduce idling

Contrary to popular belief, turning the engine off when you're not driving (for example, at a truck stop or depot) is more economical than leaving it running. Many trucks have auxiliary power units that can run the truck's air conditioning or refrigeration system.

Engine idling is simply a waste of fuel and money. Turn off the engine when you stop for any length of time. You'll save fuel, reduce maintenance, prolong engine life and prevent unnecessary emissions.

driving tip

Low-viscosity lubricants such as synthetic motor oil can improve fuel economy by up to four per cent.

Maintaining your vehicle

Regular maintenance keeps your vehicle running well, helps you avoid unexpected delays caused by vehicle breakdowns, and helps maintain fuel efficiency. Fix small problems before they become big — and more expensive.

Regular maintenance helps the fuel efficiency of your vehicle.

In addition to scheduling regular maintenance, you should:

- Ensure your tires are inflated according to the manufacturer's recommendations. For every 10 p.s.i. (69 kPa) underinflated, one per cent of fuel is wasted.
- Before you begin driving, it's the law to do a pre-trip inspection, and it can help you avoid breakdowns during your trip.
- Ensure all fluid levels such as motor oil and coolant are correct — underfilling or overfilling can damage your vehicle.
- Continually monitor your vehicle's condition during the trip:
  - Check the gauges on your instrument panel frequently. Conduct enroute inspections, including tires and cargo, at least every three hours.
  - Monitor the air filter restriction indicator for signs that the filter is becoming plugged or contaminated.
  - Check for air leaks. They affect the use and effectiveness of the vehicle's air brakes. They also make the air compressor keep running longer, and this reduces fuel efficiency.
- Do a post-trip inspection to spot problems that could delay you next time.

Choosing a fuel-efficient vehicle

Equipment and options can make a big difference in fuel consumption.

Consider some of these equipment options.

Choose the right truck

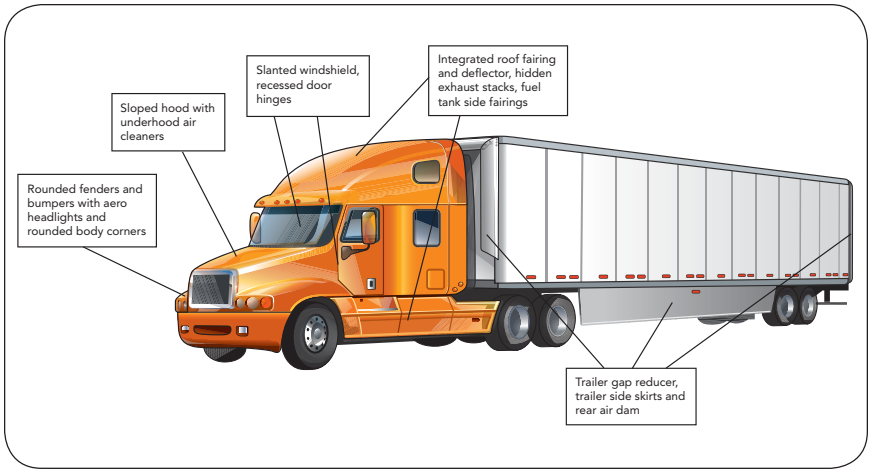
Choosing the right truck for the job and ordering it with the proper options and specifications can save on fuel and overall operating costs.

Using a truck designed for long-distance highway transportation for city transport costs more than using a truck designed and geared for city use.

If two trucks can each carry the same payload, purchasing the lighter one results in better fuel economy and reduced operating costs.

Look for aerodynamic features

At between 90 and 100 km/h, about 50 per cent of the fuel consumed is used to overcome air resistance. Aerodynamic design features have a significant effect on how much fuel is consumed, particularly at highway speeds.



Streamlining features and accessories significantly improves fuel efficiency.

Some of the aerodynamic design features available on new trucks include:

- sloped hood with underhood air cleaners
- rounded bumpers
- rounded fenders with aero headlights and rounded body corners
- slanted and/or rounded windshield
- recessed door hinges and handles and low-profile side mirrors
- integrated roof fairings and deflectors, fuel tank side fairings
- hidden exhaust stacks
- trailer gap reducers.

Trailer aerodynamic features include side skirts and rear air dams.

These aerodynamic features can improve fuel economy by 15 to 20 per cent.

fast fact

Aerodynamic drag is increased if any of the wheels on a tractor-trailer combination aren't properly aligned and tracking parallel to the direction of travel.

Many of these features can be added to older trucks and trailers.

Aerodynamics should also be considered when loading flatbed trailers and flat deck trucks. Keeping the load low and covering it with a tarpaulin improve aerodynamics and help reduce fuel consumption.

Tire choice

Tires with a rib tread design are more fuel efficient than tires with a lug tread design on drive and steering axles.

Also consider super-single tires rather than dual tires on the drive axles. Super-single tires provide low rolling resistance, are lighter and lower vehicle height.

Ribbed tire tread

Lugged tire tread

Super-single tire

Accessories

Choose and use accessories to improve productivity and fuel efficiency:

- Oil pan heaters and block heaters help with cold starting and ensure the engine oil circulates better when the engine is started.
- Fuel heaters prevent fuel gelling in cold weather.
- Thermostatically controlled engine fans, winter grille covers, battery blankets and in-cab auxiliary heaters conserve engine heat in cold weather.

On-board computers that can monitor fuel consumption are available for new trucks and may be added to older trucks. They can help you drive in the most fuel-efficient way.

Review questions

1. Approximately how much better fuel economy can you achieve by using good driving techniques?
2. What should you consider when planning a fuel-efficient route?
3. How long should you let a diesel engine idle when you first start it?
4. Is it a good idea to leave the engine running when you're not driving (such as when stopped at a truck stop)?
5. What are some smart driving techniques that can also save fuel?
6. Name some of the items that you should check as part of a pre-trip, enroute, or post-trip inspection that affect fuel efficiency.
7. What are some of the aerodynamic features of new trucks and trailers that improve fuel efficiency?

5 skills for driving trucks and trailers

This chapter is particularly useful for people working towards a Class 1 or Class 3 licence. You'll find information about driving with a trailer, loading, transporting dangerous goods and reporting to weigh scales.

What you'll learn

After studying this chapter you'll be able to:

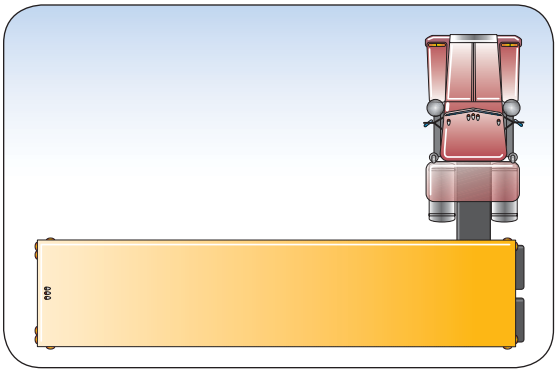
- ❏ describe the safety considerations and basic techniques for driving with a trailer
- ❏ list the steps for coupling and uncoupling a tractor and trailer
- ❏ identify the various devices for securing loads and describe how to use them to safely secure a load
- ❏ describe how to safely handle special cargo such as livestock, liquid tank loads, etc.
- ❏ list the nine classes of dangerous goods; describe the legal responsibilities of transporting dangerous goods; and describe what to do in an emergency situation involving dangerous goods
- ❏ list the allowable vehicle and load dimensions and describe the requirements for oversized and overloaded vehicles
- ❏ describe the two different types of weigh scales and when a driver is required to report to a weigh scale.

Driving with a trailer

Manoeuvring a vehicle that has one or more trailers is a difficult skill to learn, but most Class 1 drivers do it every day.

Backing up

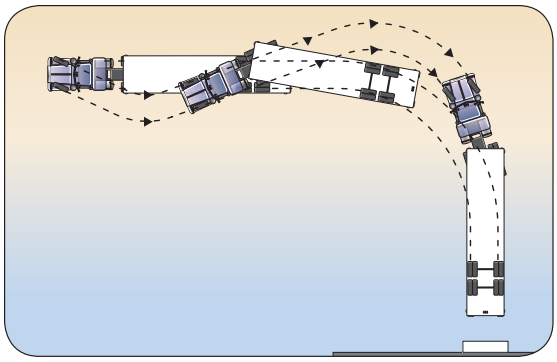
Backing up is always dangerous because you can't see everything behind your vehicle. For some general guidelines on backing up with or without a guide see **chapter 3, basic driving skills, backing up**.



A tractor with a semi-trailer has an articulation point (where it pivots). This makes backing up more complex.

Backing up a single-unit vehicle is done in the same way as backing up a passenger vehicle. Backing up a tractor with a semi-trailer is different.

Turn your steering wheel to the direction that's opposite to where you want your trailer to go when you start backing up.



This S-shaped tracking pattern is the type of path a tractor-trailer unit creates when it backs up.

Then turn the steering wheel the other way as soon as your trailer begins to turn. At this point, you should be turning your steering wheel in the same direction as your trailer is travelling.

As your trailer begins to turn, your tractor must begin to follow a path that matches the trailer's path. If it isn't you risk jackknifing your vehicle. A tractor-trailer combination backing into a normal right-angle turn would follow an S-shaped curve.

Towing trailers

Towing trailers requires more skill and practice than operating a single-unit truck. When you're towing, you must steer carefully. A sudden movement could cause your trailer to roll over and your tractor may follow, a major cause of death among truck drivers.

A loaded vehicle is more likely to roll over than an empty vehicle. Drive slowly around curves and make your turns gradually. Rollovers can happen when you turn too quickly.

You can help prevent rollovers by loading your cargo correctly. This is important on any type of vehicle. The higher your vehicle, the longer your trailer or the more trailers you're towing, the more important correct loading is.

Keep your cargo as close to the centre of your rig as possible so it doesn't cause your trailer to lean. It's also critical to spread out your cargo and keep it as close to the trailer deck as possible. As the height of a load increases, the midpoint of the weight (the centre of gravity) moves higher. A vehicle with a higher centre of gravity is more likely to rolling over.

Towing doubles

When towing two trailers, there's more chance of a trailer jackknife or trailer rollover, and the last trailer in a combination is the most likely to rollover. Here are some safety tips:

- Drive even more smoothly and consistently — accelerate smoothly, brake smoothly, and steer smoothly.
- Allow extra following distance and allow even more time when accelerating, passing or overtaking.
- Remember that a safe speed for a straight truck or a single trailer combination vehicle may be too fast when towing multiple trailers.
- Check your mirrors often so that you're aware of traffic behind you and traffic that may be passing you. Stay centred in your lane. There will be more offtrack when towing two trailers than with one trailer. Remember that in turns and curves, the extra length and extra articulation points mean you may encroach onto the lane beside you.

- Be careful when entering and exiting highways. Smoothly accelerate and steer onto highways, and make sure you have plenty of space to merge. When exiting, slow down well in advance. Deceleration lanes often are curved and some have a stop sign or traffic light at the end, so make sure you have slowed enough to drive through the curve and to safely stop at the end if necessary.
- Different trailer weights can affect the handling characteristics of the combination. Couple the more heavily loaded trailer to the tractor with the lighter trailer behind.
- Take care when coupling and uncoupling multiple trailers. If the trailers have spring brakes, make sure they're applied before coupling. If the trailer doesn't have spring brakes, make sure the trailer is blocked to hold it in position for coupling.
- Since it's difficult to back up with two trailers, you may first want to disconnect the rear trailer.
- Never unlock the pintle hook with the dolly still under the rear trailer. The dolly tow bar may fly up, possibly causing injury, and make it very difficult to re-couple.

Swerving and whipping

Whenever you tow a trailer, there's a danger that the trailer will begin to swerve or whip (that is, move quickly and independently of the tractor, back and forth across the roadway). This is extremely dangerous and must be dealt with immediately.

Whipping and swerving may be caused by:

- driving too fast for the conditions
- sudden steering changes
- improper trailer connections
- shifting loads
- dragging brakes
- a flat tire.

If your trailer whips or swerves, slow down and stop as soon as it's safe. A small problem can quickly turn into a serious hazard.

Some type of adjustment will be needed to fix whatever has caused your trailer to whip. You may need to fix a mechanical problem, adjust your load or change your driving. The only way to discover whether your trailer was swerving because of a serious mechanical problem is to stop and check your vehicle. Even if the swerving stops when you slow down, it's still important to stop and check your vehicle and load. The whipping and swerving may have shifted your cargo or loosened a trailer connection.

fast fact

Brakes must be properly adjusted for the spring brakes to remain applied and effective.

Parking

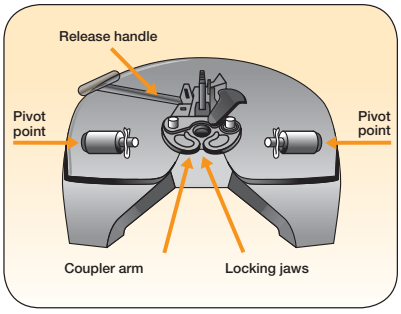
Block the wheels of a parked trailer so it can't roll.

The air pressure in the trailer air tank will bleed down over time when the trailer is parked. How fast it bleeds down will depend on how much the trailer system leaks. If the trailer is not equipped with spring brakes and the trailer air tank(s) drains, the trailer brakes will release as air pressure drops. If the trailer is equipped with spring brakes and the trailer air tank(s) drains, the trailer brakes will remain in the applied position.

Preparing to tow

Almost all Class 1 drivers, and many drivers with a different class of licence, will need to become experts on coupling and uncoupling a tractor and trailer. It's critical that any trailer you tow is securely fastened to your towing vehicle.

Coupling and uncoupling



Parts of a fifth wheel.

Most coupling is done with a fifth wheel or pintle hitch. This section gives you information about parking trailers and coupling and uncoupling units.

Coupling with a fifth wheel

Always use great care when coupling a tractor and trailer, or it can put your safety, as well as the safety of your load and others on the road, at risk.

To couple a tractor and trailer using a fifth wheel follow these steps:

1. Inspect fifth wheel

Set tractor parking brakes.

Exit cab.

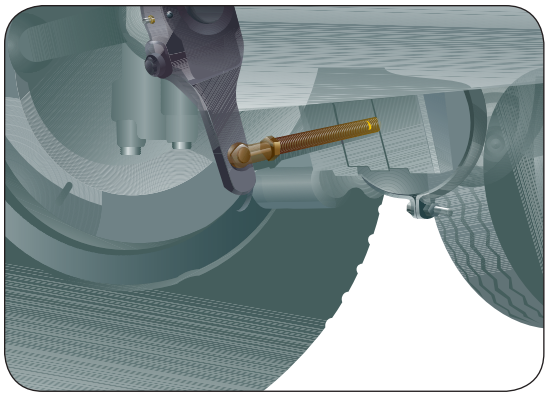
Check the following:

❑ **Fifth wheel**	• inspect for damage, lubrication, security • if the fifth wheel slides, check that it's locked in place to the tractor frame • make sure that the fifth wheel is tilted downward toward the rear of the tractor, and that the coupler jaws are open
❑ **Air lines**	• ensure air lines and electrical cable are supported and routed so that they don't get in the way when backing under the trailer

fast fact

Some trailers don't have spring brakes. With these, connect the lines and charge the trailer system. Then apply the trailer brakes before connecting to the trailer.

2. Inspect the trailer



Make sure the trailer brakes are applied before coupling to the trailer.

driving tip

Check the location of the trailer kingpin — if it's too far back from the front of the trailer, the rear of the tractor cab or tractor frame may strike the trailer while coupling.

To prevent this, adjust the location of the fifth wheel.

❑ **Trailer**	• if the trailer is equipped with spring brakes, make sure they have applied • check that any cargo is secure • check trailer kingpin and trailer apron • ensure that the kingpin isn't bent or broken and that the apron is flat • check the location of the trailer kingpin — if it's set far back from the front of the trailer, the fifth wheel may need to be repositioned to allow turning clearance between the front of the trailer and rear of the tractor
❑ **Area around trailer**	• ensure the area's clear

3. Position the tractor

Re-enter tractor.

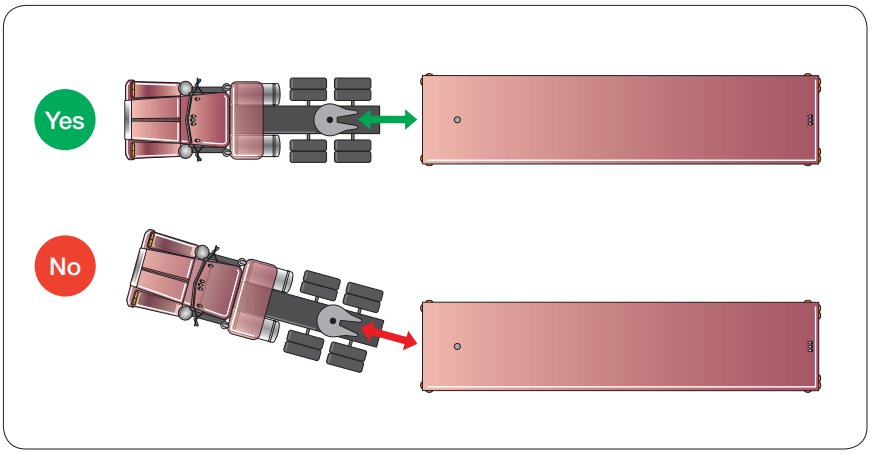
Release tractor brakes.

Drive the tractor to a position directly in front of and in line with the trailer.

driving tip

You may need to block the trailer tires if the trailer moves backwards when attempting to couple.

❑ **Tractor position**	• make sure the tractor is in line with the trailer • fifth wheel should be in line with trailer kingpin • check your position using outside mirrors — if the tractor and trailer are lined up, you should be able to see an equal portion of each side of the trailer in each mirror



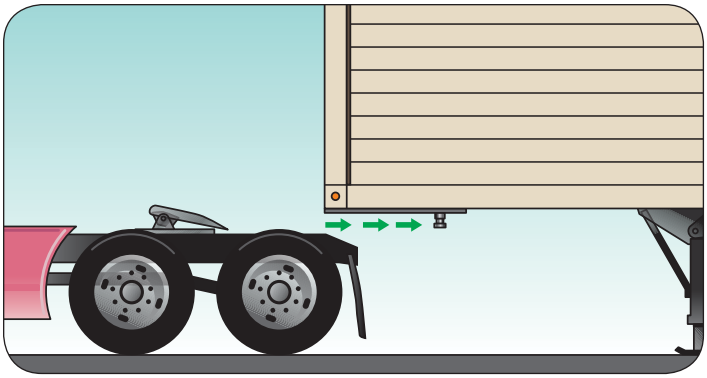
Make sure you're aligned with the trailer before coupling to it.

4. Back up to the trailer

Turn on four-way flashers and sound horn.

Back up slowly toward the trailer to a position directly in front of and in line with the trailer.

❑ **Tractor position**	• stop when the fifth wheel just touches the trailer apron — don't back up too far • make sure you're backing in a straight line, not at an angle (if you're on an angle, this could push the trailer sideways and damage the landing gear)



When you're backing up, stop when the fifth wheel touches the trailer apron.

5. Check height and alignment

Set the tractor parking brakes and exit the cab.

❑ **Tractor and trailer alignment**	• the centre of the trailer apron should line up with the centre of the fifth wheel • the trailer apron should be touching the fifth wheel directly above the fifth wheel pivot points — if it's touching behind or ahead of the pivot point, the trailer height needs to be adjusted

driving tip

If you need to adjust the trailer height:

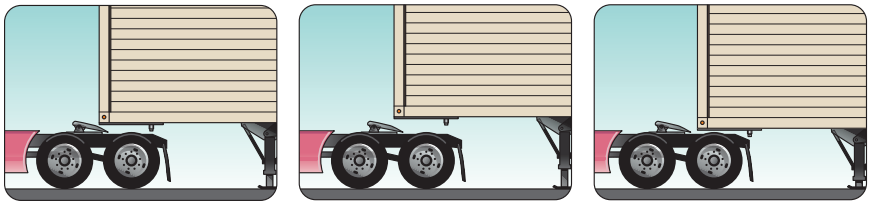
- adjust the trailer height by cranking the landing gear up or down, or
- raise or lower the air suspension.

driving tip

If the trailer doesn't have spring brakes, before backing under the trailer:

- connect the air lines to the trailer
- charge the trailer
- apply the trailer brakes.

6. Connect to the trailer



Good | Too high | Too low

Re-enter cab.

Turn on four-way flashers and sound horn.

Slowly back the rest of the way to connect the fifth wheel to the trailer kingpin.

driving tip

Use the differential lockup for additional traction if it is slippery.

❑ **Trailer connection**	• use the lowest reverse gear to back up very slowly • stop when you feel or hear the trailer kingpin lock into the fifth wheel jaws

7. Secure the trailer

Set the tractor parking brakes and exit cab.

Connect the air lines and electrical cable to the trailer.

Re-enter cab.

Turn on lights.

Shut off engine.

Exit cab.

Go under the trailer to check the connection.

driving tip

Use a flashlight to check that the locking jaws on the fifth wheel are securely closed around the trailer kingpin.

Also remove the keys from the ignition so that nobody tries to move the tractor while you are underneath the trailer.

❑ **Trailer connection check**	• fifth wheel jaws have engaged the kingpin • no space or daylight between the fifth wheel and the trailer apron • fifth wheel release handle is in the locked position
❑ **Trailer lights**	• check that trailer electrical connection is secure by checking trailer lights including tail lights, brake lights, licence plate light, clearance lights and ABS light
❑ **Air brake leakage**	• listen for any air leaks from air brake system

8. Tug test the connection

Raise landing gear until the legs are slightly off the ground (don't raise the landing gear all the way).

Re-enter cab.

Release the tractor brakes (the trailer brakes should still be applied).

Gently tug against the trailer parking brakes to check the connection.

❑ Trailer connection	• trailer kingpin should be securely held by fifth wheel jaws • the trailer brakes should prevent the trailer from moving when trying to move the tractor forward • re-charge the air suspension if it's been lowered • check for air leakage in the air brake system

9. Prepare to pull away

Set the parking brakes.

Exit cab.

Raise landing gear completely and ensure crank handle is locked in gear and secured.

Remove and store the wheel blocks if they were used.

❑ Trailer turning clearance check	• clearance between the rear of the tractor and trailer landing gear • clearance between the rear of the tractor cab and front of the trailer (for example, clearance between trailer refrigerator unit and rear of tractor cab, or between front of trailer load and rear of tractor cab) • air lines and electrical cable are properly supported and routed so that they don't get in the way when turning

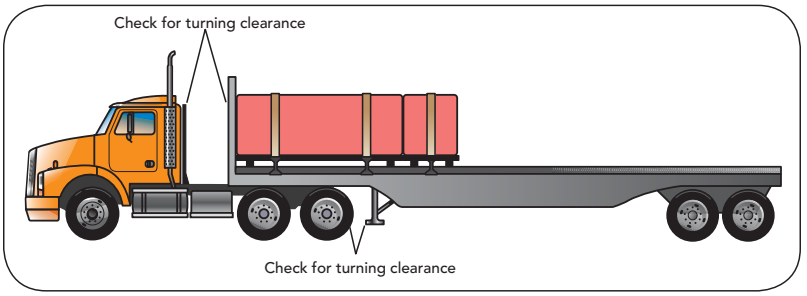
10. Pull away

Re-enter cab.

Release parking brakes.

Slowly pull away, checking that trailer connection is secure.

At slow speed, apply the trailer hand valve to check trailer service brake operation.



fast fact

A trip inspection report is required for every new trailer you pick up each day.

driving tip

If the rear of the tractor is too close to the trailer landing gear and the tractor has a sliding fifth wheel, reposition the fifth wheel to provide clearance.

When you turn, the fifth wheel acts as a pivot point. Check to make sure there's clearance between the tractor and trailer for turning.

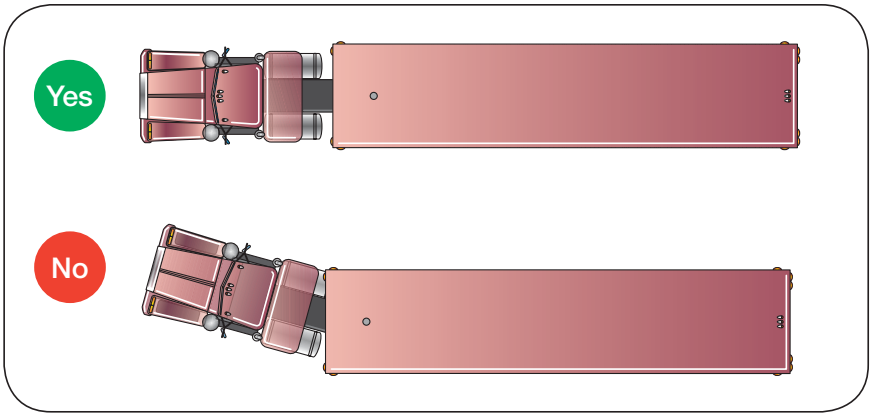
Uncoupling units

Use these steps to uncouple a tractor and trailer joined with a fifth wheel:

1. Position the tractor and trailer

Move forward/backward so that the tractor is directly in line with the trailer (not at an angle).

❑ **Tractor and trailer position**	• if you're lined up, you should be able to see both sides of the trailer in the exterior mirrors • ensure the road or ground surface is level and will support the trailer



Make sure that the tractor and trailer are lined up before uncoupling.

2. Ease pressure on the fifth wheel locking jaws

Set the trailer brakes and release tractor brakes.

Back up gently and apply tractor parking brakes while the tractor is pushing against the trailer.

❑ **Fifth wheel locking jaws**	• back up the tractor to relieve pressure of the fifth wheel locking jaws on the trailer kingpin

driving tip

The tractor may only move a few centimetres, but this will ease pressure on the fifth wheel locking jaws.

3. Prepare to uncouple

Exit cab.

Block trailer wheels if needed.

Place blocks or pads under the trailer landing gear if needed.

Lower the trailer landing gear until both supports touch the ground and pressure is released off the fifth wheel.

Disconnect air lines and electrical cable and secure lines to tractor.

Pull the fifth wheel release handle to unlock the fifth wheel jaws.

fast fact

Both landing gear supports must touch the ground to support a trailer.

fast fact

Weather conditions can affect surfaces where you may want to park your trailer. Rain or snow can make gravel, sand or dirt soft. Hot weather may make asphalt roads and parking lots soft. Place blocks or pads under the landing gear to distribute the trailer's weight and prevent the landing gear from sinking into the ground.

❑ **Trailer landing gear**	• make sure the trailer is level when the landing gear is extended • ensure the road or ground surface is level and will support the trailer
❑ **Tractor**	• ensure air lines and electrical cable are secured to the tractor • check that fifth wheel release handle is in the unlocked position

4. Move the tractor slightly forward

Re-enter cab.

Release tractor parking brakes.

Move the tractor forward slowly, stopping when the fifth wheel begins to clear the trailer apron.

❑ **Trailer security**	• check that the trailer landing gear is supporting the trailer as you move the tractor forward

driving tip

For trailers equipped with air suspension, the air suspension should be drained before applying the trailer brakes when leaving the trailer parked.

5. Prepare to fully uncouple

Set tractor parking brakes.

Exit the cab.

❑ **Trailer security**	• check that the trailer landing gear has been lowered far enough to support the trailer once the tractor is moved completely away from the trailer • check that the ground is firm enough to support the trailer • if the trailer has air suspension, make sure the suspension air supply has been drained

fast fact

To avoid injury while uncoupling a trailer, keep clear of the tractor wheels. The wheels of the tractor may roll slightly when the jaws of the fifth wheel are opened.

6. Pull away

Re-enter cab.

Release tractor parking brakes.

Charge tractor air suspension if it has been lowered.

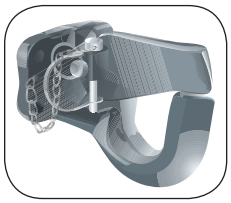
Move the tractor ahead slowly so that it's completely clear of the trailer.

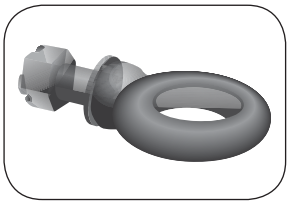
❑ **Trailer security**	• check in the mirrors to ensure that the trailer landing gear is supporting the trailer

Other types of connections

A pintle hitch connection uses a hook on the vehicle in front and an eye on the vehicle behind. Some pintle hitch connections have an air or hydraulic ram to take up any slack between the hook and the eye.

When you use any coupling device (other than a fifth wheel) you must also use chains or metal cables to connect the towed and towing vehicles. These auxiliary chains or cables must be equal to the strength of the coupling device.

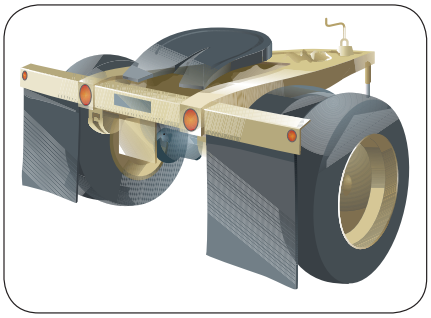




Attach the pintle eye on the trailer behind to the pintle hook on the vehicle in front. Use the safety catch to secure the pintle hitch connection, along with safety chains and/or cables.

The drawbar or other connection between the motor vehicle and the trailer may not be more than five metres long unless you're towing a pole trailer.

When a driver is towing more than one trailer, sometimes a converter dolly is used.



A converter dolly.

driving tip

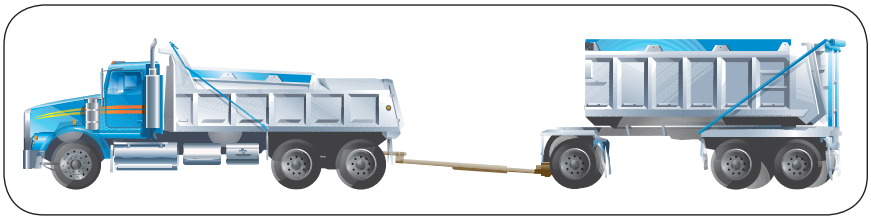
When towing with a converter dolly, make sure that the air brake lines from the truck to the converter dolly and from the converter dolly to the trailer are properly connected so that the brakes on the trailer will function.

A converter dolly has an axle, a fifth wheel and a hitch. Other devices may also be used to couple and spread the weight of large loads.

Coupling devices must be strong enough to hold the vehicles together when they're loaded and must be fastened to a structurally adequate part of the frame of each vehicle.

Coupling with a pintle hitch

Use these steps to couple a truck and trailer joined with a pintle hitch:



A pintle hitch is used to connect this dump truck to the dump trailer.

1. Inspect pintle hitch and trailer

Set truck parking brakes.

Exit cab.

Check the following:

❑ **Pintle hook**	• check pintle hook and latch for cracks and wear
❑ **Trailer**	• if the trailer is equipped with spring brakes, make sure they have applied • block trailer wheels • check that any cargo is secure • check pintle eye for cracks or excessive wear
❑ **Area around trailer**	• ensure the area is clear

driving tip

Apply the trailer brakes before coupling to the trailer.

fast fact

Some trailers don't have spring brakes. With these, connect the lines and charge the trailer system and then apply the trailer brakes before connecting to the trailer.

2. Position the truck

Re-enter the truck.

Release truck brakes.

Move truck to a position directly in front of and in line with the trailer.

❑ **Truck position**	• make sure the truck is in line with the trailer • check your position using outside mirrors — if the truck and trailer are lined up, you should be able to see an equal portion of each side of the trailer in each mirror

driving tip

You need to be very accurate in placing the pintle hook relative to the trailer pintle eye.

Place a block of wood or other marker beside one of your truck tires that's visible in your mirrors to help you see how accurately you've positioned the pintle hook.

3. Back up to the trailer

Turn on four-way flashers and sound horn.

Back up slowly toward the trailer and stop just before the pintle hook on the truck touches the trailer pintle eye.

❑ **Truck position**	• stop just before the pintle hook on the truck touches the pintle eye on the trailer • make sure you're backing in a straight line (if you're on an angle, it's more difficult to position the truck to hook up to the trailer)

4. Check height and alignment

Set the truck parking brakes.

Exit cab.

Check the following:

❑ **Truck and trailer alignment**	• the truck pintle hook should line up with the trailer pintle eye • adjust the drawbar height if needed so that the pintle eye is just slightly higher than the pintle hook

5. Prepare to connect to the trailer

Re-enter cab.

Release truck parking brakes.

Sound your horn before backing.

Slowly back up to a position where the pintle eye can be lowered onto the pintle hook.

❑ **Trailer connection**	• back up to the trailer so that the pintle eye is directly over the pintle hook

6. Connect to the trailer

Set truck parking brakes.

Turn on lights.

Exit cab.

Lower the pintle eye onto the pintle hook.

Close the pintle hook safety latch.

Attach the safety cables and/or chains between the truck and trailer.

Raise the drawbar support leg (if equipped).

Connect the air lines, electrical cable and hydraulic lines (if equipped) between the truck and trailer.

Remove and store the wheel blocks.

Check the following:

❑ **Trailer connection check**	• pintle eye is secured in pintle hook • safety latch is locked • safety cables and/or chains are in place and securely fastened • drawbar support leg (if equipped) is retracted and secured • air lines, electrical cable and hydraulic lines (if equipped) are securely connected
❑ **Trailer lights**	• check that the trailer electrical connection is secure by checking trailer lights including tail lights, brake lights, licence plate light, clearance lights and ABS light
❑ **Trailer turning clearance check**	• clearance between rear of truck and front of trailer

driving tip

If the trailer doesn't have spring brakes, before connecting to the trailer:

- connect the air lines to the trailer
- charge the trailer air system
- apply the trailer brakes.

fast fact

A trip inspection report is required for every new trailer you pick up each day.

driving tip

If the trailer brakes don't release when you charge the trailer braking system, the air lines may be crossed.

7. Prepare to pull away

Re-enter cab.

Charge the trailer braking system.

Raise trailer air suspension if it has been lowered.

Pressurize the air or hydraulic (no slack) ram (if equipped).

❑ **Air brake leakage**	• check for air leakage in the air brake system

8. Pull away

Release parking brakes.

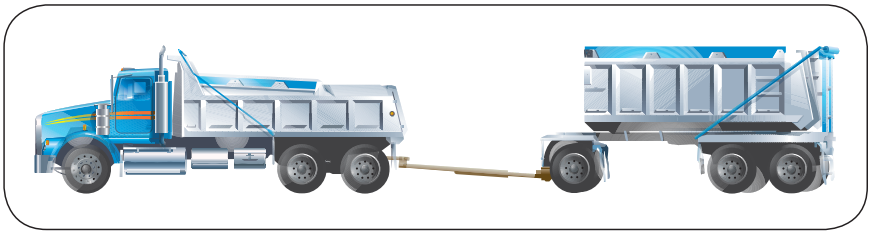
Slowly pull away.

At slow speed, apply the trailer hand valve to check trailer service brake operation and that trailer connection is secure.

❑ **Trailer connection**	• pintle eye should be securely held in pintle hook

Uncoupling pintle hitch units

Use these steps to uncouple a truck and trailer joined with a pintle hitch:



driving tip

Place a block of wood or other marker beside one of your truck tires that's visible in your mirrors to help show how close your truck is to the trailer when you return later to re-couple.

1. Position the truck and trailer

Move forward/backward so that the truck is directly in line with the trailer (not at an angle).

Check your position using the exterior mirrors.

❑ **Truck and trailer position**	• if you're lined up, you should be able to see both sides of the trailer in the exterior mirrors • ensure the road or ground surface is level and will support the trailer

driving tip

Fasten disconnected air lines and other lines to dead-end (dummy) connectors to prevent dirt and debris from entering the lines and to prevent the lines, from chafing against other components or bouncing off the vehicle.

2. Uncouple the pintle hitch

Set the truck and trailer brakes.

Release pressure from the air or hydraulic (no slack) ram (if equipped).

Exit the cab.

Block trailer wheels.

Disconnect the air lines, electrical cable, and hydraulic lines (if equipped) between the truck and trailer.

Disconnect the safety cables or chains and/or safety pin.

Release the pintle hook safety latch.

Lower the drawbar landing leg (if equipped).

Raise the drawbar so that pintle eye clears the pintle hook.

❑ Trailer uncoupling	• make sure the trailer is level • block trailer wheels • support the trailer drawbar after uncoupling if needed • secure the air lines, electrical cable and hydraulic lines after disconnecting them

3. Pull away from trailer

Re-enter cab.

Release truck parking brakes.

❑ Trailer security	• check in the mirrors to ensure that the pintle connection is disconnected and that the trailer is secure

Move the truck ahead slowly so that it's completely clear of the trailer.

Loading

The way your load is arranged will be affected by your type of vehicle and by the weight, height, width, length and nature of your cargo. You need to learn the types of loads different vehicles can carry and what to do when a load is oversize. You'll likely load and secure different kinds of cargo during your career as a commercial driver.

Loading cargo

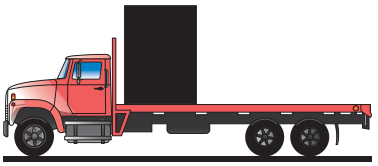
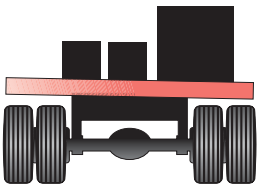
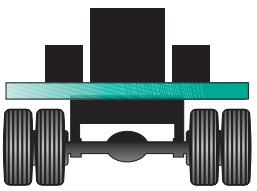
Securing a load and ensuring that it doesn't move during transport can be difficult. You may transport a wide variety of cargo types at different times, including livestock, explosives and intermodal cargo containers. Loading and securing your cargo incorrectly could cause death, injury or property damage. You may also face fines and penalties.

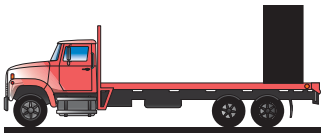
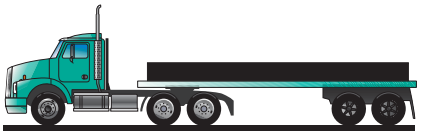
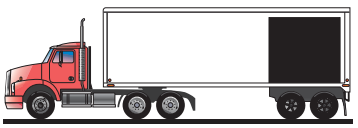
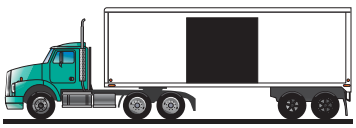
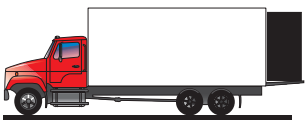
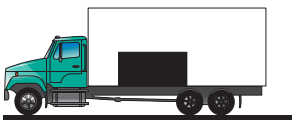
Arranging and distributing loads

The way you distribute your cargo's weight will affect the handling characteristics of your vehicle. It also affects the life of your vehicle's tires, frame, springs, axles and bearings.

A poorly distributed load can overload an axle or set of tires, put unnecessary stress on your vehicle's frame and cause permanent damage and steering misalignment.

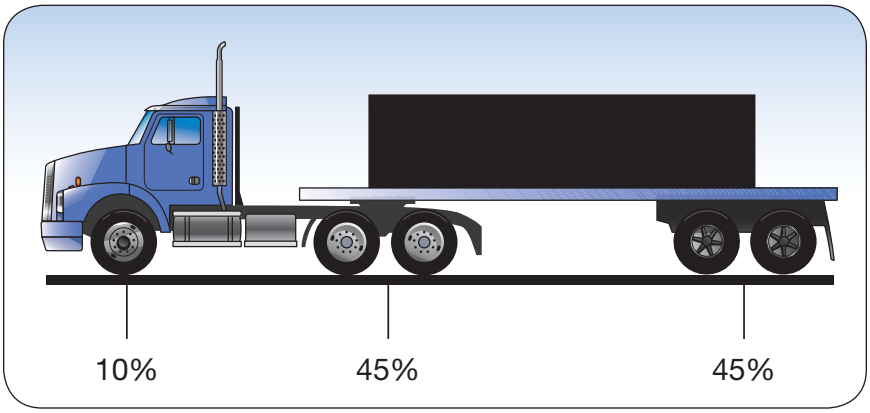
These illustrations show correct (right side) and incorrect (left side) ways to load your vehicle.

Wrong	Right
	
Don't place a very concentrated heavy load against the cab. This type of loading may permanently bend the frame. It'll also overload the front tires, which may make steering difficult and could cause a worn tire to blow out. This type of loading may also make your load dangerously top heavy.	Place a very concentrated heavy load near the rear, on its long side if possible. Most of the load should be partially over or just ahead of the rear axles to get proper tire loading. Make sure the load is securely blocked to prevent it from sliding forward. (More about this later in the chapter.)
	
Don't place a very heavy load on one side. This overloads the spring and the tires on the cargo side. The brakes may lock the wheels of the under-loaded side and could cause the tires to skid on wet surfaces. Loading in this unbalanced way may also cause flat spots on the tires.	Load your vehicle so that an equal amount of weight is placed on all rear tires. This will eliminate twisting and stress on the frame. It also prevents overloading the axle housing and wheel bearing.

Wrong	Right
 Never load your vehicle this way. It may cause the frame to bend, will overload the rear tires and takes enough weight off the front tires to make steering almost impossible.	 The correct place for the concentrated load is partially over or just ahead of the rear axles with the longest side on the floor. Make sure the load is securely blocked to prevent it from sliding forward. (More about this later in the chapter.)
 On a rough road, a vehicle loaded this way may pivot on its rear wheels, taking the front wheels entirely off the road.	 A tractor trailer combination is the correct vehicle to use for this type of service because a longer, heavy vehicle is needed to carry this long load. Always use the correct vehicle for the job. The risk of damage to the truck and tires, and even serious collisions, may be reduced.
 This shows a heavy load with too much weight on the trailer's rear tires. The fifth wheel isn't supporting the load. The tractor's rear tires are likely to slip and wear away rubber. This vehicle will also be difficult to stop because the braking distribution will be uneven.	 The load should be centred to properly distribute its weight over the tires. The average semi-trailer type truck has a central weight distribution point at approximately the middle of the trailer. Make sure the load is securely blocked to prevent it from sliding forward. (More about this later in the chapter.)
 Never load items on the tailgate. It puts a severe strain on the equipment and can cause serious collisions.	 This load should be placed partially over or just ahead of the rear axles with its longest side on the floor. Make sure the load is securely blocked to prevent it from sliding forward. (More about this later in the chapter.)

For safety reasons, always ensure you load your vehicle correctly.

The best way to distribute the weight of your cargo depends on the nature of the load and your vehicle configuration. Spread a concentrated heavy load evenly over as many axles as possible. Some trucks, like five-ton freight trucks, are designed to have approximately 90 per cent of the weight of their cargo on their rear axle(s) and 10 per cent on the steering axle. Others, like cement mixers and dump trucks, are designed to have approximately 70 per cent of the weight of their cargo on their rear axles, and 30 per cent on the steering axle(s).



Place the cargo midway between the rear axle unit and the drive axle unit when loading a trailer. This distributes the weight equally between the rear axle unit and the drive axle unit.

A tridem drive truck or truck tractor is required to have a combined steering axle weight, when loaded, of at least 25 per cent of the tridem axle weight — 40 per cent in the case of twin steering axles.

Trailers are designed to handle loads that are distributed evenly. They should have approximately 45 per cent of the weight of their cargo on the trailer axle unit, 45 per cent on the drive axle unit and 10 per cent of the weight on the steering axle.

fast fact

You can find the North American Standard on cargo securement on the Commercial Vehicle Safety Enforcement website at www.ccmta.ca/english.

Securing cargo

Yukon has adopted the North American Standard on cargo securement. The Standard specifies requirements that apply to all types of cargo and includes specific requirements for certain commodities. Unless it's specified otherwise in the Standard, the general and specific requirements both apply.

The Standard applies to all vehicles carrying cargo on highways, regardless of the vehicle's gross vehicle weight.

You'll need to know the securement requirements for the types of cargo you're carrying. You can get copies of the standard at www.ccmata.ca.

General cargo securement requirements

The cargo securement system must be appropriate for the cargo's size, shape, strength and characteristics.

The securement system may include these components:

- vehicle structure
- blocking and bracing equipment
- securing devices, like tiedowns.

The securement system must be able to withstand these forces:

- 0.8g deceleration in a forward direction
- 0.5g deceleration in a rearward direction
- 0.5g acceleration in either sideways direction, and
- downward force equal to at least 20 per cent of the weight of the cargo.

The load on each component of the securement system must not exceed the working load limit of the component.

Cargo securement system components must be in good working order — not damaged, cracked, cut or weakened — and fit for the purpose for which they're used.

General requirements for tiedowns

Tiedowns must be designed, constructed and maintained so that a driver can tighten them (except for steel strapping). Tiedowns must be taut and not slip, loosen, unfasten, open or release while a vehicle's in operation.

Use edge protectors where a tiedown could be cut or scraped where it contacts cargo. Tiedowns should be located inboard of rub rails if possible.

One long chain could be used as two tiedowns, if each tiedown has an independent tensioning device so that failing doesn't cause the other to fail.

Tiedowns must not be used for cargo securement if:

- the chain has cracked welds or links
- the chain has bent, twisted, stretched or collapsed links
- chain links are weakened by gouges, nicks or pits
- the chain is incorrectly repaired
- chain links are obviously worn or showing other evidence of loss of strength
- there are knots in any portion of chain, wire rope or webbing
- there are spread or disturbed grab hooks
- nylon webbing has cuts, nicks or splits
- wire cable has missing strands or wraps
- an anchor point is weakened or shows loss of strength due to cracks, breaks or distortion.

fast fact

Consider the length of the cargo first and its weight when deciding how many tiedowns to use.

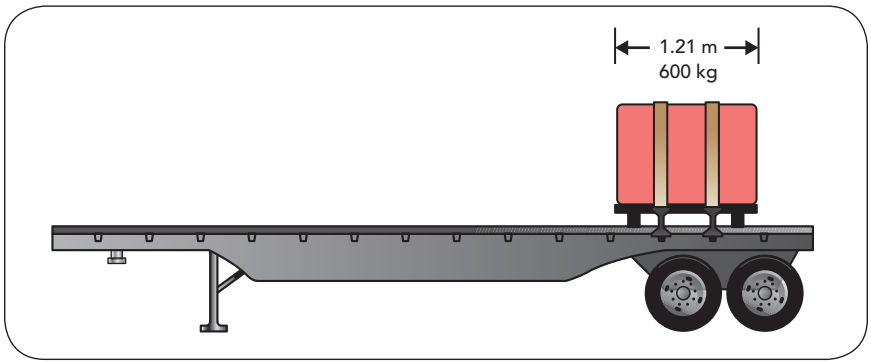
Number of tiedowns

The following table shows the minimum number of tiedowns required if an article of cargo on or in a vehicle isn't prevented from moving forward by a front end structure, a tiedown, other cargo or a device like a drop on a step deck trailer.

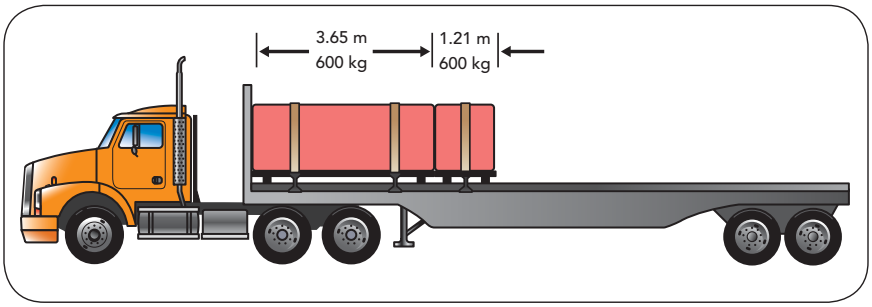
As a rough guide, use two tiedowns for the first 3.04 m of a load and one tiedown for every 3.04 m after that. Machinery or fabricated structural items that need special securement because of their size, design, shape or weight are exempted from these requirements.

Article description	Minimum number of tiedowns
1.52 m or shorter and 500 kg or lighter	1
1.52 m or shorter and over 500 kg	2
More than 1.52 m but 3.04 m or less	2
Longer than 3.04 m	2 + 1 tiedown for every additional 3.04 m or part of that thereof

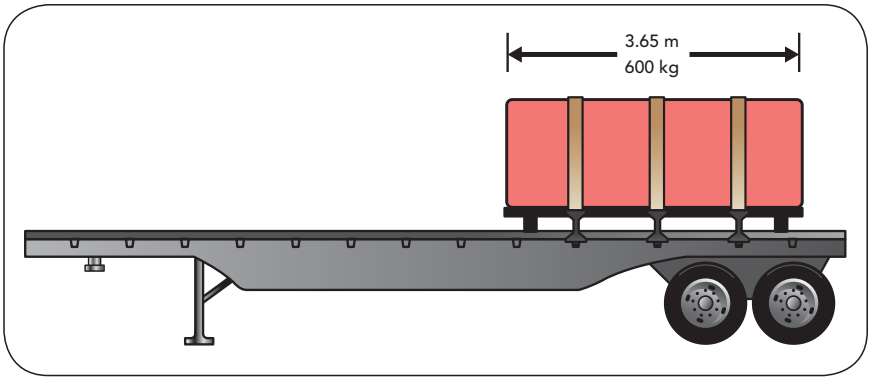
When cargo is prevented from moving forward, the minimum number of tiedowns required is one tiedown for every 3.04 m of length.



This article is 1.21 m long and weighs 600 kg. The article isn't prevented from moving forward. Use two tiedowns equally spaced.



Here, two articles are arranged on a flat deck. Since the first article is butted against a bulkhead, use only two tiedowns. Since the second article is butted against the first article, use only one tiedown.



This article is 3.65 m long and weighs 600 kg. Since the article isn't prevented from moving forward, use three tiedowns equally spaced.

Strength of tiedowns

The working load limit of tiedowns used to secure cargo must be at least 50 per cent of the cargo weight. The Standard provides the working load limit default of the tiedown.

The diagrams on the previous page show articles 3.65 m in length weighing 600 kg. In these examples, the aggregate working load limit of the tiedowns must be no less than 300 kg (50 per cent of 600 kg). For an article 3.65 m long that's not prevented from moving forward, use three tiedowns. So each tiedown must have a working load limit of not less than 100 kg (300 kg ÷ 3).

If the only available tiedowns have a working load limit of 50 kg, use six tiedowns.

But, if tiedowns rated at a working load limit of 200 kg were available, use three tiedowns, since the Standard gives a minimum number required as well as the minimum strength.

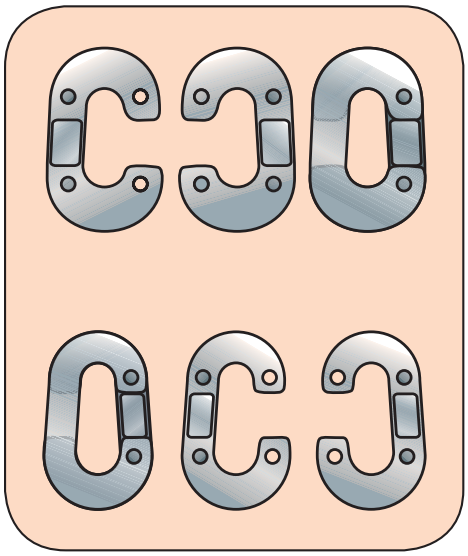
Determining working load limit

You can find the working load limit marked on the component by the manufacturer. (The Standard prohibits the use of unmarked tiedowns as of January 1, 2010.)

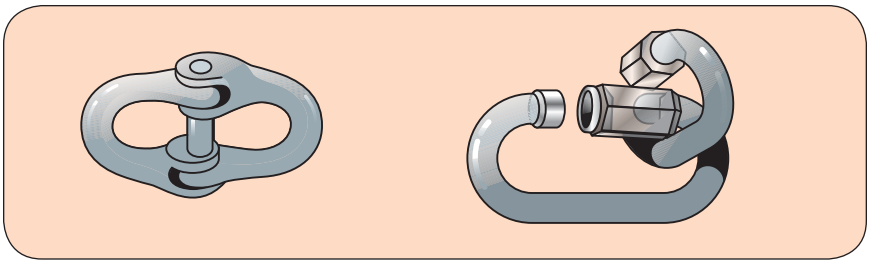
Standard 10 provides the default working load limits for chain, synthetic webbing, wire rope (6 x 37, fiber core), manila rope, synthetic fiber rope and steel strapping, as well as numerous manufacturing standards.

Chain connector links

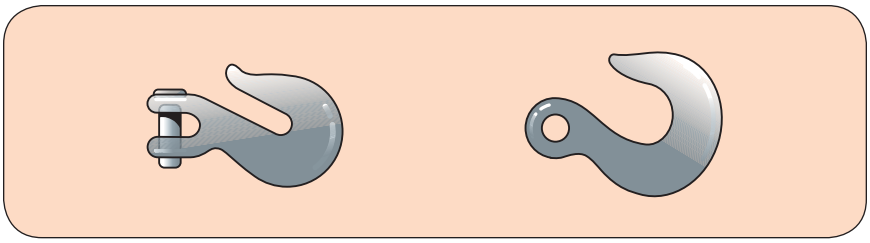
The chain connector link you use when securing your load must be compatible with the grade of chain you're using. It's a cliché, but it's true that a chain's only as good as its weakest link. That weakest link could be a connector, an eyelet, or any other part of the chain assembly.



Pear-shaped missing links and double clevis links.



An alloy connecting link (left) and quick connector (right). Quick connectors are not suitable for any heavy duty operation.



A chain hook on the left and a slip hook on the right.

Standard load binders are used to tighten (bind) the chain, webbing and other strapping used to secure the load so it won't shift.

When you use load binders, you must:

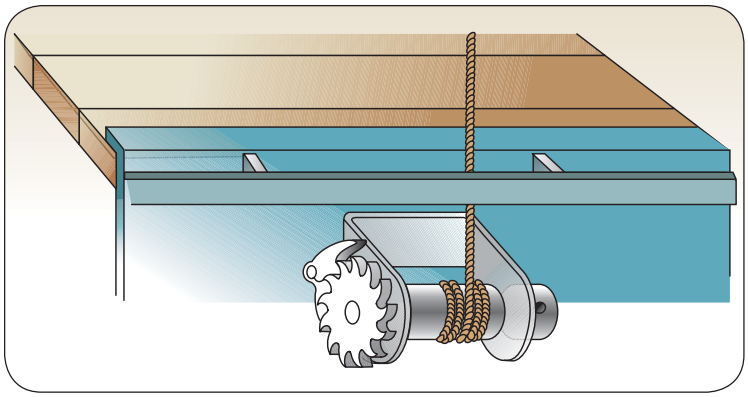
- Make sure your tiedown assemblies are strong enough. Always assume your tiedown assemblies, including the clevis hooks and load binders, are the lowest grade for their size unless they have a clear marking or a permanently attached tag that states something different.
- Protect all tiedown assemblies from abrasion.
- Don't use any tiedown assembly that's worn beyond a wear limitation embossed by the manufacturer or is unsafe.
- Lock every load binder handle in place to prevent the handle from unlocking. Use rope, wire, chain or a locking mechanism. Using the free end of the chain is adequate.
- Ensure you can tighten all tiedowns unless steel, fiber or synthetic strapping is used. In these cases ensure the strapping is taut.

The information on securement systems and working load limits is detailed in Standard 10. Other requirements:

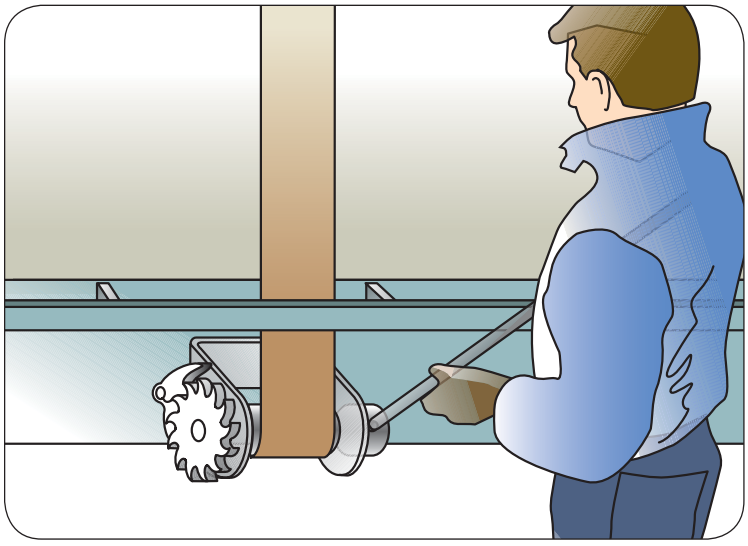
- A friction mat which isn't marked by the manufacturer with a working load limit is assumed to provide resistance to horizontal movement equal to 50 per cent of the weight of the cargo resting on the mat.

fast fact

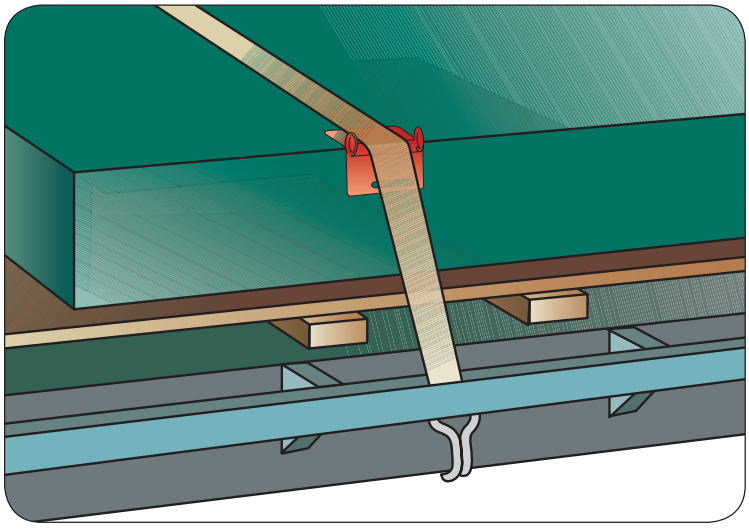
If a winch-type tightening device is used to secure a wire rope, it should be specifically designed for use with wire cable. If a winch designed for webbing is used, protect the wire rope by anchoring it securely to the drum.



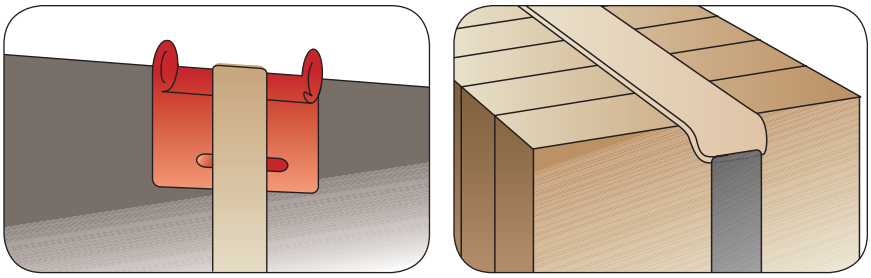
A winch.



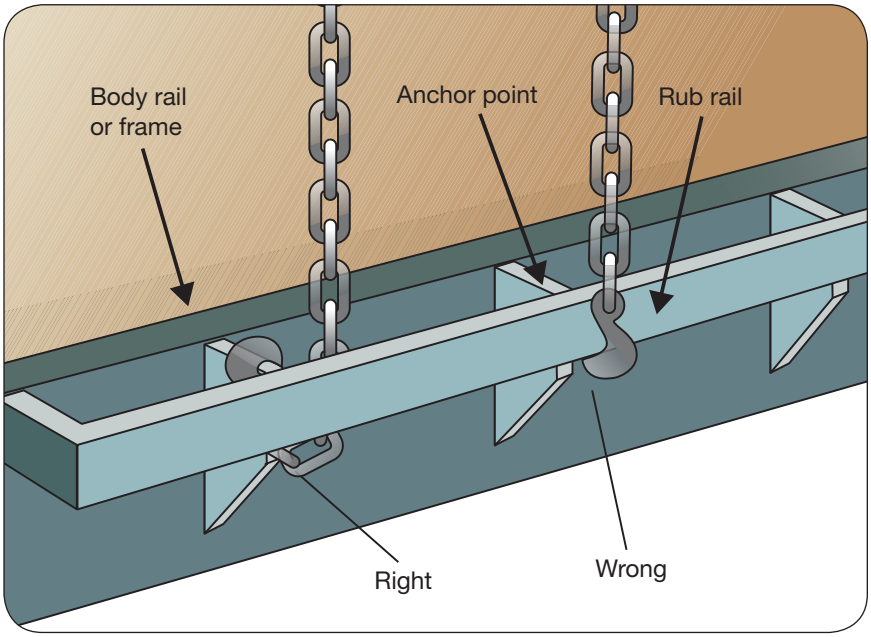
Nylon webbing with a winch.



Webbing with a hook end.



Two types of webbing protectors.



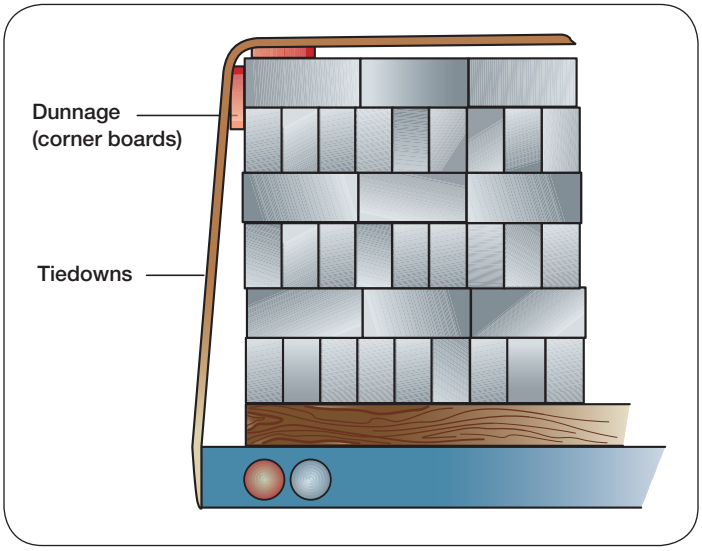
fast fact

Rub rails must not be used as anchor points.

definition

Dunnage is spacing blocks, boards and mats that separate cargo from itself and its restraints.

- Timber used on or within a vehicle as dunnage, chocks or cradles for blocking or bracing shall be strong enough that it will not be split or crushed by the cargo or the tiedowns.



Dunnage in the form of corner boards is used with tiedowns to secure this load of bricks.

- Where the articles of cargo on or within a vehicle are placed beside each other and secured by tiedowns that pass over two or more articles, the articles shall be:

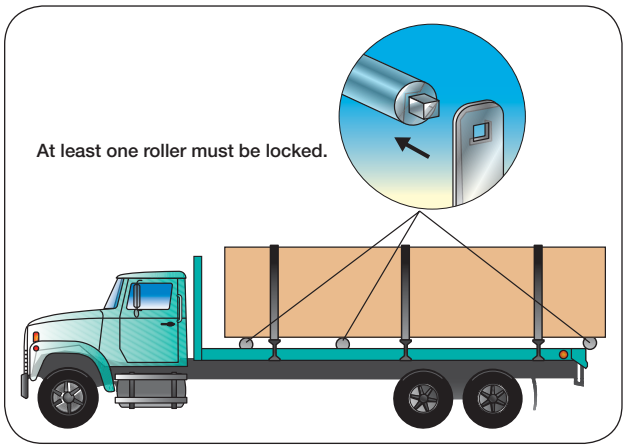
  a) placed in direct contact with each other, or

  b) prevented from moving towards each other while the vehicle is on a highway.

- Where any cargo or portion thereof may roll, it shall be restrained by chocks, wedges, a cradle or another securing device that prevents the cargo from rolling.

For bagged products such as cement, fertilizer or other products packaged in bags and then stacked on pallets for shipment, interlocking the bags on the pallets and wedging the pallets on the trailer isn't enough. Secure the bags by tiedowns and dunnage (corner boards).

If a load is supported on rollers, then lock at least one roller to prevent the load from shifting. The load must also have adequate tiedowns.



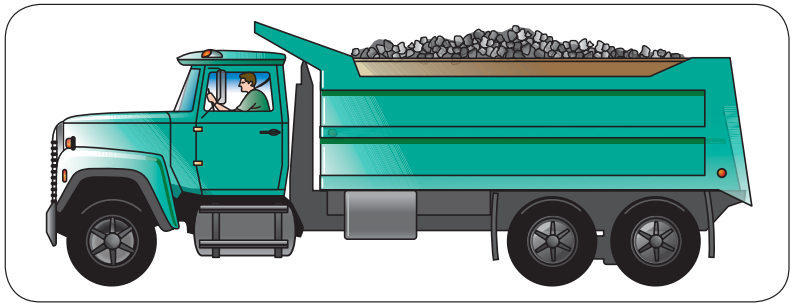
This load is supported on rollers and secured with tiedowns. Lock at least one roller.

Aggregate loads — An aggregate load is a collection of small articles. Sand, gravel, pieces of paper or wood chips are all types of aggregate loads. If these loads can't be contained with sideboards or tiedowns, you must use a cover or tarp so pieces don't escape from the vehicle.

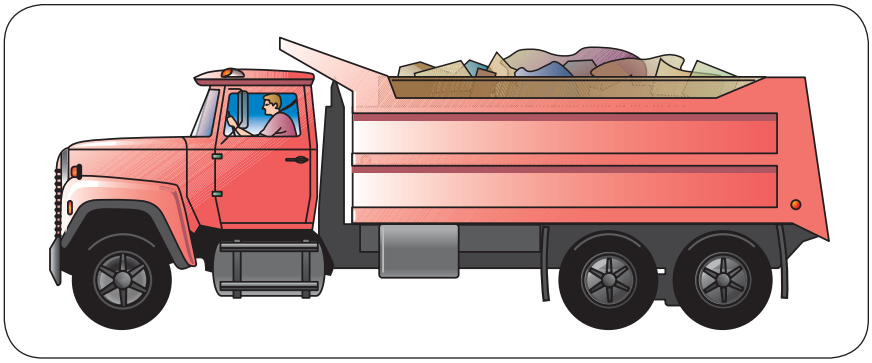
You must use a cover or tarp to secure your load if:

- the load is made up of aggregate material, and
- the load is likely to bounce, blow or drop from the moving vehicle.

These two examples show the same kind of truck carrying different types of aggregate loads.



Since this dump truck is carrying ¾-inch crushed stone, use a cover or tarp.



Since this dump truck has a full load of paper, debris and garbage, use a cover. Without one, parts of this load will probably blow out of the box.

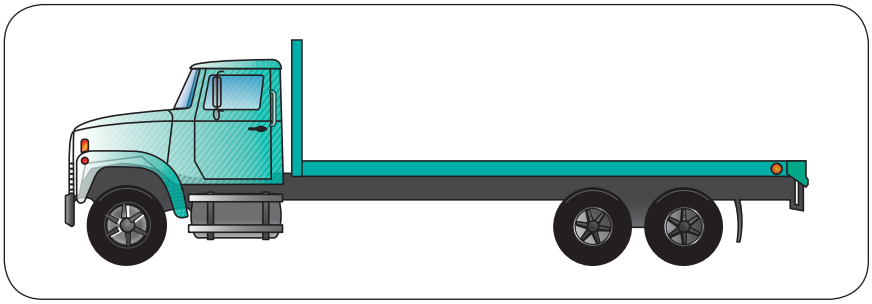
Remove any debris from the ledges outside the box and tailgate before you start your trip. Close the tailgate tightly against the box so the load can't escape through cracks.

Front-end structures

A cab shield (cab protector, bulkhead) is not considered a front-end structure or part of a cargo securement system under Standard 10.

The Standard defines a front-end structure as a vertical barrier across the front of a deck that prevents cargo from moving forward. Division 5 of Part 1 of the Standard sets out requirements for front-end structures used as part of the cargo securement system.

Strength — Front-end structures less than 1.83 m in height must be able to withstand a static load of at least 50 per cent of the total cargo weight uniformly distributed over the front-end structure. If it's 1.83 m or taller, then



A front-end structure.

the structure must be able to withstand a static force equal to 40 per cent of the total cargo weight.

Height — To protect the vehicle operator, the Standard requires a front-end structure that's no shorter than 122 cm above the deck, or the height at which the front-end structure prevents the cargo from moving forward.

Width — The front-end structure must be no narrower than the width of the vehicle, or the width at which the front-end structure prevents the cargo from moving forward.

Penetration resistance — A front-end structure must be able to resist penetration by an article of cargo when the vehicle decelerates at a rate of 6.1 m/s^2. A front-end structure must not have any openings or gaps that would allow an article of cargo to pass through.

fast fact

TAC is the Transportation Association of Canada. To determine whether your vehicle is a TAC vehicle, refer to the *Commercial Transport Regulations*. TAC vehicles must meet different standards from non-TAC vehicles.

fast fact

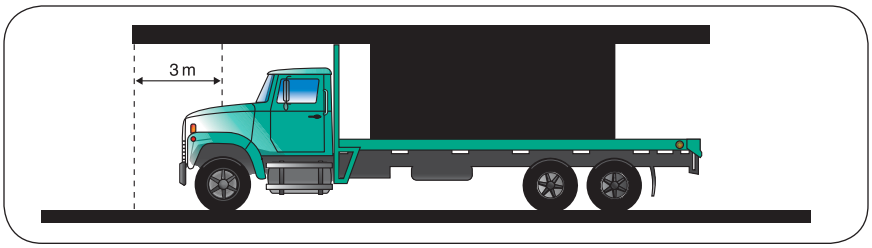
Front load projections on trailers can't extend more than a two metre radius beyond the articulation point for TAC vehicles or 2.25 m for non-TAC vehicles.

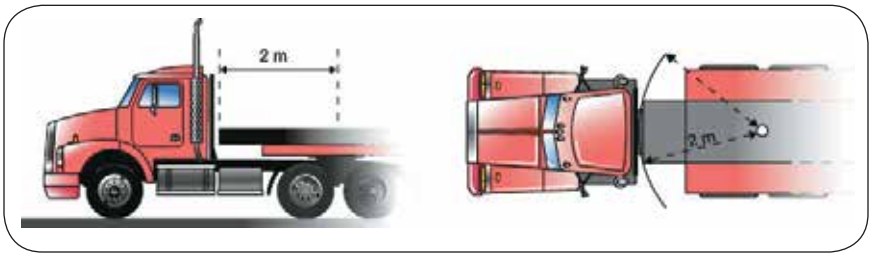
Load projections

Loads that project beyond your vehicle can cause problems. Projections take up additional road space and may intrude on other traffic lanes and space beside the roadway, especially when you're turning your vehicle. Allow yourself extra room when you transport cargo that has projections.

You must follow the standard limits for load projections unless you have a permit that allows you to extend your limit.

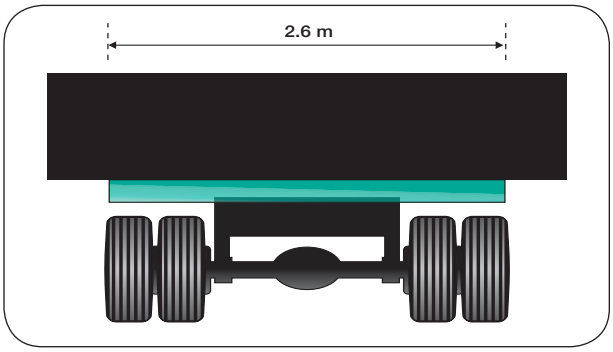
Front — Loads can't extend more than three meters beyond the center of the front axle.





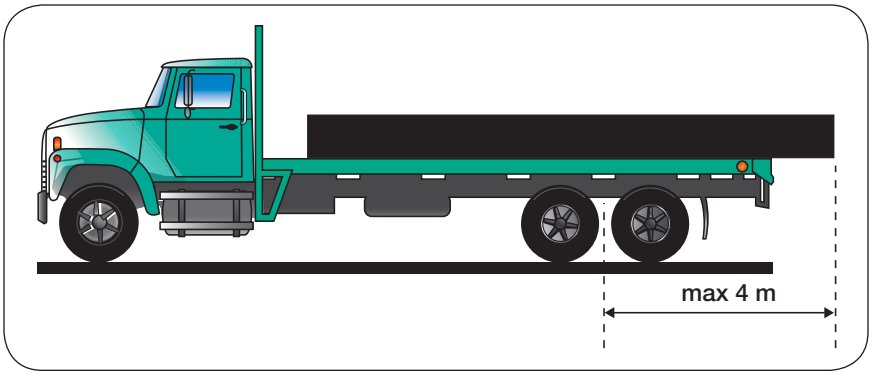
Here are two examples of acceptable front load projections. In the top illustration, the load extends a maximum of one metre beyond the front bumper. The bottom illustrations show two views of the same load. This load extends a maximum of a two metre radius measured from the kingpin (TAC) vehicle).

Sides — Loads can't be more than 2.6 m wide.



Since the load on this vehicle exceeds the legal width requirements, you'll need an oversize permit. See **Oversize and overload permits** later in this chapter.

Rear — Loads on a straight truck can't extend more than four metres beyond the turn centre. If a load projects more than 1.2 m beyond the rear of the vehicle, attach a red flag or cloth to the tip of the projection if driven in daylight, or a red light if driven at night.



The standard (TAC) vehicle) limit for a rear projection load.

Specific cargo types

You could be carrying a variety of cargo types in your work as a commercial vehicle driver. The Standard outlines general cargo securement requirements that apply to all types of cargo. There are also specific requirements for different types of commodities (cargo) that you might carry. Unless otherwise specified in the Standard, the general and the specific requirements both apply.

The information given here is only a summary and doesn't include all the types of cargo. Refer to Standard 10.

Standard 10 provides the requirements pertaining to Log Configuration, as well as those for:

- shortwood loaded crosswise
- one stack of shortwood loaded crosswise
- two stacks of shortwood loaded crosswise
- long vehicles carrying shortwood loaded crosswise
- shortwood loaded lengthwise
- longwood loaded lengthwise
- pole trailers.

Inspecting log loads — Before a vehicle transporting logs enters a highway from a private road, the driver must inspect the vehicle, the logs and the securing devices to ensure compliance with the Standard. If required, the driver must make adjustments and add more securing devices. Standard 10 also provides that short logs loaded crosswise must be secured with a device that maintains tension at all times and automatically takes up slack in the tiedown as the logs settle.

Division 2 of the Standard outlines requirements for dressed lumber.

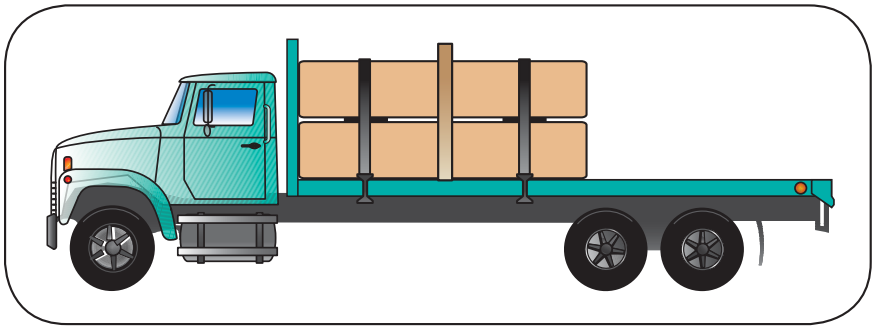
Building products

Bundles of lumber, drywall, plywood and similarly shaped building products must be secured in accordance with the requirements set out in Division 2 of Part 2 of the Standard.

Side-by-side bundles must either be placed in direct contact with one another, or prevented from shifting towards each other by dunnage or blocking.

You can secure bundles in two or more layers using a variety of methods:

1. If blocked from lateral movement by stakes on the sides of the vehicle, or by blocking or high friction devices between tiers, secure bundles by tiedowns laid over the top layer, with a minimum of two tiedowns for bundles longer than 1.52 m. Proper securement of bundles on a vehicle equipped with stakes is shown below.

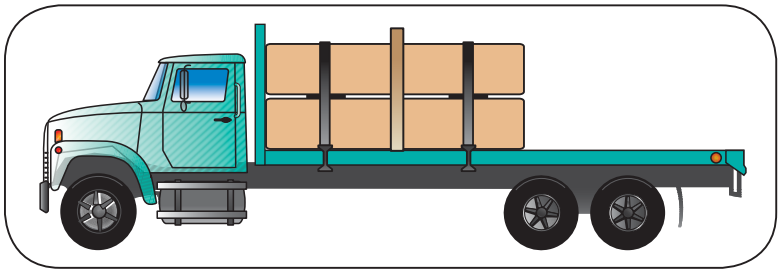


2. If the bundles are placed directly on top of one another, or on spacers of adequate size and orientation, secure by a combination of:
   - tiedowns over the top layer,
   - tiedowns over the second layer, or at 1.85 m above the trailer deck, whichever is greater, and
   - tiedowns for other multiple layers not over 1.85 m above the trailer.

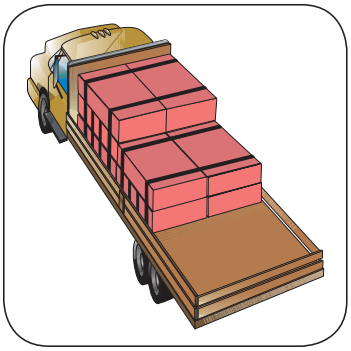
For example:
If there are two tiers of bundles, each over 1.85 m in height, secure each tier by tiedowns in accordance with the general cargo securement requirements.

If there are three tiers of bundles and the bottom two tiers exceed 1.85 m in height, secure all tiers independently in accordance with the general cargo securement requirements.

If there are three tiers of bundles and only the topmost tier exceeds 1.85 m in height, then secure the bottom two tiers together and secure the top tier independently. This arrangement of bundles is shown below.



3. Secure bundles by tiedowns over each layer, with at least two tiedowns on each top bundle longer than 1.52 m, as shown below.



Metal coils

The Standard outlines specific requirements for transporting coils of rolled sheet metal where the shipment of coils weighs 2,268 kg or more.

Coils transported with eyes vertical must be prevented from tipping forward, rearward and sideways. Use blocking, bracing, friction mats or tiedowns to prevent forward and rearward movement of vertical coils. Secure coils transported with eyes crosswise or lengthwise against rolling as well as against forward and rearward movement.

Detailed requirements for securement of the various possible configurations of metal coils can be found in Division 3 of Part 2 of the Standard.

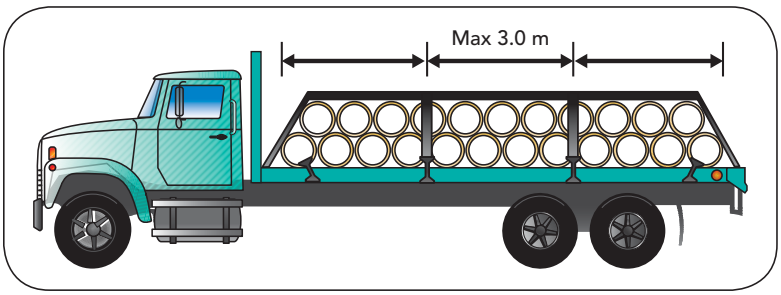
Paper rolls

Secure shipments of paper rolls weighing 2,268 kg or more in accordance with Division 4 of Part 2 of the Standard.

For rolls loaded in sided vehicles, use blocking, bracing, friction mats or tiedowns to prevent sliding, tipping or rolling. For stacks of rolls, use additional securement to prevent significant movement by upper layers. For rolls loaded on flatbed or curtain-sided vehicles, use additional tiedowns. Transporters of paper rolls should refer to the Standard for detailed securement requirements.

Concrete pipe

Securement of concrete pipe loaded crosswise on a flatbed vehicle is governed by Division 5 of Part 2 of the Standard. The general cargo securement requirements apply to concrete pipe transported in sided vehicles or loaded with eyes vertical or lengthwise.

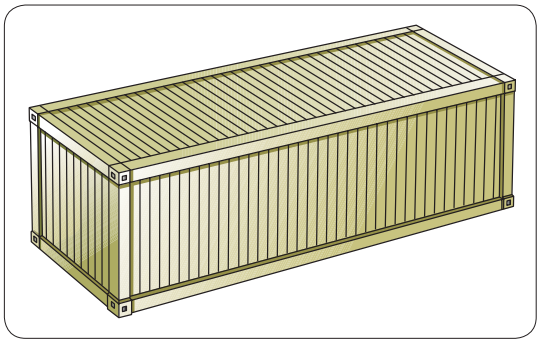


Group together pipes of different sizes within one load and secure separately. Immobilize the front and rear pipes in a single or bottom layer by blocking, wedges, vehicle structure or other equivalent means. Use tiedowns through the front and end pipes in order to firmly hold inner pipes in place. As shown above, place tiedowns both lengthwise and crosswise over groups of small pipe that aren't individually secured by tiedowns.

Large pipes require additional tiedowns through individual pipes. Detailed securement requirements are outlined in the Standard.

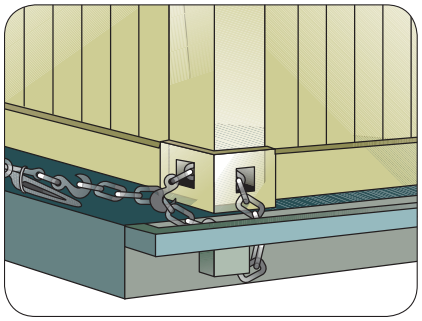
Intermodal containers

Division 6 of Part 2 of the Standard outlines securement requirements for intermodal containers. Secure cargo within the containers in accordance with the general cargo securement requirements or the commodity specific requirements.



An intermodal cargo container.

Secure intermodal containers loaded on a container chassis vehicle to the container chassis with integral locking devices. These devices must ensure the cargo doesn't move more than the maximum set out in the Standard. While chain isn't an integral locking device, you can use it as an interim measure if the integral locking device is damaged or missing.



The corners of an intermodal cargo container have holes through which you pass a chain to secure the container to the vehicle. Hook the chain around an entire link, not simply through it.

Secure intermodal containers transported on other types of vehicles to the vehicle by:

- chains, wire ropes or integral locking devices that are fixed to all the lower corners, and/or
- crossed chains that are fixed to all the upper corners

with an aggregate working load limit of 50 per cent of the weight of the container. Securement points don't need to be on the exact corners of the container.

Vehicles as cargo

In accordance with Division 7 of Part 2 of the Standard, vehicles with a GVW of less than 4,500 kg must be secured at both the front and rear with a minimum of two tiedowns. A winch may be used as a front tiedown. The general requirements for numbers of tiedowns don't apply. Heavy vehicles that weigh more than 4,500 kg must be restrained by a minimum of four tiedowns, each with a working load limit of at least 2,268 kg. Additional tiedowns may be required so that the aggregate working load limit of all tiedowns is at least 50 per cent of the cargo weight. Accessory equipment on heavy vehicles, such as hydraulic shovels, must be completely lowered and secured to the vehicle.

Stacked, flattened or crushed vehicles must be secured using containment walls, tiedowns, or a combination of these two methods. Tiedowns must have a working load limit of at least 2,268 kg and must not be synthetic webbing. Vehicles transporting flattened or crushed vehicles must have equipment that prevents loose parts falling from the load.

Roll-on/roll-off and hook-lift containers

Generally, roll-on/roll-off and hook-lift containers are carried on specially designed vehicles that are equipped with an integral securement system. Where a container is being transported on a vehicle without a functioning or compatible integral securement system, Division 8 of Part 2 of the Standard specifies a number of securement requirements.

Where a front stop or lifting device is missing, damaged or incompatible with the securing devices on a container, the container must be secured to the vehicle using manually installed tiedowns that provide the same level of securement as the component they replace.

If the vehicle doesn't have an integral securement system, the container must be:

- blocked against forward movement by the lifting device, stops or another restraint mechanism, such as a chain
- secured to the front of the vehicle by the lifting device, or another securing device, to prevent sideways and vertical movement
- secured to the rear of the vehicle using:
  - a tiedown attached to the vehicle chassis and the container (this tiedown may be attached to one rail)
  - two tiedowns installed lengthwise, each securing one side of the container to one of the vehicle's side rails
  - two hooks, or
  - equivalent mechanisms.

The same device may be used for securing the container to the front and rear of the vehicle.

Boulders

Secure boulders that weigh more than 5,000 kg, or have a volume greater than two cubic metres, as outlined in Division 9 of Part 2 of the Standard when transported on a flatbed vehicle or a vehicle that isn't specifically designed for transporting boulders.

Place a boulder with its flattest or largest side on the deck and support by at least two pieces of hardwood blocking or in a crib. Use at least two chains to secure the boulder to the vehicle. Non-cubic-shaped boulders with unstable bases require additional tiedowns.

Livestock

Livestock can be difficult to transport because the animals may move around in the trailer. This movement can make turns difficult, cause a collision and injury to the livestock. When you have less than a full load, use false bulkheads to keep livestock bunched together.

Reduce your speed on curves because animals — even when bunched — sometimes lean which can shift your vehicle's centre of gravity and cause a rollover.

Hanging meat

Meat suspended in a truck or trailer can sway. This type of load has a high centre of gravity, which increases the chances of your vehicle rolling over. Secure suspended items, so they can't shift or sway. Reduce your speed on sharp curves and take extra care on off-ramps and on-ramps.

Liquid or dry bulk tank loads

Liquid or dry bulk tank loads often have a high centre of gravity. This always increases the danger of a rollover. These loads will shift. If they aren't baffled, they'll surge forward, backward and side to side. Reduce your speed on curves and sharp turns and be especially careful on stops and starts.

fast fact

If you're going to work with dangerous goods, your current employer must certify that you've had appropriate training. Always carry your training certificate with you when transporting dangerous goods.

Transporting dangerous goods

Dangerous goods present a serious potential hazard to people who handle them, the public and the environment. People who have anything to do with dangerous goods have significant legal responsibilities and must be properly trained and appropriately certified.

When transporting these goods, you must ensure all shipping documents are complete, correct and readily available in the cab. These documents must accompany the dangerous goods shipment.

Report immediately any incident related to your dangerous goods cargo, like spills, leaks, fires, explosions or damaged containers to the nearest police agency or the Yukon spills line. Your rapid action may help prevent an incident from becoming serious.

fast fact

Report immediately any incident involving dangerous goods in Yukon by calling the local police or the Yukon spills line at 867-667-7244, collect calls accepted.

There are nine classes of dangerous goods: explosives, gases, flammable liquids, flammable solids, oxidizing substances and organic peroxides, poisonous substances and infectious substances, radioactive materials, corrosive substances and miscellaneous products or substances.

These are examples of some of the dangerous goods placards that may appear on the sides and both ends of transport trucks.

For sources of more information on dangerous goods, see **chapter 12, for more information.**

The sign on the left designates roads where vehicles transporting dangerous goods may travel. The one on the right designates roads where these vehicles can't.

Vehicle and load dimensions

The *Highways Act* sets limits for commercial vehicle lengths, widths, heights and weights.

Obey all Highways and Public Works signs that limit the dimensions or weight of allowable loads, regardless of the licence or permit you carry. These signs are posted along highways to help you avoid damaging your vehicle, its load, the road or other highway users. Temporary additional weight restrictions can be posted at certain times of the year.

These signs all indicate that you need to make sure your vehicle has enough clearance.

This sign warns that the road narrows ahead.

The sign indicates that there is a one-lane bridge ahead, so you may have to yield to oncoming traffic on the bridge.

These signs indicate the height of an overhead structure such as a bridge or overpass. The diamond-shaped sign warns of low clearance ahead, and the rectangular sign may be mounted on the structure. Make sure your commercial vehicle has clearance, or else choose a different route.

These signs indicate truck routes.

Commercial vehicles are allowed to travel on this road.

Commercial vehicles aren't permitted on this road.

Commercial vehicles aren't permitted in this lane.

These signs indicate bus routes.

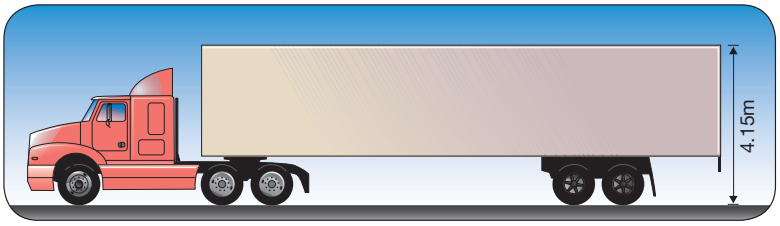
Buses are permitted on this road.

Buses aren't permitted on this road.

Height

Know the height of your vehicle and its load at all times. Highway signs posted before underpasses and tunnels give the height of their overhead clearances. In some areas, overhead check bars and warning devices are installed so you can test whether your vehicle is within the limits.

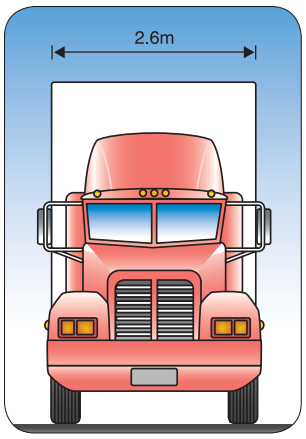
The maximum allowable height for a commercial vehicle is 4.15 m unless the driver has an oversize load permit.



Width

Knowing the width of your vehicle is as important as knowing its other dimensions.

The maximum legal width of a vehicle and its load is 2.6 m unless the driver has an oversize load permit.



These items may extend up to 10 cm beyond the sides of a vehicle without being considered in that vehicle's overall width:

- anti-splash and spray devices
- devices to secure loads
- ladders
- dangerous goods placards
- glad hands and air connectors
- electrical or hydraulic connectors
- clearance lights.

Vehicles transporting loose hay, straw or fodder can be loaded to a maximum of 3.1 m overall width.

Side mirrors must always extend beyond your load, even when it's oversize, so you can see behind your vehicle.

Be particularly careful when you're driving an oversize vehicle on narrow bridges and in canyons, gorges and road-construction areas.

Winter driving conditions can add to the hazards of driving wide vehicles, particularly in the mountainous areas of the territory. When winter weather affects driving conditions, the first rule of safety is **reduce speed**.

fast fact

Side-view mirrors may extend up to 20 cm beyond the side of the vehicle. If they extend more than h20 cm, they are considered in the overall width of the vehicle.

fast fact

The overall length for reefer vans or reefer trailers may be extended to include the refrigeration or heating unit.

Length

Always be aware of your vehicle's length and the length of your load. You need to be particularly cautious while negotiating turns on narrow roads and in alleys.

Remember to leave enough clearance so you can avoid striking objects such as poles, parked cars and buildings. Anywhere that has limited clearance is a potential hazard.

fast fact

Watch for a sign that posts the maximum allowable weight whenever you approach a bridge.

Weight

Commercial vehicles are licensed according to their gross vehicle weight (GVW). You must know the weight of your vehicle and its load to ensure your vehicle doesn't exceed load limits.

Several terms are used to define a vehicle's weight. These include:

- **GVW** (gross vehicle weight) is the combined weight of the vehicle and its load.
- **GVWR** (gross vehicle weight rating) is a manufacturer's rating which defines the weight of a vehicle and the maximum load it should carry.
- **Licensed GVW** is the combined weight of the vehicle and the maximum load it's licensed to carry or tow. The minimum licensed GVW of most commercial vehicles is 1.5 times the net weight of the vehicle.

The CVSA Regulations contain more detailed information about the dimension requirements for different vehicle combinations. If you are unsure of the CVSA regulations contact any Yukon weigh scales or online at www.hpw.gov.yk.ca.

fast fact

You must have a permit before you take an oversize vehicle on the road.

Oversize and overload permits

If your load can't be reduced and it's larger or heavier than regulations allow, you may be able to purchase an oversize permit.

You can purchase permits for overwidth, overweight, overlength, or overheight loads. If you plan to travel on the highway, you can apply by calling the *Yukon Weigh Scales*.

These permits are issued according to *Highway Regulations*.

When you apply for a permit you must provide:

- registration and insurance papers for both the tow vehicle and the trailer(s)
- specifics on the load you'll be carrying
- details about your planned route and destination
- a time when you plan to move your oversized load.

fast fact

To move oversize or overweight loads on city or municipal roads, you may need to get a permit from the local city government or municipal authority.

fast fact

If your load can't be broken into smaller amounts and is overweight or oversize, you may be able to purchase a permit to exceed standard limits.

fast fact

It's estimated that one heavy vehicle passing over a roadway can cause up to 5,000 times more damage than a single passenger vehicle, depending upon the heavy vehicle's configuration and loading.

If you're applying for an overload permit, you'll also have to identify the amount of weight that will be on each axle of your vehicle.

When you receive a permit, you'll also be given a list of requirements you must fulfill including some or all of the following:

- pilot car(s)
- flags
- signs
- lights
- time of day you may travel
- days of the week you may travel
- the route you must use.

Overload permits

Overloading your vehicle can make steering, braking and controlling your speed more difficult. Use extra caution when driving overloaded vehicles. Be prepared to drive slowly on upgrades and be careful not to lose control of your speed when going down hills.

A vehicle or combination of vehicles is overloaded whenever:

- the vehicle and its load exceed the GVW allowed under the *Highway Regulations*, or
- the vehicle(s) and its load weigh more than its licensed GVW, or
- the vehicle and its load exceed the maximum allowable weight on any single or group of axles.

Overload permits are issued only when loads can't be reduced or when a vehicle isn't licensed up to its allowable weight.

Oversize permits

If your vehicle's wider, longer or higher than regulations allow, you must have an oversize permit before operating on any highway. This applies whether your vehicle is loaded or not. Permits for loaded vehicles are only given when the load can't be reduced.

Permits are not normally given for loads or vehicles that are wider than 4.4 m.

The extremities of all oversize vehicles or loads must be marked with red flags that are at least 30 cm by 30 cm. For night travel, lights are required on the extremities — amber to the front and red to the rear.

Pilot cars

As a condition of an oversize or overload permit, a pilot car may be required.

A pilot car warns other drivers about the larger-than-normal vehicle they're about to encounter.

Your permit may require more than one pilot car depending on your route and the load.

Signs

You must display the appropriate signs whenever you transport an oversize load.

This warns that the vehicle being driven is carrying a wide load.

This warns that the vehicle being driven is carrying a long load.

This warns that the vehicle being driven is carrying an oversize load.

When required, a D (for over dimension) sign must be carried by a pilot car.

fast fact

Pilot car sign regulations are detailed in *Highway Regulations*.

Distance from oversize vehicle

A pilot car must travel between 100 and 500 m either behind or in front of the oversize vehicle it's escorting.

Reporting to weigh scales

fast fact

An inspector or police officer may be a commercial transport inspector, motor vehicle inspector, constable or a special constable.

Fixed location and portable weigh scales are found throughout Yukon. If you drive a commercial vehicle with a licensed gross vehicle weight of more than 5,500 kg, you must report to a scale whenever a sign, a police officer or an authorized person directs you to do so. Your vehicle will be weighed and inspected at the scale.

An inspector or police officer may ask you to park your vehicle and bring your papers into an office. If this happens, take in all registration and permit papers for your vehicles as well as your log book and trip inspection report.

Fixed weigh scales

Weigh scales are permanently located throughout Yukon. Highway signs direct drivers to their locations. Drive your vehicle onto the scales when you enter the scale yard. The scale will measure the weight on your axles or axle groups. A peace officer will check your tires and measure your vehicle and its load. Follow the directions on the light board.

Highway signs that direct you to pull into a weigh scale.

Portable weigh scales

Inspectors with portable weigh scales travel throughout Yukon. They may be found on any public road. You may encounter a portable weigh scale in two different ways:

- It may be temporarily set up on the side of a road and you'll be signalled to stop.
- A vehicle with flashing lights may direct you to pull over to the side of the road — at that time the inspector in the vehicle may set up a scale.

Review questions

1. What can cause your trailer to jackknife when you're backing up?
2. What actions should you take if your trailer whips or swerves?
3. When a coupling device (other than a fifth wheel) is used to join vehicles in combination, is an additional coupling device such as a chain or cable required?
4. Except for a pole trailer, what's the maximum length permitted for a draw bar or coupling device between vehicles?
5. When coupling a tractor to a semi-trailer, should the air lines be connected to the trailer before or after connecting the kingpin to the fifth wheel?
6. How do you check that the fifth wheel jaws have locked to the trailer pin?
7. To uncouple a tractor from a semi-trailer, are the air lines unhooked before or after separating the fifth wheel from the trailer pin?
8. Why's it necessary to block the wheels of a trailer that will be left for any length of time?
9. What's a converter dolly and when's it used?
10. For which type of trailer connection are safety chains or cables required — a fifth wheel connection or pintle hitch connection?
11. What's the location of a single-unit truck's central weight distribution point?
12. What could result from placing too much weight over any one set of wheels or over any one axle?
13. Should the majority of the weight of a load on a single-unit truck be placed directly behind the cab, slightly ahead of the rear axle or slightly behind the rear axle?
14. Should the majority of the weight of a load on a semi-trailer be placed directly over the fifth wheel, at the midway point of the trailer or directly over the trailer axle?
15. What are the two methods or categories of securing cargo for transporting?
16. What's dunnage and why's it used?
17. What's the rough guide for spacing tiedowns to secure your load?
18. Why must you compare the weight of your load to the strength of your tiedowns?
19. What types of loads must be covered with a tarp?
20. What's the safe working load of a tiedown?
21. What's a tiedown assembly?

22. What's a load binder and why's it used?
23. Why must you protect tiedowns from rubbing against your load?
24. What are the dangers in transporting livestock?
25. What are two types of loads that have a high centre of gravity which, if not adequately secured to prevent movement or swaying, can increase the chances of your vehicle rolling over?
26. Why's it important for you to know the height and width of the vehicle you're operating?
27. Why's it necessary to know the gross vehicle weight (GVW) of the vehicle you're operating?
28. What factors determine the maximum allowable GVW for which the vehicle may be licensed?
29. Do load limit signs at the approach to bridges and structures apply to all vehicles?
30. Are you allowed to display Wide Load signs on your vehicle when a wide load isn't actually being transported?
31. What's the maximum legal width of a vehicle that'll be operated on a highway?
32. What's the maximum length a load may project to the rear?
33. What's required before oversize or overweight loads may be transported?
34. What are the conditions for obtaining a permit to transport overweight or oversize loads?
35. Are all commercial vehicles required to report to weigh scales?

6 skills for driving buses, taxis and limousines

This chapter provides information about the skills and knowledge you need to be a bus, taxi or limousine operator. The information here relates particularly to Class 2 and Class 4 vehicles.

What you'll learn

After studying this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❏ define the various types of buses and taxis and describe their uses
- ❏ describe how to safely deal with common driving situations
- ❏ identify and describe key regulations that apply to buses, taxis and limousines
- ❏ list and describe the requirements for operating a school bus
- ❏ describe the special considerations and regulations for driving an emergency vehicle.

Drivers of buses, taxis and limousines (Class 2 and Class 4 licences) must understand a variety of terms defined by the *Motor Vehicle Act* and their regulations. A few of the more important ones you need to know before reading this chapter are:

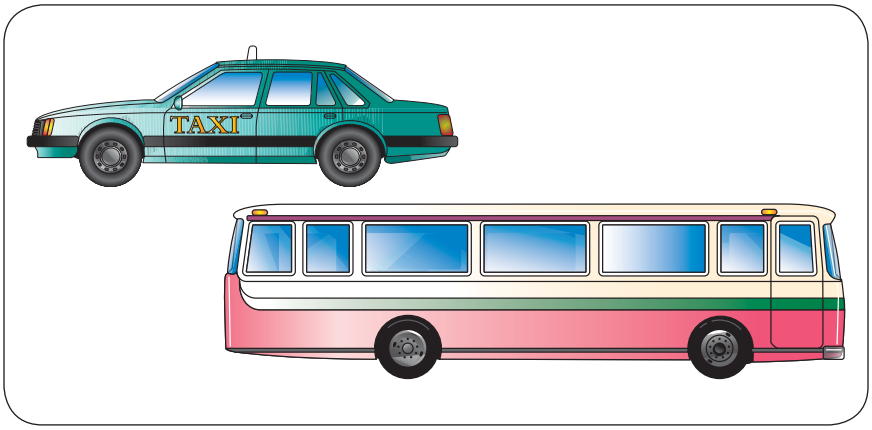
Public transportation — transportation of groups of people who aren't your associates or members of your family .

For Hire — includes money or other form of remuneration or reward

Bus — a large motor vehicle designed to carry passengers such as a 15 passenger van, school bus, motor coach, city transit bus, hotel shuttle bus.

Emergency Vehicle — ambulance

Taxi (or limousine) — a motor vehicle designed to carry passengers where the vehicle and driver are for hire.



A bus and a taxi — examples of passenger-carrying vehicles.

Passenger safety

Your most important concern must be the safety of your passengers. Ensuring your passengers' safety is always more important than meeting schedules.

You can best protect your passengers by making certain that the vehicle you use to transport them is safe and by operating it properly.

When bus passengers are injured, it's usually because the driver:

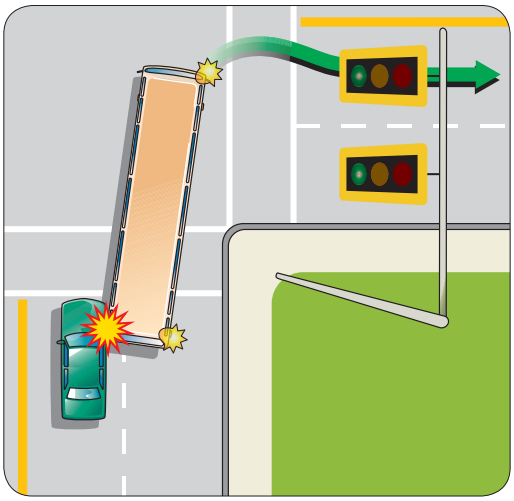
- stops too quickly or abruptly
- starts too quickly
- turns too quickly or abruptly
- opens or closes the doors too quickly
- fails to check on passengers frequently enough while driving.

You can prevent many passenger injuries by smart driving. Keep a safe distance behind other vehicles so you won't be forced to stop quickly if the vehicle in front of you stops suddenly. Passengers may be jolted and injured during a quick stop. Avoid getting blocked in by other vehicles so you have an escape route if trouble develops ahead of you.

Use the controls on your bus carefully. Make your starts and turns smoothly. Check on your passengers. Ensure that they're not moving around in the aisle when the bus is moving and that they're completely on or off the bus before you close the doors.

Manoeuvring

You need to understand the handling characteristics of your vehicle in order to transport your passengers safely and comfortably. Commercial passenger vehicles are usually taller, wider, larger and handle differently from most other passenger vehicles. Many of these differences are covered in **chapter 3, basic driving skills.** Other skills specific to driving buses, taxis and limousines are included in this chapter.



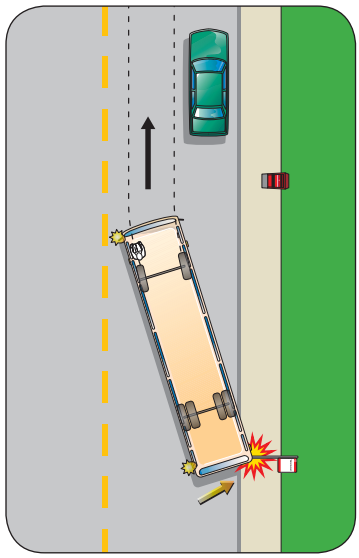
Large buses handle differently from most other vehicles, especially when turning. Leave enough room when you make a right turn to avoid a collision with the vehicle in the lane beside you.

Leaving the curb

Look in the side mirror and over your shoulder to check that traffic is clear before you leave the curb. Don't rely on your side mirrors alone. As you prepare to leave the curb, ensure your passengers are not moving around. Signal other drivers to let them know you plan to move into the traffic flow and check over your shoulder again.

Be careful that the rear of your bus does not swing over the sidewalk as you pull away from the curb. If it does, it could hit pedestrians, cyclists, poles or sign posts that are near the curb.

Watch for cars parked close to the front of your vehicle and for vehicles that may be approaching from the opposite direction as you leave the curb.



Ensure the back end of your bus doesn't hit pedestrians, cyclists, poles or sign posts as you are pulling away from a curb.

Bus right-of-way

The *Motor Vehicle Act* gives public transit buses the right-of-way when a bus driver signals to move from the curb lane or a bus stop into the traffic flow and the bus displays a sign telling motorists to yield. This rule applies to areas where the speed limit is less than 60 km/h.

This regulation doesn't remove any responsibility from public transit bus drivers. As a bus driver, you're still required to ensure it's safe before you move from the side of the road into traffic. Don't assume you have the right-of-way, as other drivers don't have to yield if it's unsafe.

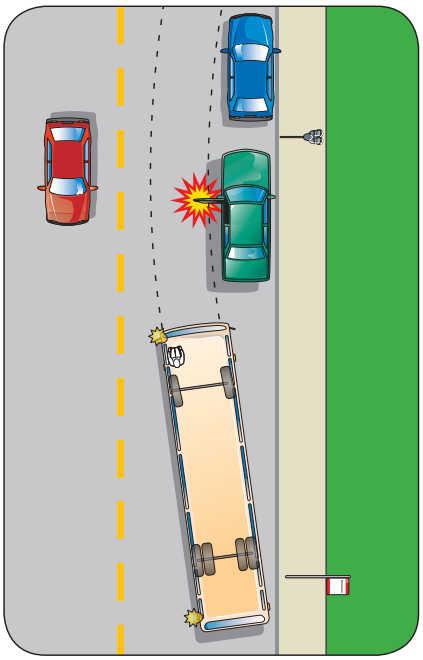
Passing parked cars

You'll often drive in urban areas on streets with parked cars. These vehicles can create a variety of hazards. When you drive past parked vehicles watch for:

- vehicles pulling into traffic
- doors opening suddenly on the traffic side
- pedestrians stepping out from between cars.

These clues can help you avoid a collision with people or parked vehicles:

- front wheels turned out
- a driver sitting behind the steering wheel
- exhaust from a tail pipe
- brake lights, back-up lights and turn signals
- people walking or children playing near the road.



Watch for warning clues to ensure you don't collide with parked vehicles or the people near them.

Operating a bus, taxi or limousine

You must have a passenger transportation licence if you're responsible for a vehicle which transports passengers on a for-hire basis. You must also be familiar with all relevant acts and regulations.

Taking on and letting off passengers

When you're taking on or letting off passengers on the highway:

- signal to warn traffic that you're stopping
- stop in a location that allows other drivers to see your vehicle from a distance of at least 85 metres (285 ft) in front and behind
- leave space to the left of your vehicle so that traffic may pass by — you should leave at least three metres (10 ft) so traffic can pass.

Whenever it's safe, pull your vehicle off the travel portion of the highway while your passengers are getting on or off.

Smoking

It's illegal to smoke in any motor vehicle when there are any passengers under 16 years old.

Children travelling in vehicles are especially vulnerable to second-hand smoke. These harmful effects are heightened in small enclosed places like motor vehicles and can have immediate and serious, long-lasting health consequences.

Focus on driving

The safety of your passengers is your first priority. This means that any time your vehicle is moving you must not collect fares, make change, take on or let off passengers. You should also save any unnecessary conversation with your passengers until you've stopped your vehicle.

Nothing or no one in your vehicle should get in the way of allowing you to do a safe job. You must be able to clearly see ahead, to the right and to the left. You must be able to move your arms and legs at all times and be ready to reach for emergency equipment.

You may have up to two passengers sitting on your right side in a sedan-type vehicle, but only if there's enough room for you to operate the vehicle safely.

Standing passengers

Passengers may not stand while a vehicle's in motion, unless the passenger transportation licence for that vehicle allows standing passengers. This licence will limit the number of standing passengers you may carry.

Your vehicle's standing passenger capacity must be displayed in an easily seen location in the vehicle. Don't allow any passenger to stand in a place that could make it difficult for you to see or move.

Refusing to transport passengers

It's your duty to provide transportation to all paying customers. But you may refuse to transport a passenger if:

- your vehicle's already carrying the maximum allowed number of passengers
- the passenger is:
  - smoking
  - using profane or offensive language
  - acting in a disorderly manner or being offensive to other passengers.

If you order a person out of your vehicle, you must ensure that the person can disembark safely and in a location where they can reasonably be expected to find alternate transportation.

Transporting people with disabilities

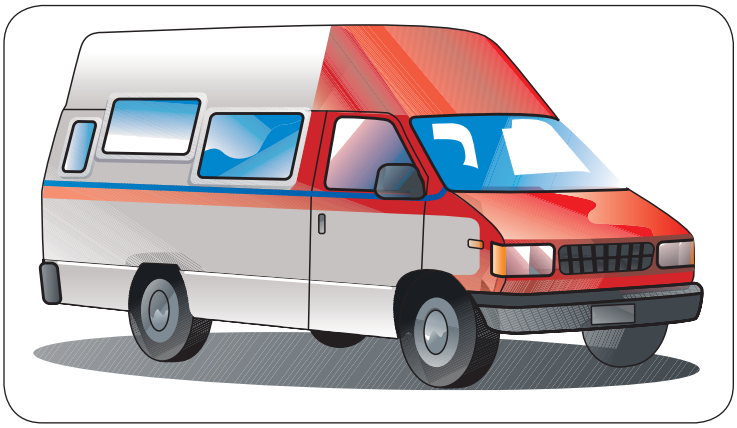
You need special skills, knowledge and sensitivity to transport people with disabilities. You can't refuse to transport an individual just because that person has a disability. Some people with disabilities travel with an assisting animal, such as a guide dog. You must allow these animals in your vehicle with their owners.

Tips for transporting persons with disabilities:

- speak directly to the person with the disability, not to their companion or assistant
- don't assume the person needs help — always ask before giving help
- remember that every person's unique and people's needs and abilities will vary greatly
- be patient, flexible and creative in the way you communicate.

Properly secure wheelchairs, scooters and other mobility aids. Provide assisting animals with space that'll keep them and everyone else in the vehicle safe if there's a collision.

Vehicle for hire permit



This type of vehicle is used to transport persons with disabilities.

Some municipalities require all limousine and taxi drivers to have a vehicle for hire permit. This permit is usually issued by the municipal office.

Inside lights

Public passenger vehicles with a seating capacity of more than 12 occupants, including the driver, must have a light or lights inside the vehicle that light up the passenger aisle behind the driver.

These lights must be kept on between the hours of sunset and sunrise so passengers can move safely in the vehicle.

Passenger vehicles must also have a light at each entrance that turns on when the door's opened.

Vehicle cleanliness

Your bus or taxi must be clean and sanitary at all times.

Vehicle inspection

It is your legal responsibility to ensure your passenger carrying vehicle meets the NSC standard. If your vehicle is over 4500 kg or has a seating capacity of more than 10 people it must be inspected by a certified PMVI shop every 6 months.

Emergency equipment and exits

Every commercial passenger vehicle that has a seating capacity of more than 10 occupants, including the driver, must have:

- one CSA approved first aid kit.
- at least one fire extinguisher.

The carrier is responsible for ensuring this emergency equipment is available and in working order.

Passenger vehicles that have a seating capacity of more than 10, including the driver, must be equipped with an emergency exit door or emergency windows that conform to CCMTA standards.

Vehicles that have a seating capacity of more than 10 passengers must carry warning devices such as flags and flares. For more information, see **chapter 3, basic driving skills.**

Defects and breakdowns

You must end the trip if your vehicle develops a problem that could endanger the safety or comfort of any of your passengers. Fix the problem or remove the danger before you continue the trip with your passengers.

You must make immediate arrangements to have your passengers transported to their destination with as little delay as possible if a crash or breakdown makes it impossible for you to continue.

Fuelling

Don't refuel your vehicle while the engine is running, on-board radio is transmitting or when any open flame is present. Keep the nozzle of the fuel hose in contact with the filler pipe on your vehicle at all times when refuelling to ground the connection. If there's a ground strap, also connect it to the filler pipe.

Baggage

You're responsible for all baggage passengers bring into your vehicle. You must ensure it's loaded safely. Don't strain yourself by lifting or moving heavy baggage. Load all baggage so that it doesn't interfere with passengers getting on or off the vehicle and can't fall on or against any passenger. It's important to protect all baggage from dust and moisture.

Cargo must be carried:

- in overhead racks adequately designed and constructed, and equipped with an elastic rope or cord, doors, or a rigid vertical edge equal to half the height of the remaining opening
- stowed under the seats and against a barrier which prevents forward movement
- in a separate compartment enclosed on all sides, or
- on a passenger's lap.

Baggage or cargo must not block or partially block any aisle or exit.

In addition, a bus shouldn't be loaded in a way that:

- obscures the driver's view to the front, left or right
- obstructs access to emergency equipment
- interferes with the movement of the driver's arms or legs, or
- hinders the safe operation of the bus.

Smoking and using alcoholic beverages

Don't smoke if passengers are in your vehicle. This applies whether your vehicle's moving or not.

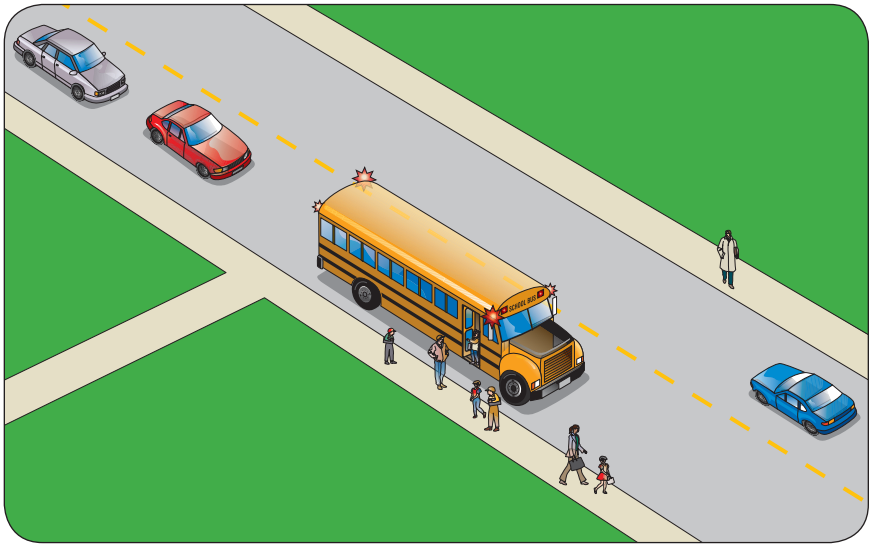
Don't be under the influence of alcohol while on duty.

Reporting a defect or deficiency

You must report any defect or deficiency that could make your vehicle unsafe. This report must be made in writing and it must be given to the carrier you work for at the time you find the defect or by the end of that day.

Operating a school bus

Requirements for operating a bus also apply to school buses. Any passenger vehicle that operates as a school bus must also comply with all parts of the MVA that relate to school buses.



The other vehicles are stopped and waiting for passengers to unload from the school bus before proceeding.

Unfit vehicles

If any mechanical inspector or peace officer finds that a school bus is unfit, you can't operate that vehicle as a school bus until the defect(s) has been fixed.

Rental buses

Any rental vehicle you rent to temporarily replace a school bus must comply with all parts of the *Motor Vehicle Act* and regulations that pertain to school buses.

Brake maintenance

Test the brakes on your school bus every day. Don't operate any school bus unless the brakes are safe.

Mechanical defects

Never transport passengers on a school bus that's defective in any way. Your first responsibility is to keep your passengers safe.

Refuelling

Ensure that all passengers are off the bus and the engine is turned off before you refuel.

Emergency equipment and exits

Every school bus must be equipped with emergency equipment, including:

- an approved fire extinguisher
- an approved first-aid kit
- flares or flags.

Passenger vehicles with a seating capacity of more than 12, including the driver, must be equipped with an emergency exit door or emergency windows.

Vehicles with a seating capacity of more than 10 passengers must carry warning devices such as flags and flares.

Refer to **chapter 3, basic driving skills,** for more information about emergency equipment.

School bus signs

All school buses must display two signs that say "School Bus." The letters on these signs must be at least 20 cm high and be black on a yellow background. These signs must be mounted at the front and rear of the school bus, with the rear sign either immediately above or below the rear window.

Exterior mirrors

Every new school bus must have:

- Two sets of rear-view mirrors on each side of the bus to provide a good view of the highway to the rear and along the right and left sides of the school bus, and to observe passengers and road users immediately beside the school bus.
- A mirror to give a good view of the entrance door to the school bus so that you can observe passengers getting on and off the bus.
- A convex mirror at the front to give you a good view of the roadway immediately in front of the school bus to observe passengers who may be crossing in front of the school bus.

Make sure these mirrors are properly adjusted so that they provide the view they are intended to show.

Passengers must be seated

Passengers are not allowed to stand on a school bus. Ensure that all passengers are sitting before you move the bus.

Cleanliness

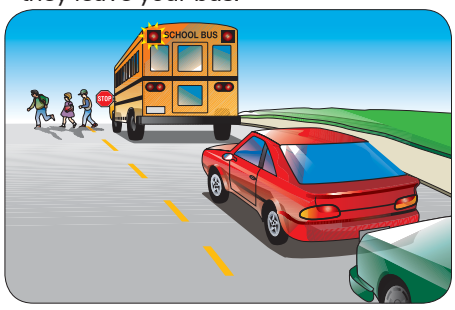
The floor of your school bus must be washed with a disinfectant solution at least once a week.

Taking on and letting off passengers

Before you open the doors of your school bus to let passengers on or off, ensure that:

- your vehicle has come to a full stop
- there are at least three metres of road available on the left side of your vehicle
- other drivers will be able to see your bus from at least 60 metres in either direction
- passengers enter or leave your school bus from the right side only.

School buses are equipped with alternating flashing red lights, swing-out stop signs and may also have flashing amber lights which are displayed with the flashing red lights. Use the alternating flashing red lights to alert other drivers whenever your passengers are crossing the road before they enter or after they leave your bus.



A school bus with a swing-out stop sign and flashing red lights.

All drivers are required to stop their vehicles when a school bus displays flashing red lights.

New school buses may also be equipped with a crossing control arm that extends in front of the bus to help you see passengers as they cross in front of the school bus.

Take extra care if passengers are crossing the road in front of your bus to see that they're clear of your path before you move off.

Turn off your flashing lights and draw in your stop sign after your passengers are safely in your vehicle or safely across the road. As a courtesy, allow any traffic that's waiting behind you to go ahead before you move back onto the road.

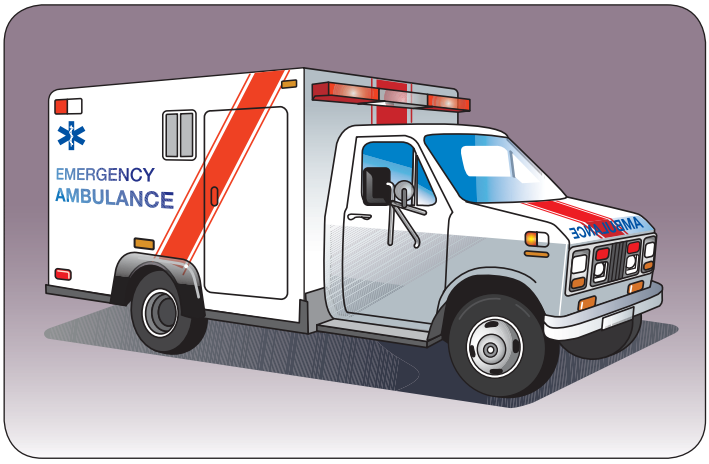
Operating emergency vehicles

Ambulance drivers use flashing red lights to warn other drivers when it is essential that they get the right-of-way. These lights are to be used only when the ambulance is responding to an emergency call or transporting a patient.

You may drive an emergency vehicle faster than posted speed limits and drive through red traffic lights or past stop signs if you give other drivers the appropriate warning. Ambulances are equipped with audible signal bells, sirens or exhaust whistles and flashing red lights. Use both lights and the siren to warn other drivers. Use caution at all times because other drivers may not see or hear your warning.

Whenever you exceed the speed limits or drive through stop signals, you must think about:

- the condition and use of the highway
- the amount of traffic that's on, or is expected to be on, the highway
- the seriousness of the emergency you're responding to.



An ambulance is an emergency vehicle that uses flashing red lights to get the right-of-way.

Review questions

1. What's your most important concern when operating a vehicle used for transporting the public?
2. In addition to checking the left-side mirror, where should you look before leaving the curb?
3. As the driver of a bus, what precautions must you take when leaving a parked position where poles or sign posts are located near the vehicle?
4. Should you turn on the vehicle's signal lights before you're ready to leave the parking position?
5. What are some clues you can use to avoid a collision when passing parked vehicles?
6. Under what highway conditions may a taxi or bus take on or let off passengers on a highway outside the limits of a city or municipality?
7. What width of roadway must be left unoccupied by and beside the bus when stopping to take on or let off passengers?
8. Is it allowable for you to collect a fare or make change while the vehicle's in motion?
9. In a sedan-type vehicle, how many passengers may occupy the front seat in addition to the driver?
10. Are passengers permitted to stand on a bus and, if they are, where may they stand?
11. As the driver of a commercial passenger vehicle, under which conditions are you permitted to refuse to transport or carry any persons?
12. Is it necessary to have working lights that illuminate the passenger aisle of a bus?
13. At what times of the day are inside lights in public passenger vehicles to be illuminated?
14. What action would you take if the commercial passenger vehicle you are driving broke down and you could not continue the trip?
15. What precautions must be taken when refuelling public passenger vehicles?
16. What's the minimum safety equipment you're required to carry in a commercial passenger vehicle with a seating capacity of more than 12 occupants, including the driver?
17. Who's responsible for ensuring that the safety equipment is available and in working order?
18. What are the baggage restrictions that apply when loading or carrying baggage on a bus?
19. What are the smoking restrictions for drivers of public or limited passenger vehicles?

20. How often is it necessary to test the brakes on a school bus?
21. When a school bus has a defect, can you operate the vehicle before it has been fixed?
22. Can any school bus be fuelled while its engine is running or with any passenger inside it?
23. How many signs that read school bus must be displayed on a vehicle that's being operated as a school bus?
24. In addition to the regular outside rear-view mirrors, what type of mirror must be installed on cab-over or forward-control type school buses?
25. As the operator of any school bus, can you allow any passenger to stand while the vehicle's in motion?
26. As the operator of a school bus, how often are you required to wash the floor of the vehicle with water containing a disinfectant solution?
27. As the driver of a school bus, can you start the vehicle in motion before every passenger is seated?
28. Can a person be allowed to board or leave a school bus other than from the right side?
29. When operating an ambulance, when are you permitted to use flashing red lights?
30. When operating an emergency vehicle, what conditions must you take into account before exceeding speed limits or driving through stop signals and traffic signal lights?

7 hours of service requirements

This chapter provides information on the rules and regulations governing how many hours drivers may work, when drivers must have rest periods and the records drivers must keep to track their hours of work and rest.

What you'll learn

After studying this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❏ define and provide examples of off-duty and on-duty time
- ❏ define and provide examples of on-duty driving and on-duty-not-driving time
- ❏ explain how long you can drive before you must take a break
- ❏ list the minimum requirements for filling in a logbook
- ❏ describe the hours of service requirements in other jurisdictions.

National Safety Code

fast fact

For more information about the NSC as it's applied in the Yukon refer to the CCMTA website at www.ccmta.ca.

The National Safety Code (NSC) sets out minimum safety standards for commercial vehicles, drivers and carriers operating in Canada. Carriers are responsible for ensuring their drivers and vehicles meet these standards.

You will need to understand NSC regulations to perform your job safely. These regulations will help you protect your life and the lives of others, as well as your livelihood. NSC applies to you if you drive a motor vehicle that's used to transport people or freight for any business purpose.

The following vehicles are included in the National Safety Code program:

- commercial vehicles licensed with a GVW more than 4,500 kg
- commercial vehicles that have a seating capacity of 10 or more passengers plus the driver.

Hours of service

Hours of service regulations are designed to limit the time you can spend driving. Statistics show that a fatigued driver is more likely to be in a crash.

Hours of service regulations have been in effect since the 1980s. These rules have since been revised to reduce the risk of fatigue-related commercial vehicle crashes by providing drivers with more opportunity to obtain additional rest.

On-duty time

On-duty time is the period when you begin work or when a carrier requires you to be ready to start work. On-duty time ends when you stop work.

You're on duty whenever you drive or when you're:

- inspecting, servicing, repairing, conditioning or starting a commercial vehicle
- travelling as one of two drivers when you're not resting in the sleeper berth
- participating in the loading or unloading of a commercial vehicle
- inspecting or checking the load
- waiting for the vehicle or load to be checked at a customs office, weigh scale or by a peace officer
- waiting along the route because of a crash or other unanticipated event
- travelling as a passenger to a destination where you'll start driving — this qualifies as on-duty time when two conditions apply:
  1. the carrier requests you make the trip, and
  2. you didn't have eight consecutive hours of off-duty time immediately before you began your driving time
- performing any other work as a carrier or while employed by a carrier
- waiting for a commercial vehicle to be serviced, loaded or unloaded, when a carrier, who employs or otherwise engages you, asks you to do so.

fast fact

On-duty time doesn't include time spent on a ferry, unless you're working (for example, when a bus driver is selling tickets).

Off-duty time

It's important that you get enough rest every day. Off-duty regulations protect you and everyone else who shares the road with you.

- Off-duty time includes any time you spend in a sleeper berth in a commercial vehicle.
- All drivers must take a minimum of 10 hours off duty every day.
- Off-duty time other than the mandatory eight consecutive hours may be distributed throughout the day in blocks of 30 minutes or more.
- The total amount of off-duty time that you take in a day must include at least two hours of off-duty time that does not form part of a period of eight consecutive hours of off-duty time.
- All drivers must take 24 consecutive hours off duty every 14 days.

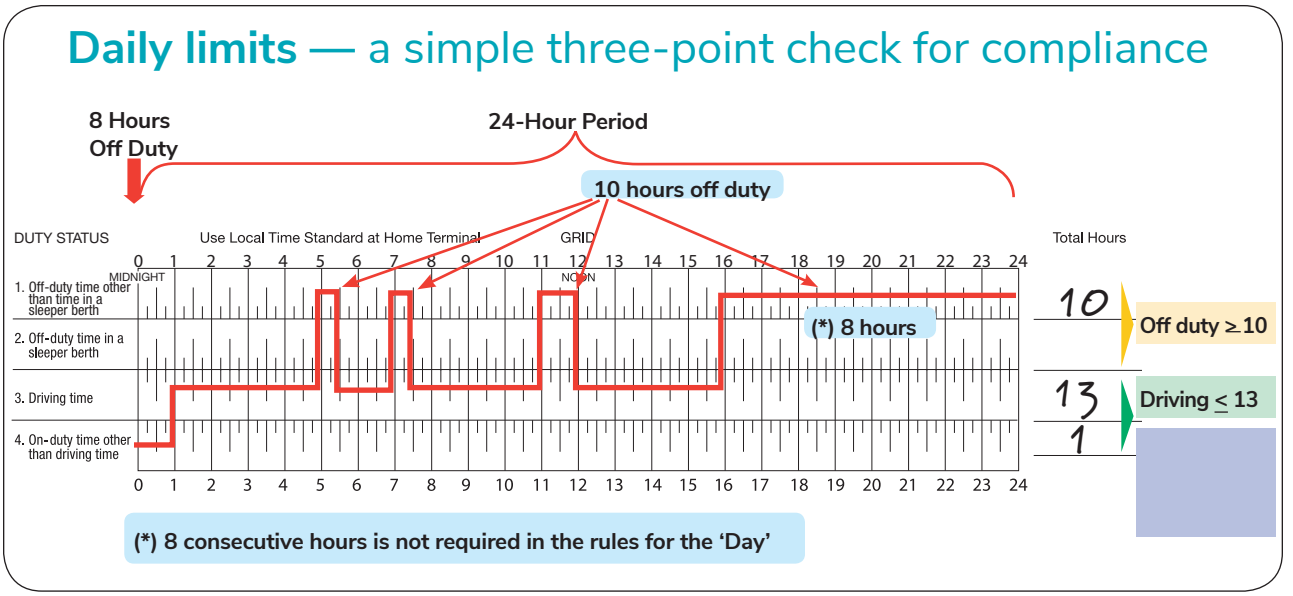
definition

Off-duty time is any time you're not on duty.

Day

A 'day' is a 24-hour period that begins at the hour designated by the carrier. Each 'day' is independent and there are certain on-duty, off-duty and driving limits for each day.

- A minimum of 10 hours of off-duty time must be taken every day.
- You're allowed to drive a maximum of 13 hours in a day.
- You're not allowed to drive after 14 hours on duty in a day.



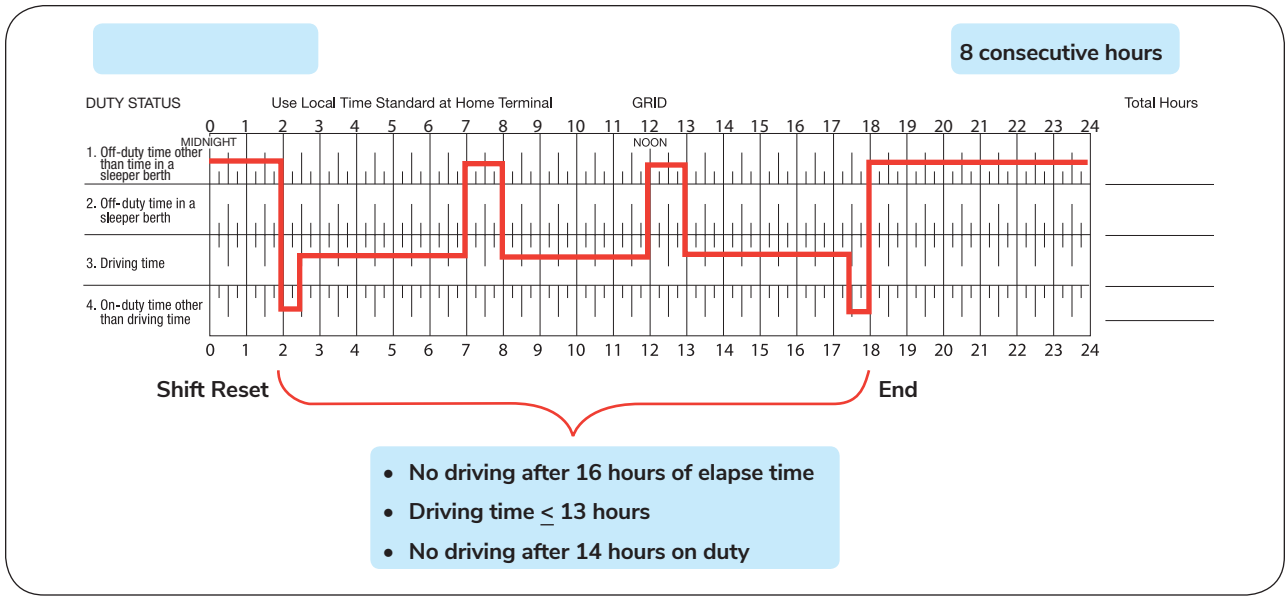
Work shift

A work shift starts at the conclusion of 8 consecutive hours off-duty (or equivalent) and ends with the next 8 consecutive hours off-duty (or equivalent).

Work Shift Rules

A work shift starts at the conclusion of 8 consecutive hours off-duty. After 13 hours of driving you have to take 8 consecutive hours before you can drive again

- After 13 hours of driving you have to take 8 consecutive hours before you can drive again
- After 14 hours of on-duty you have to take 8 consecutive hours before you can drive again
- Maximum of 16 hour (elapsed time)
- Time period which starts the instant you are on-duty after having just taken minimum 8 hours consecutive off-duty
- Includes all time and activities
- 8 consecutive hours off-duty resets the work shift
- Sleeper berth rest periods are not counted in the 16 hour duty period when they qualify for the sleeper berth rest provision



fast fact

You can put in 14 hours of on-duty time without doing any driving at all.

fast fact

You can reset a cycle at any time by taking:

- 36 consecutive hours off duty to reset cycle 1
- 72 consecutive hours off duty to reset cycle 2.

Daily hours (cycles)

You must keep track of your time using one of two cycles. Each cycle has a maximum number of on-duty hours. You may choose one of two cycles:

Cycle 1 — Drivers working on this cycle must not drive after completing 70 on-duty hours in seven days.

Cycle 2 — Drivers working on this cycle must not drive after completing 120 hours in 14 days, and must take at least 24 consecutive hours off duty prior to accumulating 70 hours of on-duty time.

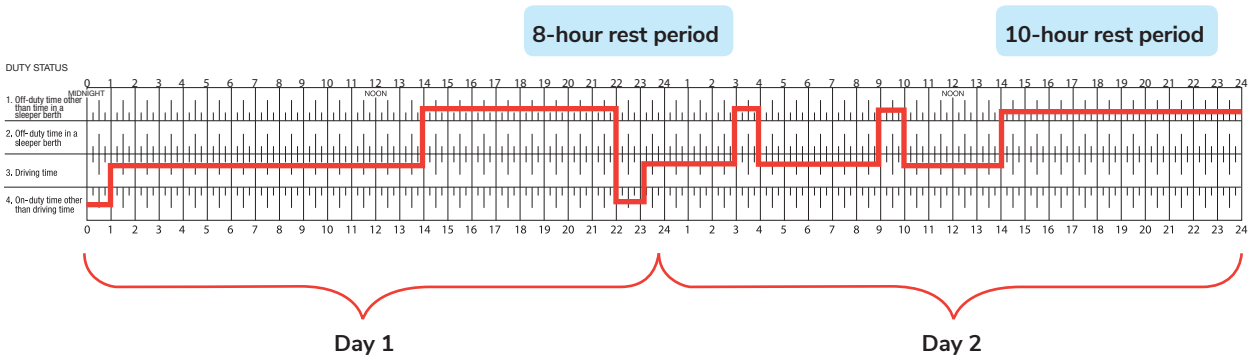
The start time remains the same throughout each cycle. You must "reset" a cycle to change the start time.

Deferring off-duty time

You may reduce your off-duty requirement of 10 hours by up to two hours providing:

- the two hours are not part of your eight consecutive off-duty hours
- the two hours are added to the eight consecutive off-duty hours taken off the next day, and
- you clearly indicate 'Day 1' and 'Day 2' on your logbook.

Driver has 'deferred' two hours from Day 1 to Day 2



Notes:

1 The two hours 'deferred' from Day 1 are added to the eight-hour rest period on the following day (Day 2 — 1400–1600)

2 On Day 2 — Must still have the two 'Off-Duty' Hours that are not part of any mandatory eight-hour off-duty block (0300–0400) and (0900–1000).

Reset provision

You can reset a cycle at any time by taking:

- 36 consecutive hours off to reset Cycle 1
- 72 consecutive hours off to reset Cycle 2.

fast fact

A sleeper berth does not include the back seat of a bus or a reclining seat.

Sleeper berth

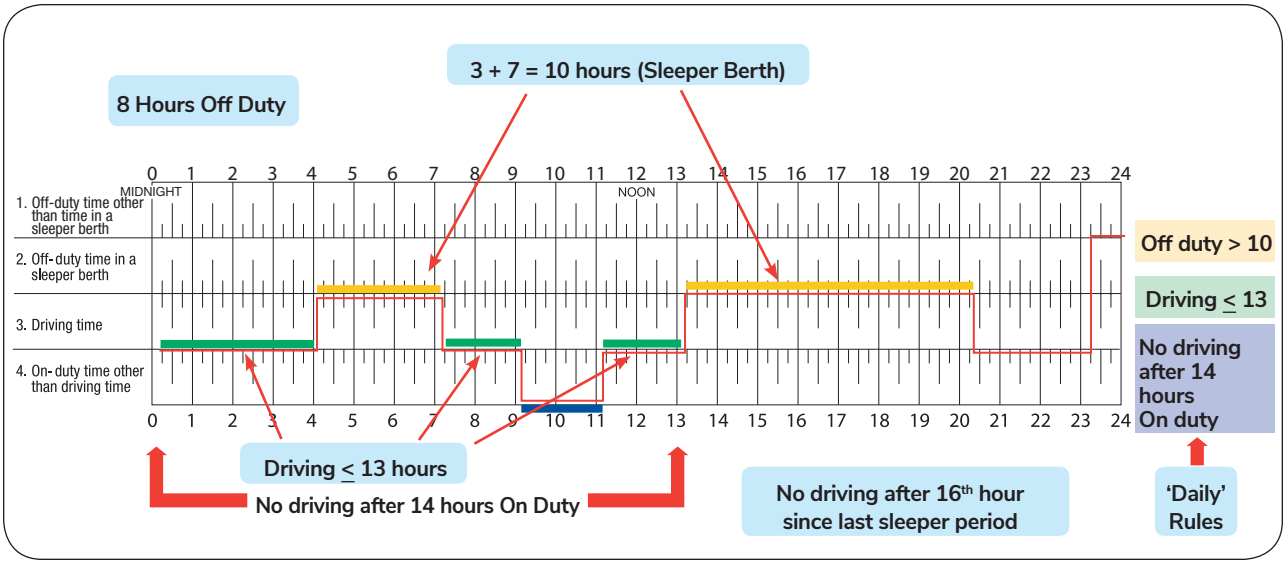
The same hours of service regulations for driving and on-duty time apply to drivers using sleeper berths.

Sleeper berth hours of service regulations for off-duty time are as follows:

Single drivers using a sleeper berth may split up their required off-duty time into two periods if:

- neither period is less than two hours, and
- the total off-duty time is at least 10 hours.

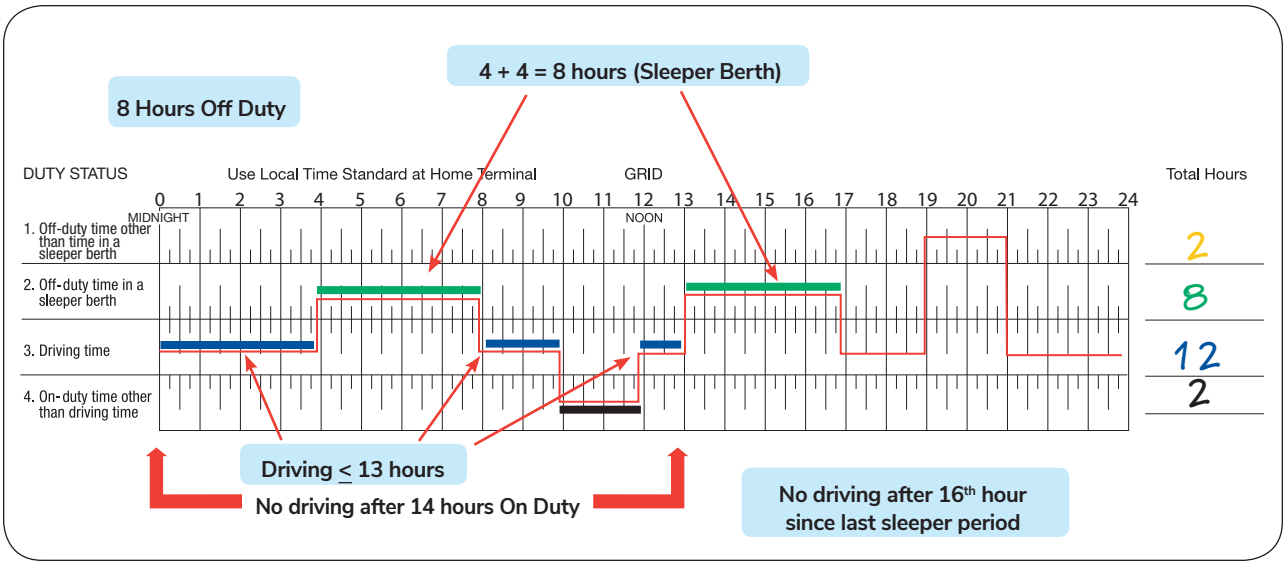
A logbook for a single driver using a sleeper berth is shown below.



Team drivers using a sleeper berth can split their required off-duty time up into two periods if:

- neither period is less than four hours
- the two periods total at least eight hours, and
- the total off-duty time is at least 10 hours.

A logbook for a team driver using a sleeper berth is shown below.



Personal use exemption

Driving a commercial vehicle for personal use is not considered to be on-duty time if:

- the vehicle's unloaded
- the vehicle's not towing a trailer
- the vehicle's driven a maximum of 75 km a day for personal use
- the odometer readings are recorded, and
- you're not subject to an out-of-service declaration.

Logbooks

Logbooks are used to record your hours of on-duty, driving and off-duty time. Logbooks must contain the following information:

- date
- start time if different from midnight
- name of driver in printed letters
- driver's signature
- name of the co-driver (if applicable)
- odometer reading at the beginning of the day
- odometer reading at the end of the day
- total distance driven by the driver during the day
- commercial vehicle licence plate number or vehicle unit number
- the cycle the driver is following
- name of every carrier the driver worked with, or for, during the day
- address of the home terminal and the principal place of business of each carrier the driver worked with, or for, during the day
- total number of hours spent in each duty status (on-duty time, off-duty time, driving time and off-duty sleeper berth time) — these totals must equal 24 hours
- total amount of time spent in one location doing on-duty work other than driving (this must be shown as a continuous line on the log)
- continuous line made by drawing through each time noted on the log page (the times noted must include every time the driver's duty status changed)
- name of the municipality or location on a highway, including the name of the jurisdiction, where each change in duty status took place
- declaration in the Remarks section of deferral of off-duty time, indicating 'Day 1' or 'Day 2'
- odometer reading at the beginning and end of personal use.

fast fact

A peace officer can order you out of service if you drive after reaching the maximum number of on-duty hours permitted for the cycle you are operating under. Only you are out of service, not the vehicle.

You must keep in your possession:

- a daily log that's updated to your last change in duty status
- today's log plus the logs for the previous 14 days, regardless of cycle
- any supporting documents you've been issued during your trip.

You must submit your logbook and all supporting documents to your carrier within 20 days.

Peace officers, including police, commercial transport inspectors and motor vehicle inspectors, may ask to see your logbook. You must present your logbook and any supporting documents when asked. The documents may include:

- bills of lading
- shipping documents
- fuel receipts and accommodation receipts for expenses incurred along the route.

Sample logbook

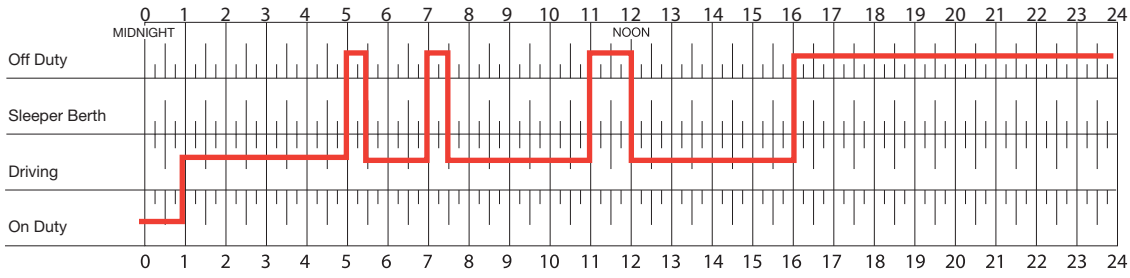
MOTOR VEHICLE OPERATOR'S DAILY LOG
Vehicle Numbers (Show all units)

DATE — Day: 01 | Month: 01 | Year: 2008

Carrier Name: ABC CARRIERS INC.
Home Terminal Address: 1000 SHIPPING ST. VANCOUVER, B.C.
Principal Place of Business Address (if different from above):
Cycle: 1 ✓ | 2
Daily Deferral Day #:

Odometer Finish: 152029.5
Odometer Start: 151575.0
Total Distance: 454.5 (km/mi)

DUTY STATUS — Use Local Time Standard at Home Terminal — Total Hours



	Total Hours
Off Duty	10
Sleeper Berth	
Driving	13
On Duty	1
	24

Remarks

Printed Name of Driver: J. Jones
Other Vehicle Operator:
Signature of Driver: J Jones

Personal Use of Commercial Vehicle
Start: Odometer: End: Odometer:

Drivers operating within 160 km of home terminal

You aren't required to keep logbooks if:

- you operate a commercial vehicle within a radius of 160 km of the home terminal (as the crow flies)
- you return to the home terminal each day to begin a minimum of eight consecutive hours of off-duty time
- you're not driving under a permit issued under these regulations, and
- you maintain accurate and legible records for each day that:
  - include each duty status
  - state driving and on-duty time separately
  - indicate the cycle you're using
  - record the odometer readings if you use the vehicle for personal use and
  - keep the records for a minimum of six months.

Other jurisdictions

Although the rules in most jurisdictions are similar, there are exceptions. Before entering another jurisdiction, be sure you know that jurisdiction's requirements.

Driving north of the 60th parallel

If you operate commercial vehicles north of the 60th parallel in Canada.

In order to address the different road, traffic and environmental conditions, different duty cycles are available to drivers operating north of the 60th parallel.

Shift Rules

A driver may not drive a commercial vehicle:

- after 15 hours driving time following 8 consecutive hours off-duty
- after 18 hours on-duty following 8 consecutive hours off-duty
- no more than 20 hours of time may elapse between the 8 consecutive hours of off-duty periods

Cycles

A driver may not drive a commercial vehicle:

- after accumulating 80 hours of on-duty time during a period of 7 consecutive days (Cycle 1)
- after accumulating 120 hours of on-duty time during a period of 14 consecutive days providing the driver does not accumulate 80 hours of on-duty time without taking a minimum of 24 consecutive hours off-duty (Cycle 2).

fast fact

As a Canadian driver, you may not operate a commercial vehicle in the U.S. if you have a history of epilepsy, if you have diabetes controlled by insulin or if you don't meet the U.S. hearing standards.

Rest Periods

A driver may meet the rest requirements (8 consecutive hours of off-duty) using one of the split sleeper berth time options.

- Single Driver - Two separate sleeper berth periods together totalling 8 hours with each period in the sleeper berth a minimum of 2 hours duration. Total driving time both before and after each sleeper berth period must not exceed 15 hours and the driver may not drive after 18 hours on-duty and after the 20th hour of elapsed time.
- Two separate sleeper berth periods together totalling 8 hours with each period in the sleeper berth a minimum of 4 hours duration. Total driving time both before and after each sleeper berth period must not exceed 15 hours and the driver may not drive after 18 hours on-duty and after the 20th hour of elapsed time.

Driving into the U.S.

Canadian drivers must obey all U.S. regulations while operating in the U.S.:

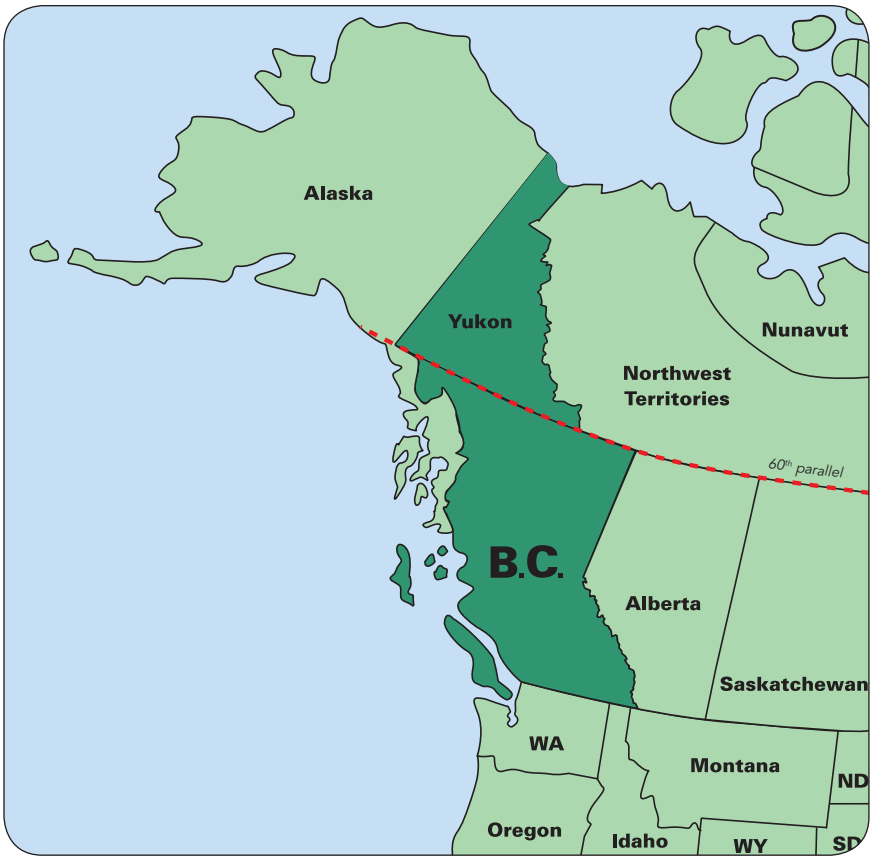
- you may drive for 11 hours after 10 hours of off-duty time
- you may not drive beyond the 14th hour after coming on duty, following 10 hours off duty
- you may work a maximum of:
  - 60 hours of on-duty time in seven days, or
  - 70 hours of on-duty time in eight days, or
  - the on-duty cycle may be restarted after at least 34 consecutive hours off duty
- you will have to participate in a drug and alcohol testing program administered by your employer.

While the hours-of-service regulations are different in Canada and the U.S., the requirements for keeping a logbook are similar. You're responsible for learning and complying with the laws of each jurisdiction you travel through.

driving tip

More information on driving into the U.S. may be found at www.fmcsa.dot.gov/index.htm.

Be aware that other jurisdictions may have different requirements for the maintenance of logbooks and the number of hours you may work each day.



Review questions

1. Why are hours of service regulations in place?
2. Are you permitted to record pulling off the road and taking a nap in a reclining seat of a commercial vehicle as sleeper berth time?
3. What's the maximum amount of driving hours permitted in a day?
4. How many consecutive hours of off-duty time must be taken every day?
5. What's the maximum amount of on-duty time in Cycle 1?
6. What's the maximum of on-duty time in Cycle 2?
7. When you're operating in Cycle 2, when must you take 24 consecutive hours of off-duty time?
8. How many consecutive hours of off-duty time must be taken to reset the cycle in Cycle 1?
9. How many consecutive hours of off-duty time must be taken to reset the cycle in Cycle 2?
10. How often does a driver have to take 24 consecutive hours of off-duty time, regardless of cycle?
11. When must you submit your logbooks to the carrier?
12. What are the consequences if you exceed your maximum on-duty hours and an enforcement officer stops you?

8 air brakes

What you'll learn

After reading this chapter you'll be able to:

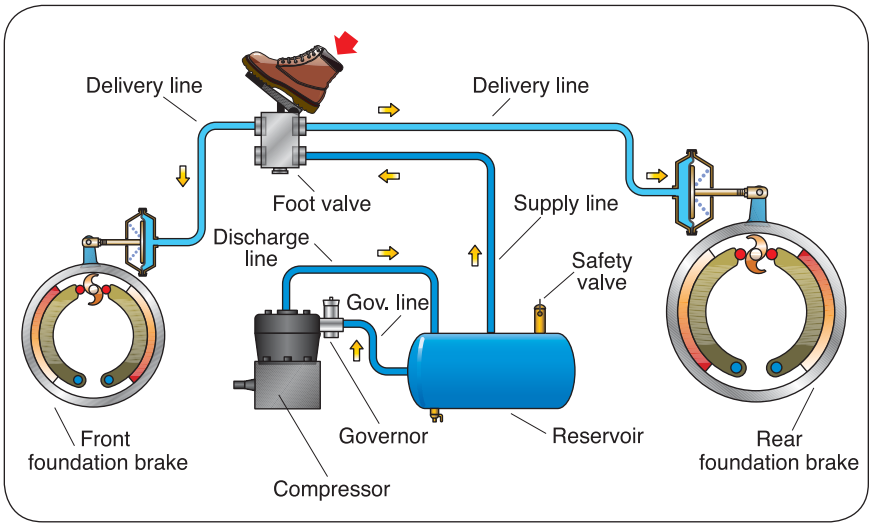
- ❏ identify the components of an air brake system
- ❏ explain how an s-cam foundation brake works
- ❏ describe what happens when one or more air brake system components fail
- ❏ explain how trailer brakes are applied.

Why air brakes?

Air brake systems:

- use a much greater force to apply the brakes than hydraulic braking systems do, which is needed to cope with the heavy loads of commercial vehicles
- are more tolerant to small leaks, which in a hydraulic system could result in brake failure (an air brake system includes a compressor to generate more compressed air as needed).
- are capable of stopping heavy commercial vehicles safely.

Basic air brake components



The basic components of a simple air brake system showing the brakes applied.

This diagram shows the components that are used to make the simplest possible air brake system:

- A **compressor** to pump air, with a **governor** to control the compressor.
- **Air lines** to allow the pressurized air to flow between the air brake system components.
- A **reservoir** to store the compressed air.
- A **brake pedal** (usually called a **foot valve**) to apply the brakes by directing compressed air from the reservoir to the brakes.
- **Foundation brakes**, including brake chambers, slack adjusters, brake linings and drums or rotors, to transfer the force generated by the compressed air through a mechanical linkage to apply the brakes.

Air brake chamber components

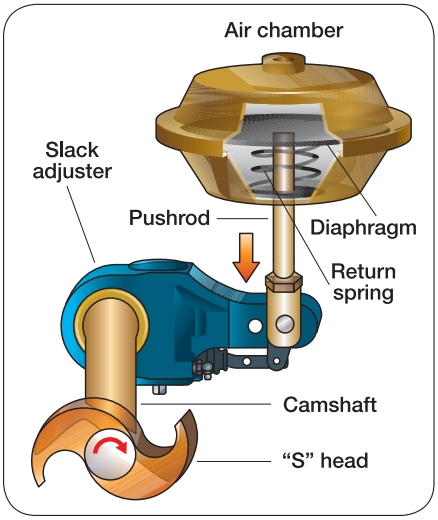


Diagram of a typical clamp-type air brake chamber.

The diagram on the previous page shows the most common device used to apply truck air brakes — the **air brake chamber**. It converts the force of compressed air into a strong mechanical force through the pushrod and slack adjuster.

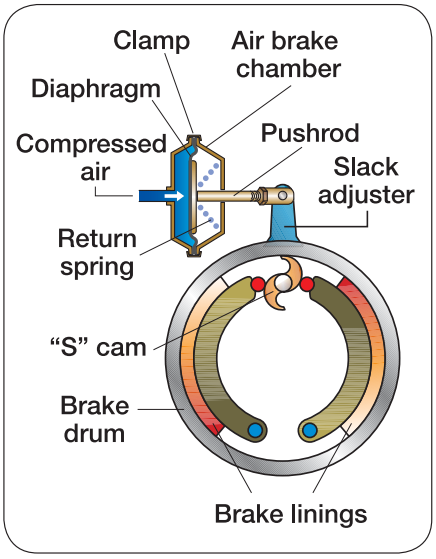
The air brake chamber consists of a flexible diaphragm clamped between two steel housings. The diaphragm construction is similar to a tire sidewall, consisting of a reinforced fabric core with a rubber coating. Other main parts are the pushrod and plate assembly, and a return spring.

Long stroke and regular stroke brake chambers

Many new air brake systems are equipped with long stroke brake chambers. As the name implies, a long stroke chamber design has a longer pushrod stroke than the pushrod of a standard brake chamber.

Long stroke brake chambers can be identified by their square-shaped inlet ports and/or trapezoid-shaped name tag on a clamp bolt.

Air brake chamber — air pressure applied



The force of the compressed air against the diaphragm causes the pushrod to extend out of the brake chamber.

This diagram shows how air under pressure is admitted to one side of the diaphragm, causing it to inflate. As it inflates, the diaphragm pushes against the pushrod, plate assembly and the return spring, causing them to move. Note the position of the slack adjuster — it's now at about a 90-degree angle to the pushrod.

The amount of pushrod force is governed by the air pressure (in pounds per square inch) and the effective surface area of the diaphragm (in square inches). The pushrod force is exerted against the brake mechanism, causing the brakes to apply.

The most common size air chamber used on truck drive axles and trailer axles is a regular Type 30 clamp type chamber with 30 square inches of effective diaphragm area.

Air chambers are very powerful. The common Type 30 regular chamber shown in the diagram above if applied with air pressure of 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa) develops a pushrod force of 3,000 pounds.

Air chambers are made in a number of sizes, ranging from Type 9 (with nine square inches of effective diaphragm area) to Type 36 (with 36 square inches of effective diaphragm area). The range of sizes allows the truck engineer to match air chamber force with axle capacity so that no axle is under- or over-braked.

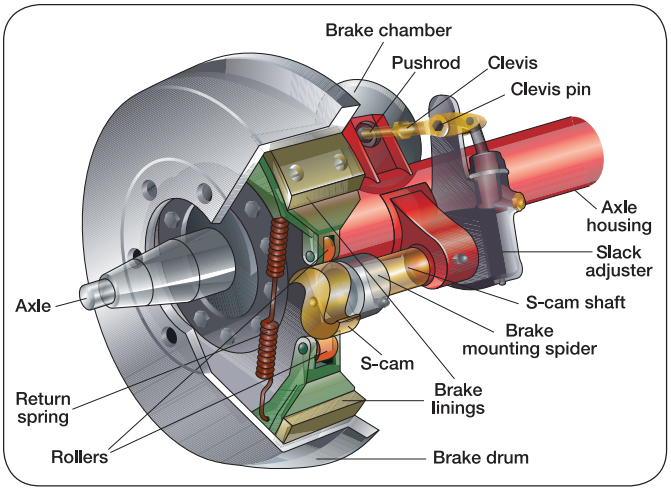
Even though truck air brake system pressures are 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa) and above, much lower air application pressure, usually less than 20 p.s.i. (138 kPa), is used to make normal stops.

definition

Foundation brake refers to the mechanical parts of the brake system inside the wheel.

Foundation brakes: s-cam type

The brake assembly at each wheel is generally called the **foundation brake**. The assembly consists of the brake parts around the wheel that are operated by the air brake system, including the brake chamber. The most popular type of foundation brake is the s-cam drum brake.



When air pressure is applied to the brake chamber diaphragm, it causes the pushrod to move against the slack adjuster arm which rotates the s-cam to apply the brakes.

This diagram shows the main components used in the s-cam drum foundation brake. The air brake chamber pushrod is connected to a lever arm called a **slack adjuster**. The slack adjuster is attached to a camshaft with an s-shaped head called an **s-cam**. Air pressure applied to the chamber causes the pushrod to move forward, causing the slack adjuster to rotate the s-cam. This causes the **brake linings** to press against the **brake drum**, causing friction, which causes the wheel to decelerate, stopping the vehicle.

The slack adjuster is also the way to adjust the brakes to compensate for brake lining and brake drum wear. Brake adjustment is important and is covered in **chapter 9, air brake adjustment**.

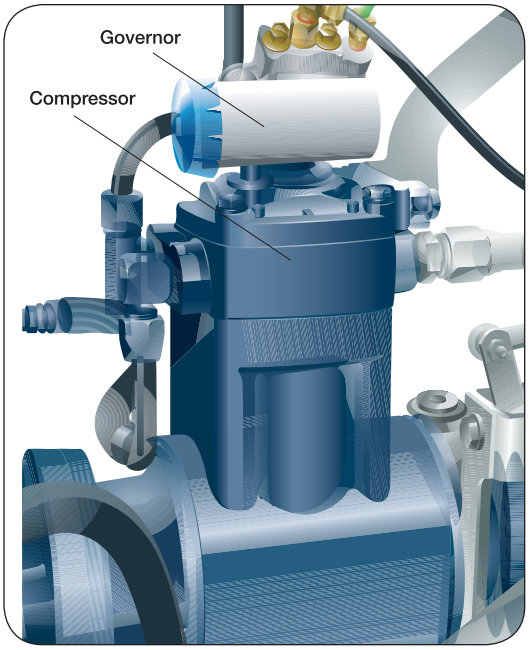
Brake shoe **return springs** keep the brake linings away from the drum when the air pressure is released from the air chamber.

The picture on the left shows the brake linings mounted on the axle housing. The brake drum on the right is mounted on the wheel and rotates with it.

Compressor

The first requirement of an air brake system is a way to compress air and store it in reservoirs (tanks) so that it's available for instant use.

The source of the compressed air is the **compressor**, which takes in air from the atmosphere and compresses (pressurizes) it. The compressed air is then pumped through an air line to a supply reservoir.



A gear-driven compressor and governor.

driving tip

Check belt tension by pressing down on the belt midway between the pulleys. If you can press it in more than double the width of the belt, the tension needs to be adjusted.

The compressor is mounted on the engine of the bus or truck. On most new engines, the compressor is mounted on the side of the engine and driven by gears. A belt, like a fan belt, drives some compressors. As long as the engine is running, the compressor will be running.

All trucks use piston-type air compressors. They may have one, two or four cylinders depending on the vehicle's volume demands.

When air is compressed, its temperature rises. With a truck air compressor operating at a pressure of 120 p.s.i. (827 kPa), the air temperature as it leaves the compressor is over 204° C (400° F).

To prevent the compressor from overheating, two types of cooling systems are used. The most common method on heavy trucks is to circulate engine coolant through the compressor, while some compressors on lighter units may be air-cooled.

Oil lubricates the moving parts of the compressor, just like oil is used to lubricate the moving parts of a car's engine. Oil also helps to cool the compressor. The compressor is usually lubricated from the same oil as the engine of the truck or bus, though some compressors have their own oil supply. It's important to check that there is sufficient oil supply.

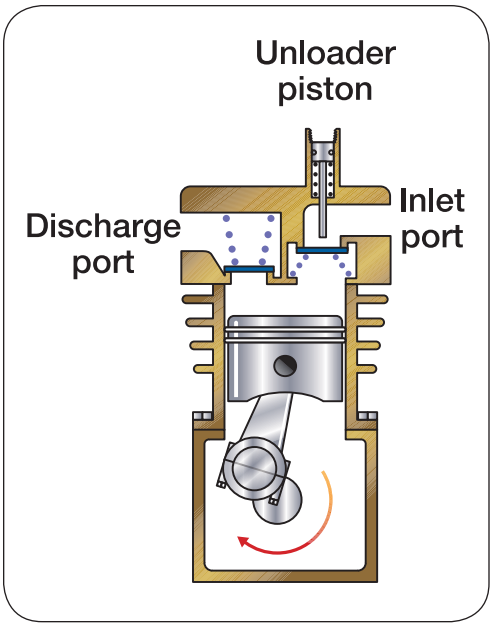


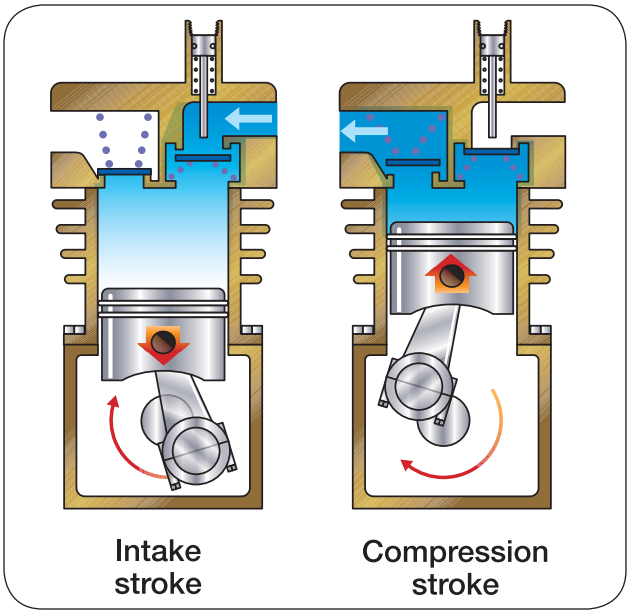
Diagram of an air compressor.

Since the compressor pumps air, it needs a supply of clean air to work properly. Air from the atmosphere supplies both the truck engine and the compressor. An air filter is used to keep this supply clean. The air filter should be checked regularly to make sure it is not clogged.

A piston-type compressor operates on a similar principle to that of the intake and compression strokes of a typical car engine.

Intake stroke

As the piston moves down in the cylinder, it creates a lower pressure (vacuum) within the cylinder than the atmospheric pressure outside the compressor. With the inlet valve open, air is then drawn into the cylinder to fill the vacuum.



Air enters the compressor cylinder on the intake stroke. On the compression stroke, the inlet valve is closed and the discharge valve is open to feed the compressed air toward the air reservoir.

fast fact

Many current air brake systems operate with a maximum pressure of approximately 125 p.s.i. (862 kPa).

fast fact

Vehicle safety standards require that the governor must be set to allow the compressor to resume compressing air if the air pressure drops below 80 p.s.i. (552 kPa).

fast fact

The compressor must be capable of building pressure in the reservoirs from 50 p.s.i. to 90 p.s.i. within three minutes at a fast idle (1,000 – 1,200 r.p.m.).

The governor causes the unloader piston in the compressor to open the inlet valve. In this stage, the compressor is said to be governor unloaded.

Compression stroke

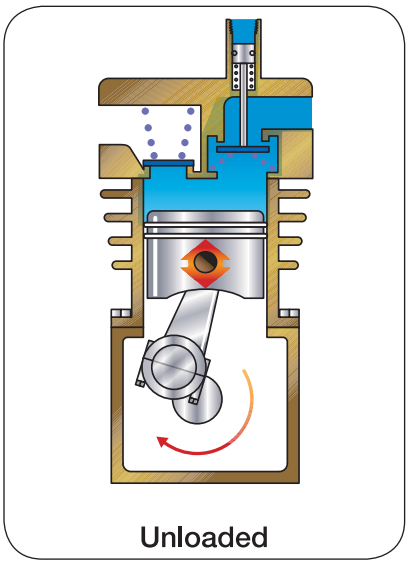
When the piston reaches the bottom of the cylinder, it begins to rise. The inlet valve closes, causing the air in the cylinder to compress. As the piston nears the top of the stroke, the discharge valve opens, and the pressurized air is forced past the valve and into the discharge line leading to the reservoir.

Governor

The compressor is capable of compressing air to over 500 p.s.i. (3,448 kPa). This is far higher than is needed to operate an air brake system. Most current air brake systems operate with a maximum pressure of 125 p.s.i. (862 kPa).

There needs to be a way to stop compressing air once a certain air pressure has been reached. And, if the air pressure in the tanks drops below a certain level (such as after a series of brake applications), there needs to be a way to start compressing air again.

This is the job of the **governor**. When enough pressure has been built up, the governor causes the compressor to go into an “unloading” stage.



Unloaded

Governors are usually set to unload the compressor (stop the compressor from pumping air) when the air pressure reaches about 125 p.s.i. Although the maximum pressure on different vehicles may vary between 105 and 135 p.s.i. (724 and 931 kPa), the range between minimum and maximum pressure should be approximately 20 p.s.i. (138 kPa).

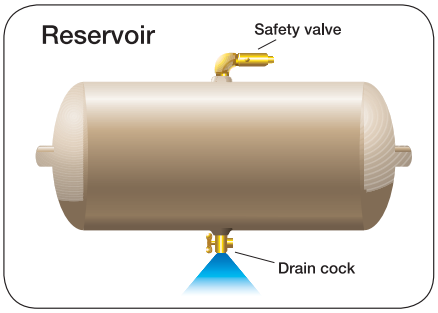
For example, if the maximum air pressure was 125 p.s.i., the governor would restart the compressor if air pressure in the reservoirs dropped to 105 p.s.i. (applying the brakes several times would likely cause the air pressure to drop to this level). At any rate, the governor must restart the compressor if the air pressure drops below 80 to 85 p.s.i. (552 to 586 kPa).

fast fact

The safety valve is sometimes called a pop-off valve.

Reservoirs

Steel tanks (known as **reservoirs**) are used to store the compressed air from the compressor.



Air reservoir, showing safety valve on top and drain cock on the bottom.

driving tip

When you're draining reservoirs, allow plenty of time for the air to completely drain.

warning!

Compressed air can be dangerous if it escapes, particularly to eyes and to ears.

Stay out of the direct path of compressed air when draining the reservoirs.

A **safety valve** on the first reservoir protects the reservoirs from being over-pressurized and bursting if the governor fails to unload the compressor. The safety valve consists of a spring-loaded ball to allow reservoir air to exhaust into the atmosphere. The valve's pressure setting is determined by the force of the spring. Safety valves are normally set to vent the excess pressure at approximately 150 p.s.i. (1,034 kPa).

If the safety valve has to relieve the pressure, the governor or compressor needs service or repair. Only a qualified mechanic should do this.

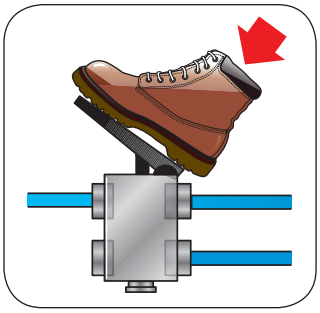
The air that's delivered from the compressor usually contains some water vapour that condenses into liquid water. This is why the supply reservoir is often called the **wet tank**. Most compressors also pass a small amount of oil and carbon particles. The oil and any other contaminants mix with the water, making a grey sludge.

If allowed to accumulate, this sludge would enter other components of the braking system. Too much water in the system causes trouble with valves and other parts. In winter, water in the system may freeze, causing malfunction of valves or brake chambers.

To prevent this sludge from contaminating the air valves in the system, **drain valves** (also known as **drain cocks**) are installed in all reservoirs. Draining the reservoirs can prevent this sludge build up. Most manufacturers recommend that you drain reservoirs daily.

Foot valve

Pressing on the brake pedal (called the foot valve treadle) applies the air brakes, just like stepping on the brake pedal applies the brakes in a car.



A foot brake valve.

fast fact

The maximum brake application will not exceed the pressure in the reservoirs.

For example, if reservoir pressure is 80 p.s.i. (552 kPa), the maximum brake application you could make wouldn't exceed 80 p.s.i.

The treadle (pedal) of a foot valve has a springy feel that is quite different from the feel of a hydraulic brake pedal of a car. For one thing, you really don't have to press harder on a foot valve to apply more braking force — you simply have to press it down a bit farther. If the foot valve is held in one position, the air pressure delivered to the brake system will remain constant.

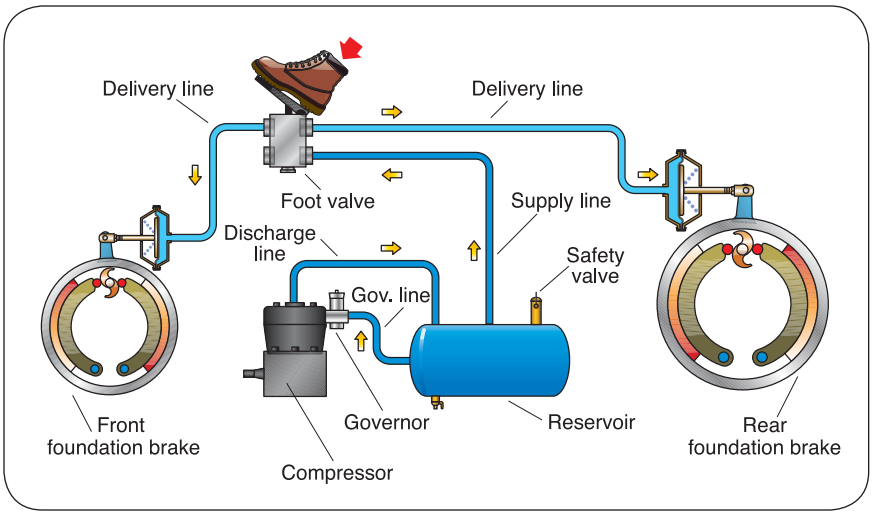
Releasing the foot valve allows the application air to be exhausted through the assembly's exhaust ports to the atmosphere.

In effect, it is a foot-controlled pressure regulator. It's the device that allows you to select any application pressure needed to make a gentle, or a very rapid stop.

A unique feature of a foot control valve is the ability to maintain the application pressure that you've chosen, even if there are small leaks downstream from the foot valve. You need only to maintain the treadle position and the foot valve will momentarily open, replenish any air that has been lost, and then close — all automatically.

How air brakes work

Brakes applied



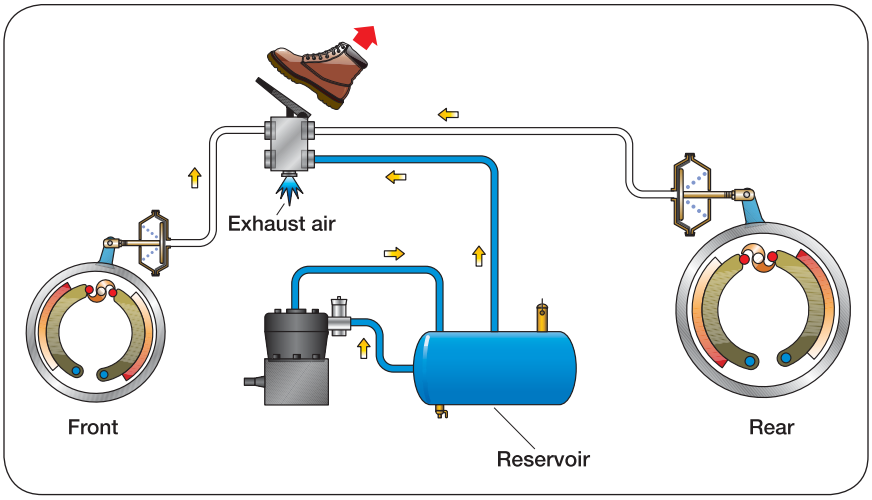
The driver has depressed the foot valve to apply the brakes.

In this simplified diagram, air at full system pressure is indicated by the dark shading in the line connecting the supply reservoir to the foot valve.

The driver is making a brake application. This can be seen by the light shading in the air lines connecting the foot valve to the air chambers. Arrows show the direction of air flow.

The air chambers are pressurized and the brake linings have contacted the brake drums, slowing the vehicle.

Brakes released



When the driver releases the foot valve, air pressure in the brake chambers exhausts into the atmosphere.

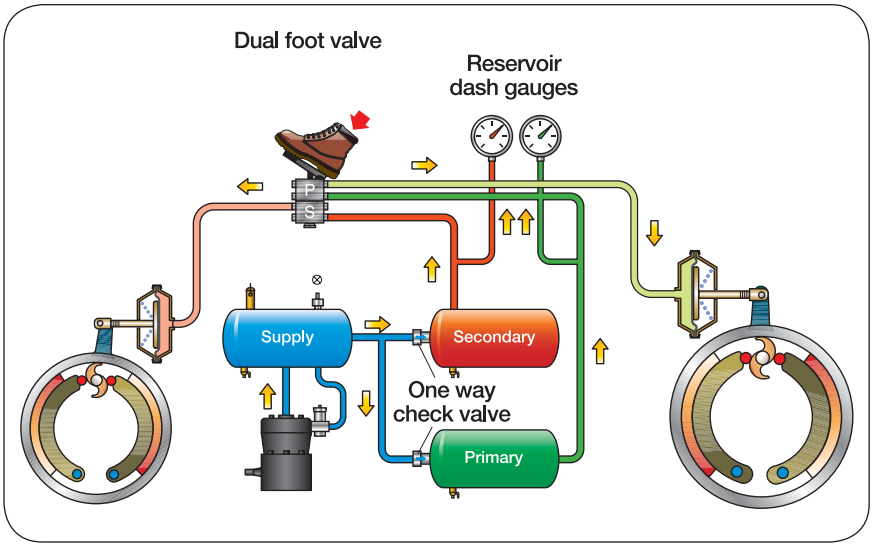
In this simplified diagram, the driver's foot is off the brake pedal, allowing the brakes to release. This action has caused an exhaust port in the bottom of the foot valve to open, allowing the air that was applied to the brake chambers to escape. Note the burst of exhaust air below the foot valve.

The return springs in the air chambers have returned the pushrod assembly to the released position, and the slack adjusters and s-cams have rotated to their released position.

Brake shoe return springs (not shown) have retracted the brake linings away from the brake drums.

Dual air brake systems

Dual air brake systems have been in use since the mid-1970s.



A dual air brake system with the brakes applied.

The device that made dual systems possible is the **dual foot valve**. It's actually two control valves operated by a single pedal. This allows the brake system to be divided into two completely independent sections. Each section has its own supply, delivery and exhaust ports.

fast fact

Cars have had dual braking systems since 1968 to reduce the chance of a total brake failure.

The two sections of the dual foot valve are the **primary** and **secondary**. The primary section is located closest to the pedal, and in many systems operates the drive axle brakes. The secondary usually operates the steering axle brakes.

When the driver applies the brakes, both sections of the dual foot valve are activated. Air from the primary tank is applied to the rear axle brakes and air from the secondary tank is applied to the front axle brakes.

Most dual systems use three reservoirs: a supply reservoir and two service reservoirs, one for each section of the dual system. Each service reservoir is filled through a one-way check valve, and there are two reservoir pressure gauges, one for each service reservoir.

Even if one or the other system totally fails, the driver is able to make a controlled stop using only the foot valve, although maximum braking power will be reduced.

There are other ways of splitting a dual air brake system. However it's divided, if one of the systems fail, the driver is still able to make a controlled stop.

Note the change in terminology for the reservoirs. The first reservoir (wet tank) is called the **supply reservoir**. The two service reservoirs are called the **primary reservoir** and **secondary reservoir**, indicating the section of the dual foot valve that they supply.

Some dual systems have the low-air warning device connected to the supply reservoir as shown, while others have two separate connections, one located on each service reservoir.

Components of a dual air brake system

Supply, primary and secondary reservoirs

The compressed air from the compressor contains several contaminants including water vapour, oil mist and carbon particles. Most contaminants settle in the supply reservoir. Primary and secondary reservoirs have been added so that all the air brake components, with the exception of the governor valve, are supplied with cleaner air.

fast fact

Some reservoirs have more than one compartment (and more than one drain cock).

One-way check valve

One-way check valves allow air to flow from the supply reservoir to the primary and secondary reservoirs. As the name implies, a one-way check valve allows air to flow in one direction only.

This is so the air supply in the primary and secondary reservoirs wouldn't flow backward and be lost if there's a failure in the air compressor, compressor discharge line, or supply reservoir.

Reservoir pressure gauges

All air brake-equipped vehicles have at least one **air pressure gauge** on the instrument panel to indicate the air pressure in the service reservoir system.

The air pressure gauge on the left has a single needle. The air pressure gauge on the right has two needles — one indicating pressure in the primary reservoir, the other showing pressure in the secondary reservoir. The gauge on the left shows pressure in p.s.i. The gauge on the right shows both p.s.i. and kPa.

driving tip

Check gauges frequently to make sure there's enough air pressure to apply the brakes.

Rather than having two separate reservoir gauges, many vehicles have a single gauge with two needles, indicating the pressure in the primary and secondary reservoirs.

Many vehicles also have a gauge to indicate how much air pressure is being applied when the foot valve is depressed.

The reservoir pressure gauge is mounted in the dashboard so you can monitor the status of the air brake system while driving and during a pre-trip inspection.

Low-air warning device

All vehicles equipped with air brakes must have a warning device to indicate if the air pressure in the system drops to a dangerous level. This could occur if there's an air leak, or if you apply the brakes repeatedly and have used up the air supply more rapidly than the compressor can replenish it.

Many vehicles have two low-air warning devices — a warning indicator light on the dashboard and a buzzer.

The **low-air warning device** must come on when air pressure drops below 60 p.s.i. (414 kPa).

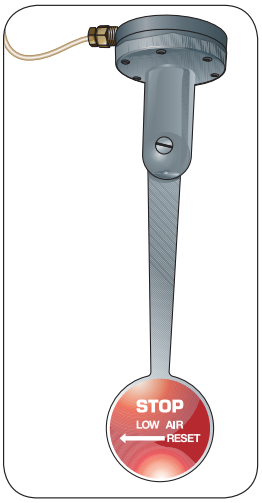
fast fact

The low-air warning device must activate when air pressure is less than 60 p.s.i. (414 kPa).

driving tip

If the low-air warning comes on, pull over and stop. Do not go further until you find out why the low-air warning came on and determine that the air brake system is safe.

A typical low-air warning device is a warning light on the dashboard. There may also be a buzzer.



A wig-wag.

Some older vehicles are equipped with a low-air warning device near the top of the windshield that drops into the driver's view when air pressure drops below approximately 60 p.s.i. This type of warning device is known as a **wig-wag.**

Some wig-wags automatically retract when air pressure rises above the warning level of 60 p.s.i.; others need to be manually pushed up to the "out of view" position after the air pressure has risen above the warning level.

When a low-air warning device activates, stop the vehicle and find the cause of the air loss. The air pressure remaining in the system (approximately 60 p.s.i.) will be enough to stop the vehicle if you act promptly.

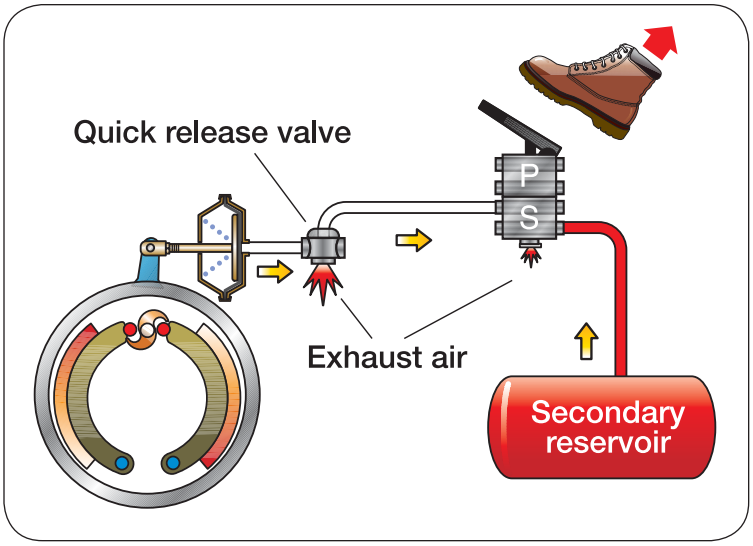
Quick release valve

In the previous diagram, when the driver released the brakes, all the air contained in the air lines and in the air chambers was vented through the foot valve exhaust port. Because of the distance that the exhaust air has to travel, there can be a considerable lag time for the brakes to release.

This is where the **quick release valve** comes in.

A quick release valve allows the brakes to release quickly and fully, by allowing the pressurized air to exhaust near the brake chambers. In this diagram a quick release valve is placed close to the front brake chambers between the foot valve and the air chambers.

When the brakes are applied, air from the foot valve flows through the quick release valve to the chambers in the normal way.



A **quick release** valve has been installed between the front brake chambers and the **foot valve.**

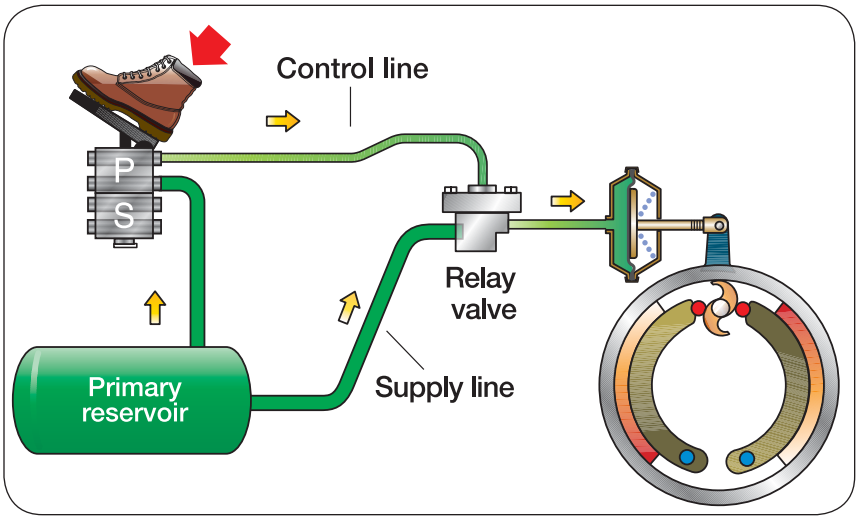
When the driver releases the foot valve, only the air in the line between the foot valve and the quick release valve is vented at the foot valve exhaust port. The larger volume of air contained in the air chambers is vented at the exhaust port of the quick release valve.

Note the difference in the air bursts at the foot valve and at the quick release valve — there's a much bigger burst of exhausting air at the quick release valve.

Quick release valves may be found in a number of places in an air brake system, including front brakes, rear brakes, spring parking brakes and any other place that the rapid exhausting of air is required.

Relay valve

A **relay valve** has been installed between the reservoir and the rear brake chambers.



Relay valves are used to reduce the lag time when the brakes are applied, and when they're released. They're remote-controlled air valves that respond to a control signal from the foot valve. They're usually mounted on a frame rail close to the air chambers that they're to operate.

Relay valves are supplied with air directly from the primary or secondary reservoirs through a large diameter air line (shown as the **supply line** in the diagram) so that there's a high volume of air available for rapid delivery to the air chambers.

The pressure of the reservoir air delivered in this way will be the same as the control pressure delivered by the foot valve. If you make a 20 p.s.i. (138 kPa) brake application, approximately 20 p.s.i. of air pressure would be directed to the rear brake chambers through the relay valve.

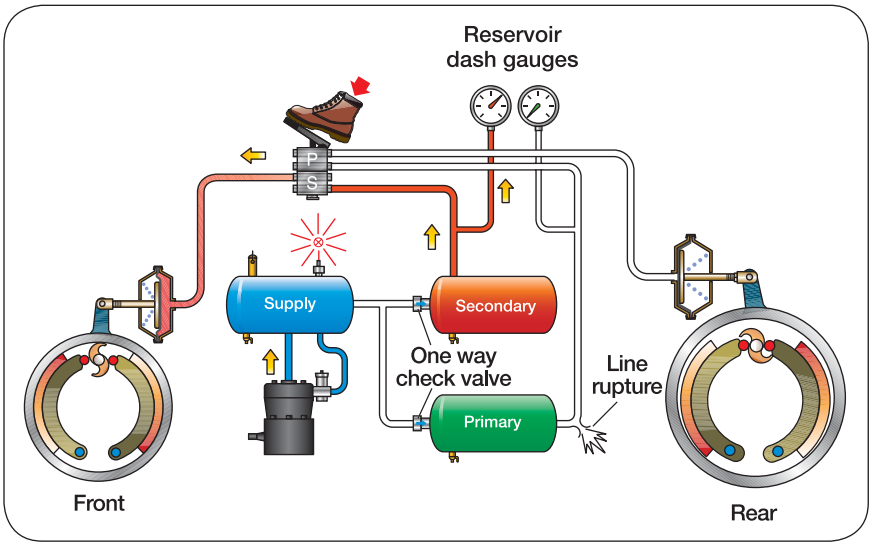
When the driver releases the foot valve, only the air in the control line is vented at the foot valve exhaust port. The volume of air contained in the air chambers is vented through an exhaust port built into the relay valve.

Relay valves are designed to handle the volume requirements of two or four air chambers. They're primarily found on rear axle brakes, but relay valves are sometimes found on steering axle brakes or wherever there's a need to apply and release air rapidly.

For simplicity, quick release valves and relay valves are not shown in the following diagrams because they don't change the basic concept of an air brake system, but serve only to speed up the release of the brakes, if needed.

Dual system with primary system failure

This diagram shows the worst-case failure where a line rupture has caused a total loss of pressure in the primary reservoir.



Despite a loss of primary reservoir pressure, the front (secondary) brakes will still operate.

Air pressure in the secondary reservoir has been protected by the one-way check valve. The low-air warning system must activate when pressure in any reservoir falls below 60 p.s.i. (414 kPa) to alert the driver to the problem. In many systems, the warning will come on at pressure above 60 p.s.i.

When you apply the brakes, you'll be able to make a controlled stop, but only the steering axle brakes will apply. Stopping distances will be longer because the braking force will be reduced.

If the failure had been in the secondary system, braking on the rear axle would've been maintained, but the steering axle brakes would not operate.

The compressor will continue to pump air, but all of its output will take the path of least resistance and be vented at the line rupture.

If the low-air warning system activates at any time, **stop immediately** and don't proceed until a repair has been made.

Parking brakes

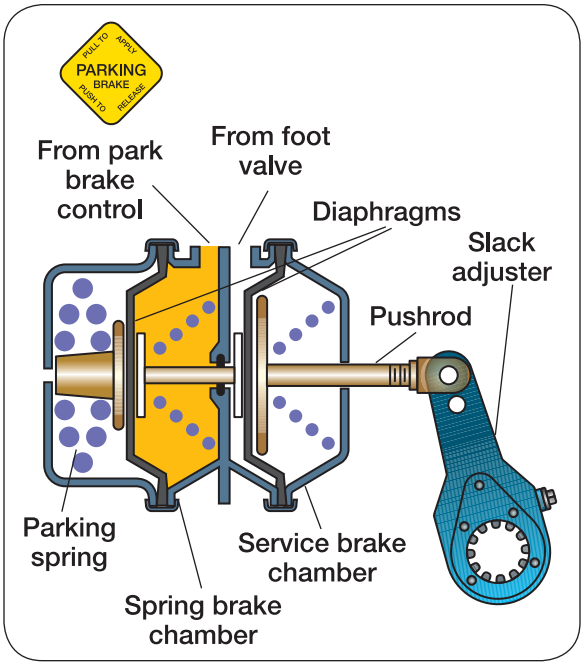
While air pressure does an excellent job in helping stop a vehicle by applying the foundation brakes, it's totally unreliable (and illegal) for parking. If you park a vehicle using only the air brakes, any leaks in the system, or any failure in a hose, diaphragm, or air valve would result in loss of air pressure and a possible rollaway collision.

Regulations for parking brakes require that the parking force must be maintained by mechanical means and be unaffected by loss of air pressure.

The most common type of parking brake in an air brake system is the **spring parking brake**. The second type is known as a **safety actuator** and is usually found only on some highway coaches and intercity buses.

Spring parking brakes

Most spring parking brakes consist of an additional chamber attached to the rear of a service brake chamber. The added chamber contains a powerful coil spring arranged so that the spring force can be applied to the brakes through the normal service chamber pushrod.



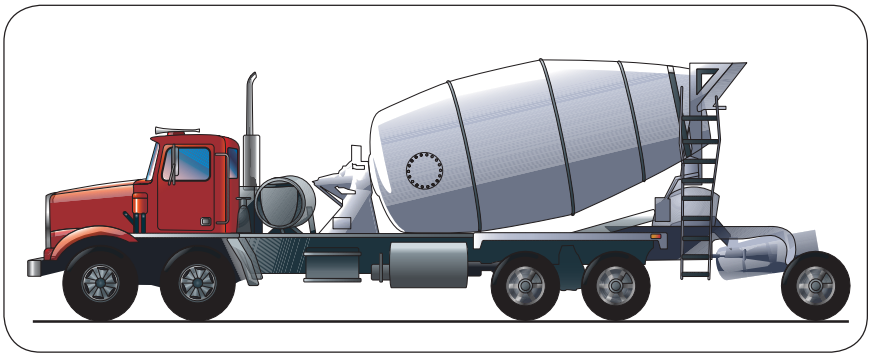
A spring parking brake chamber attached to a service brake chamber. The brakes are off.

This diagram shows the main components of a typical combination spring and service brake chamber.

Spring parking brakes are mounted on the rear axles only — not on steering axles. The service brake chamber contains the normal pushrod, diaphragm and return spring. The spring parking brake section is mounted behind the service brake chamber.

fast fact

The spring parking brakes will apply if air pressure falls beneath a certain level, but their effectiveness in stopping the vehicle or holding a parked vehicle depends on how well the brakes have been kept in adjustment.



This concrete mixer has spring brakes on its tandem rear axles only — not on the twin steering axles, nor on the booster axle at the rear.

The spring parking brake chamber contains a second diaphragm, a large coil spring, and an intermediate pushrod that transmits the force of the coil spring to the service brake pushrod when the spring parking brake is applied. The coil spring in most spring parking brake chambers can exert a force of between 1,500 and 2,000 pounds.

When you make a regular foot brake application, air pressure is applied against the diaphragm in a service brake chamber, causing the diaphragm to inflate, pushing the pushrod out against the slack adjuster to apply the foundation brakes.

Spring parking brakes work in the opposite way. These brakes are applied and remain applied by mechanical spring pressure, not by air pressure. If air pressure falls beneath the amount needed to keep the spring compressed, the spring pushes against the pushrod in the service brake chamber, pushing the pushrod out against the slack adjuster to apply the foundation brakes (because the parking brake chambers are piggy-backed onto the service brake chambers and operate the foundation brakes through the same linkage).

Spring parking brake assemblies should only be serviced by qualified personnel. The spring in a spring parking brake chamber is under extreme pressure and could cause serious injury.

warning!

The spring in a spring parking brake is very powerful. If the spring were ever to break out of the chamber, it could cause serious damage to any objects or persons in its way.

Keep away from a spring parking brake chamber that shows any sign of damage, such as dents or cracks anywhere in the housing.

driving tip

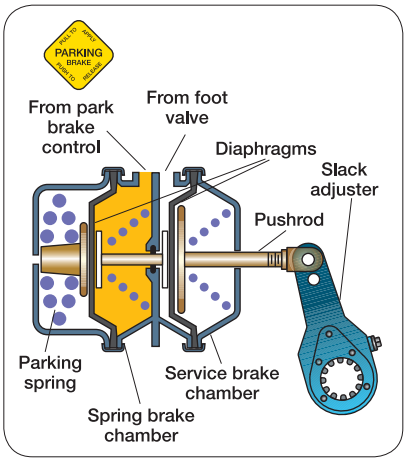
In some systems, spring parking brakes will gradually apply as air pressure goes down, rather than apply all at once. In some of these systems, they may begin to apply at 90 p.s.i. or higher.

Applying and releasing spring parking brakes

There are several ways to apply and release spring brakes.

- Normally they're applied and released by using the parking brake control valve on the dashboard.
- If the air pressure in the system falls below approximately 60 p.s.i., the spring brakes may begin to drag, and at 20 to 45 p.s.i. (138 to 310 kPa) may automatically fully apply.

Spring parking brake — released



Air pressure in the spring parking brake chamber keeps the spring parking brake off. There's no air pressure in the service brake chamber.

This diagram shows a spring parking brake chamber in the released position. The service brake is also in the released position.

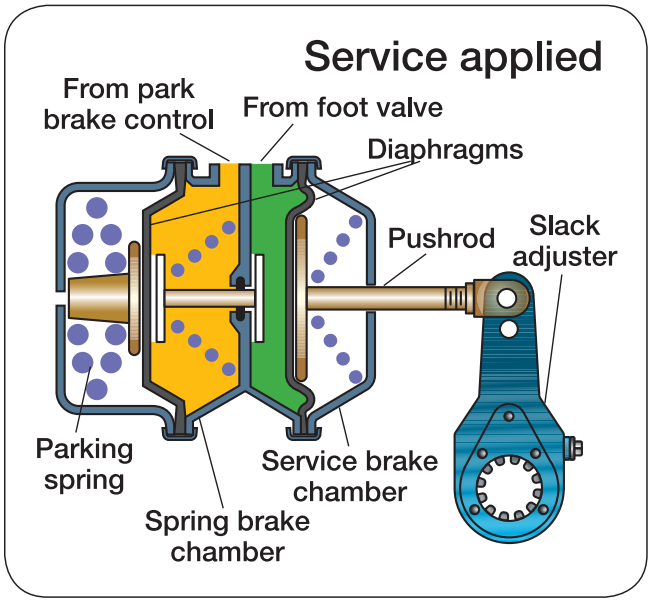
Air at reservoir pressure has been supplied to the spring parking brake section. The parking brake diaphragm has inflated, compressing the main spring. The spring parking brakes are now released.

A **parking brake control valve** (usually a yellow button) is mounted on the dashboard. In most cases, pushing this valve in allows air pressure to flow to the spring parking brake chambers, causing these spring parking brakes to release. Pulling this valve out exhausts the air pressure against the spring parking brake chamber, causing these brakes to apply. Instructions are usually imprinted on the button.

While the push-pull parking brake control is the most common, some systems use a switch, usually set so that flipping it in one direction applies the spring parking brakes and flipping it in the other direction releases them.

A parking brake control valve.

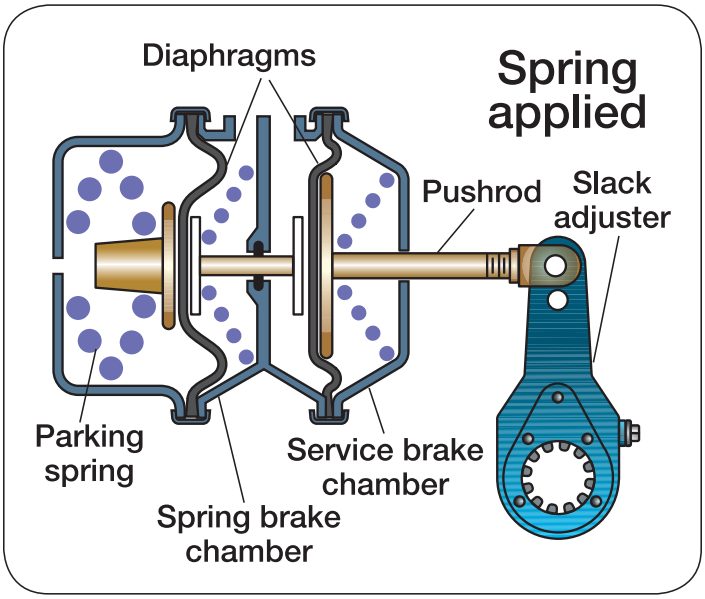
Spring parking brake — service brake applied



The driver has applied the service brake. Air pressure in the spring parking brake chamber keeps the spring parking brakes off.

The driver has applied the foot valve, delivering air to the service brake port, inflating the service brake diaphragm.

Spring parking brake — spring brake applied



The driver has applied the spring parking brake. There is no air pressure in either the spring parking brake chamber or the service brake chamber.

The driver has placed the parking brake control valve in the "park" position. This has caused the air from the spring parking brake section to be exhausted.

The force of the coil spring has been transmitted to the intermediate pushrod, which in turn has pushed against the service brake diaphragm, pushrod, and slack adjuster, applying the brakes.

Driver alert — compounding of brakes

Always be sure that the spring parking brakes are released before making heavy service brake applications, like during a pre-trip inspection.

When spring parking brakes are applied, there's up to 2,000 lbs of force applied to all of the brake components. If a heavy service brake application is made, the force of the air application is added to the spring force. This could add a further 3,000 lbs for a total of 5,000 lbs. This adding together of the two forces, known as **compounding**, can damage slack adjusters, s-cams, brake chamber mounting bolts, brake shoe rollers, shoes and brake drums.

Note that lighter brake applications of less than 30 to 40 p.s.i. (207 to 276 kPa), to prevent a vehicle from rolling while the spring parking brakes are being released or applied, aren't harmful.

driving tip

Avoid compounding the brakes.

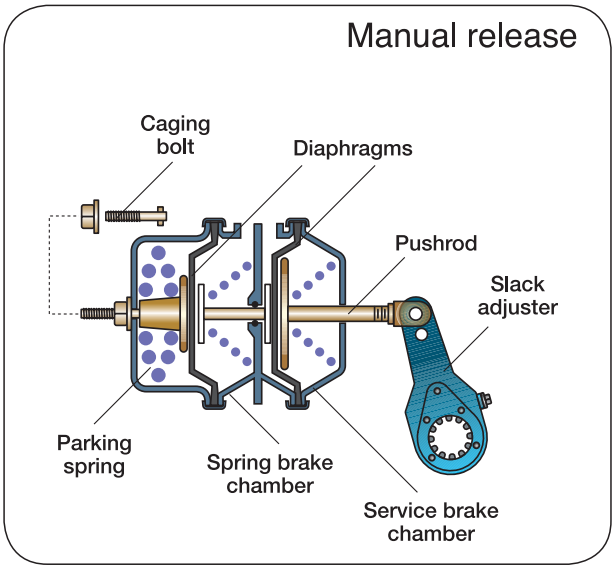
Always release the spring parking brakes before making a heavy service brake application.

Spring parking brake — manual release

Most spring parking brake chambers have a means of manually releasing (or "caging") an applied spring parking brake. This feature should only be used by mechanics when making a repair.

If all air's lost and the vehicle has to be towed, spring parking brakes can be released by caging them. Always block the wheels when caging spring parking brakes. Once a spring brake chamber is caged, there'll be no parking brake force at that wheel.

Some chambers have a built-in release bolt while others have a release bolt, nut and washer carried in a bracket mounted on the chamber housing.



The spring has been caged using a caging bolt.

driving tip

Caging spring parking brakes should be done only in an emergency.

Once a spring brake chamber is caged, there'll be no parking brake force at that wheel.

This diagram shows how one type of release bolt is inserted into the rear of the spring parking brake housing. The release bolt is then given a quarter turn to lock it in place. Then the release nut is turned until the spring is compressed.

Instructions for manual release are usually imprinted on the housing of most spring parking brake chambers.

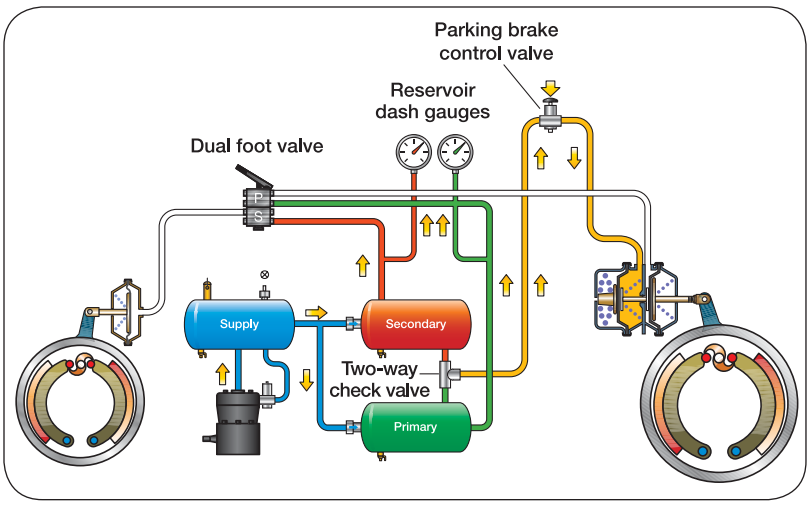
Before trying to manually release spring parking brakes, block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling. To move a vehicle after manually releasing the spring parking brakes call a tow truck.

Spring parking brakes in dual air brake systems

This installation takes advantage of the primary and secondary reservoirs to supply the parking brake dash control with air from the tank that has the highest pressure.

fast fact

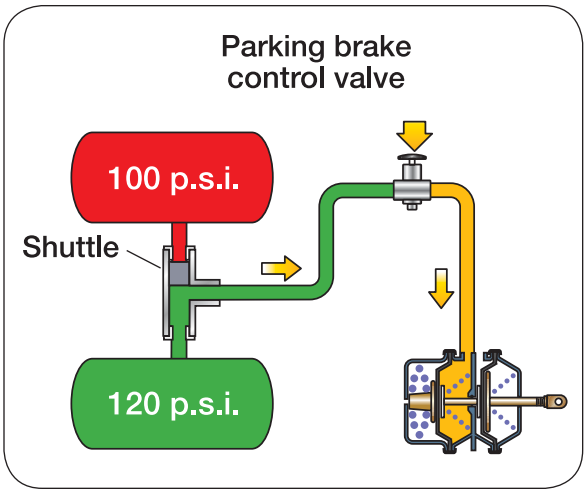
The effectiveness of spring parking brakes depends on how well the brakes have been kept in adjustment.



Spring parking brakes installed in a dual air brake system. The brakes are off.

This is accomplished by the use of a **two-way check valve**. The air that is delivered from the two-way check valve is frequently called **blended air**.

Blended air

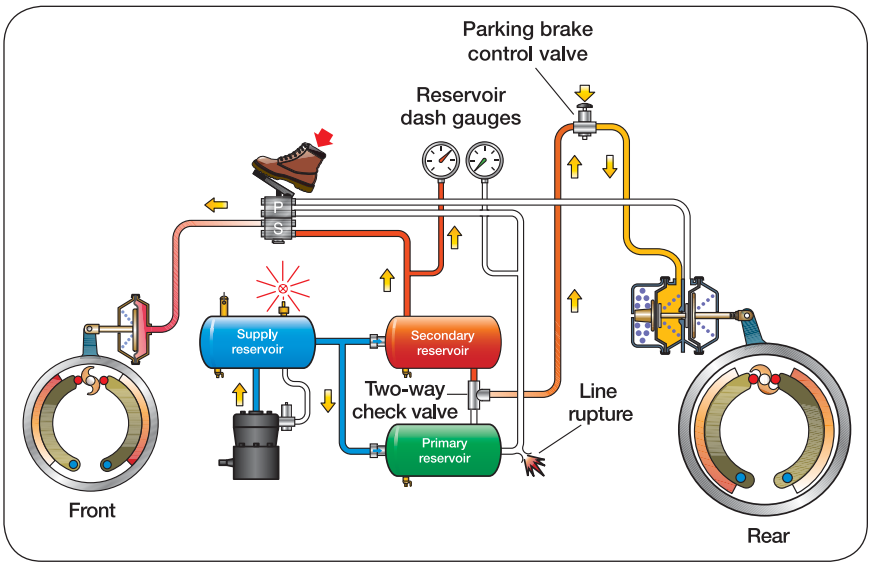


The two-way check valve draws air from the tank with the highest pressure.

The two-way check valve has two inlet ports and one delivery port. A free-floating shuttle within the valve will move away from the inlet that has the higher pressure, and the higher pressure will be supplied to the parking brake control.

This arrangement will also ensure that the spring parking brakes will not automatically apply if there's a total loss of air pressure in either reservoir.

Dual air brake system — partial system failure



With the ruptured air line from the primary reservoir, the driver can still make a controlled stop.

This diagram shows the benefit of the blended air supply for the parking brake system. There has been a loss of air from the primary reservoir. The two-way check valve shuttle has moved so that secondary reservoir pressure supplies the parking brake control valve.

driving tip

One method to check that the two-way check valve is working is to drain the primary reservoir and check that air pressure in the secondary reservoir doesn't bleed back into the primary reservoir.

The result is that the spring parking brakes don't apply automatically. The low-air warning system has alerted the driver to the air loss, allowing the driver to make a controlled stop using the front axle brakes.

Some vehicles with dual air systems are equipped with an optional device called a **spring brake modulator**. This device senses a loss of pressure in the primary system, and when the driver applies the service brakes, causes air to be exhausted from the spring parking brakes in direct proportion to the brake application. By simply applying the foot valve normally, the driver controls the amount of spring force used to assist the front brakes to bring the vehicle to a controlled stop.

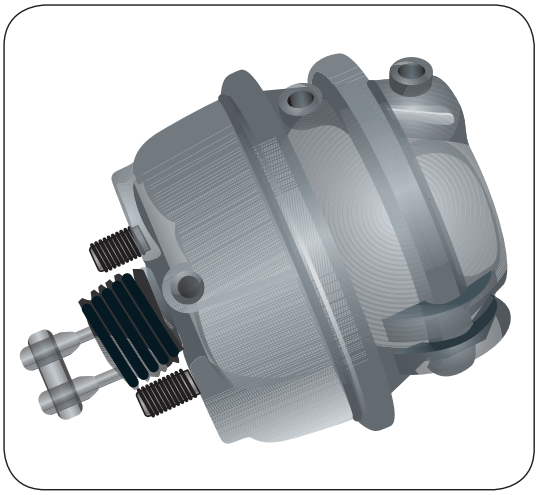
All vehicles must meet Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards for emergency stopping, so regardless of how the dual system is arranged, or if a spring parking brake modulator is installed, the vehicle will have adequate braking force even with a partially failed air system.

With all systems, after stopping, the driver can securely park the vehicle by manually applying the parking brake control valve.

Safety actuator parking brakes

Safety actuator parking brakes are used on many buses and highway coaches. They look similar to spring parking brakes but their operation is very different.

Rather than using a powerful coil spring, this brake uses a one-way locking mechanism that can be engaged to allow the pushrod to stroke outward, but prevent it from returning. The actuators have two diaphragms: one to apply the service brake, and the other to apply the parking brake.



Safety actuator parking brake chambers are found on some buses.

A separate air reservoir is used for parking and the parking brake dash control is identical in appearance and operation to the one used for spring parking brakes.

Pulling the dash control outward simultaneously applies air pressure to the parking diaphragm and engages the locking mechanism. The pushrod moves out, applying the brakes. The pushrod is then held in the applied position by the locking mechanism. The vehicle's parked securely, even if air's lost from all reservoirs.

Normally, pushing the dash control inward causes air to exhaust from the parking diaphragm and at the same time releases the locking mechanism, allowing the pushrod to retract. But if more than 4 p.s.i. (27.6 kPa) pressure has been lost from the parking reservoir, the parking brakes will not release. A heavy service brake application must also be made, causing the pushrod to move slightly ahead, allowing the locking mechanism to disengage.

Because spring force is not used for parking, safety actuator parking brakes can't be compounded.

Note that safety actuator parking brakes will not apply automatically, even if service reservoir pressure is drained or pumped down to zero. Only loss of pressure in the parking reservoir will cause automatic application.

Tractor-trailer air brake systems

To understand the basics of tractor-trailer air brake systems, it's best to start with the trailer. Once you understand the trailer system, it becomes simpler to understand the components that are needed to tow a trailer.

A trailer system has many of the components found on a truck system: foundation brakes, air chambers, air reservoirs and control valves. The only major item not found on a trailer air system is an air compressor.

The trailer system must rely on the tractor for two important needs. First, the trailer must receive the compressed air from the tractor to fill the trailer reservoirs. Second, the trailer system must receive the commands from the tractor about when to apply and release the brakes.

To fulfill these needs, there are two air line connections between the tractor and the trailer air systems.

The air line that supplies the trailer reservoirs with air at full tractor reservoir pressure is called the **supply line**. It's sometimes called the **emergency line**.

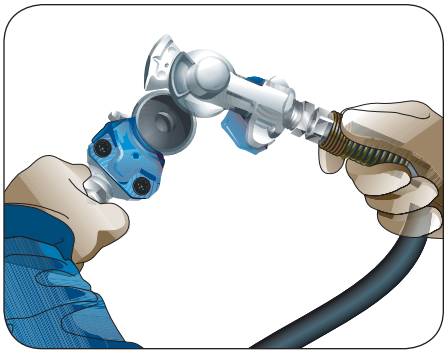
The line that carries the control signal from the tractor is called the **control line**. It's also commonly called the **service line**.

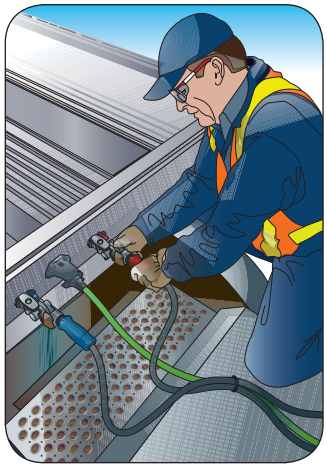
Because tractors and trailers need to be disconnected and reconnected from time to time, the air lines are equipped with quick coupling devices called **glad hands**. Each coupler resembles a human hand about to make a handshake. Glad hands are often colour-coded — a blue line or blue colouring indicates the control line, and red's used to indicate the supply line.

fast fact

The supply line may also be called the emergency line.

The control line may also be called the service line.





Glad hands allow easy and quick connection between the tractor and trailer.

driving tip

When not in use, glad hands should be fastened to dead-end (dummy) couplers or to each other to prevent dirt and debris from entering the air lines.

Glad hands should also be secured to prevent the lines from chafing against other components or bouncing off the vehicle.

There are two basic types of trailer air systems — those that use spring parking brakes and those that don't. Although most current trailers use spring parking brakes, some older trailers and converter dollies in use aren't equipped with spring parking brakes.

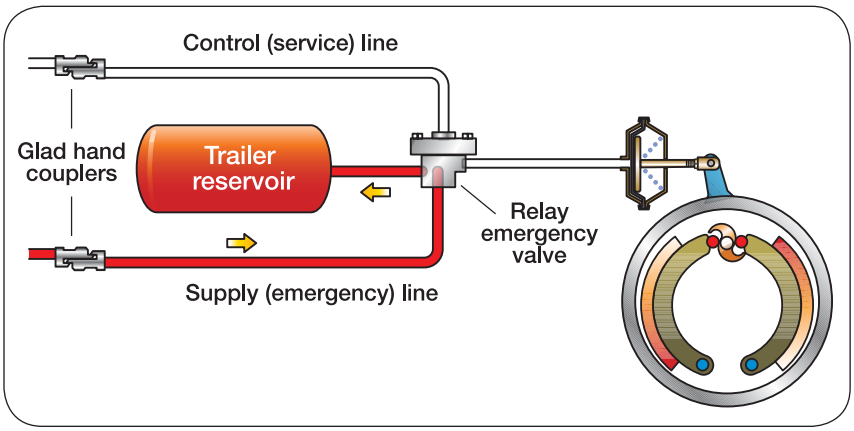
All trailer systems must have an emergency stopping system that will fully apply the trailer brakes if the trailer separates from the tractor.

Trailers that aren't equipped with spring parking brakes use a device called a **relay emergency valve**. If this valve senses that the trailer has broken away from the tractor, it applies the trailer service brakes with full trailer reservoir pressure. This action is called **dynamiting** the trailer brakes.

Trailers equipped with spring parking brakes use the spring force to apply the brakes (dynamite the trailer brakes) if the trailer breaks away from the tractor.

Trailer with relay emergency valve — charging

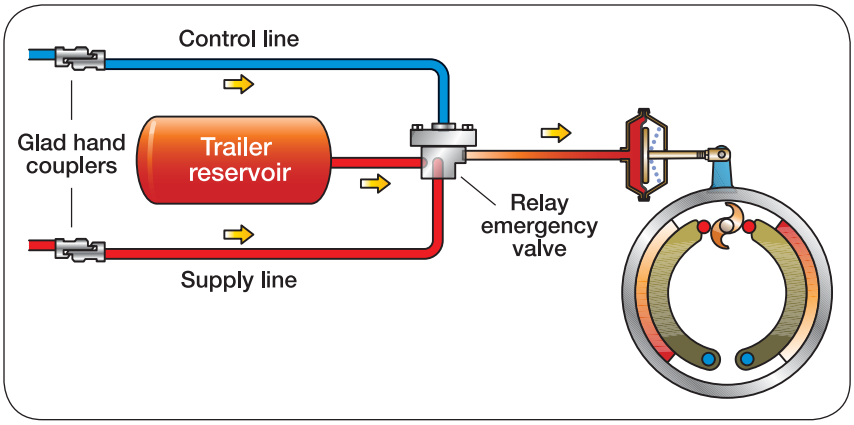
This diagram shows a trailer equipped with a **relay emergency valve**. Air is passing from the tractor through the supply line to the relay emergency valve, filling the trailer reservoir.



Compressed air from the tractor flows through the supply line to fill the trailer reservoir.

Trailer with relay emergency valve — applying

This diagram shows a normal service brake application. A control signal from the tractor has been sent through the control line to the relay emergency valve, which reacts to this signal in exactly the same way as the tractor relay valve previously described.



When the driver makes a brake application, air flows through the control line.

The relay emergency valve has drawn air from the trailer reservoir and delivered it to the trailer service chambers at approximately the same pressure as the control signal.

On highway trailers, one reservoir and one relay emergency valve are used for single or tandem axles. Some tandem logging trailers are equipped with a reservoir and a relay emergency valve for each axle.

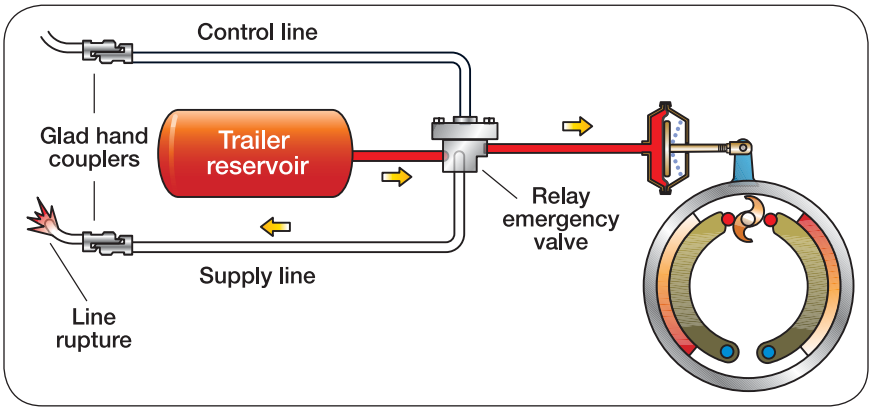
Trailer with relay emergency valve — dynamited

This diagram shows a broken supply line. The relay emergency valve has sensed the loss of pressure in the supply line, and has delivered full trailer reservoir pressure to the service brake chambers, dynamiting the brakes. The trailer brakes will remain applied as long as pressure is retained in the trailer reservoir.

warning!

Small leaks in trailer systems without spring parking brakes can reduce or deplete the applied pressure, possibly allowing a parked trailer to roll away.

Always block the wheels of a parked trailer so it can't roll.



The broken supply line has caused the trailer brakes to dynamite.

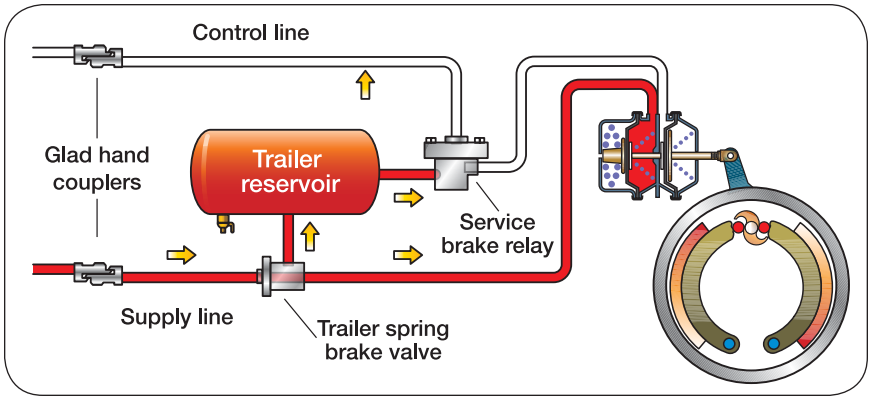
The trailer brakes will also be dynamited each time the glad hands are disconnected, or when the driver closes the trailer supply valve that is located on the tractor dashboard.

Motor vehicle safety standards require these systems to remain applied for a minimum of 15 minutes.

It's important to follow proper procedures when coupling a tractor to a parked trailer to prevent the trailer from moving and possibly causing damage. Coupling procedures are detailed in **chapter 5, skills for driving trucks and trailers.**

Trailer with spring parking brakes — charging

This diagram shows a typical trailer system that uses spring parking brakes for parking and for emergency (breakaway) stopping.



This trailer is equipped with spring parking brakes.

driving tip

This is how you can tell if you have reversed the supply line and service line connections:

- the spring parking brakes won't release even when you use the parking brake control on the dashboard
- the trailer service brakes won't function.

Avoid these situations by taking care in coupling to a trailer.

driving tip

Always perform a tug test after coupling the tractor to a trailer.

Before conducting a tug test, use a flashlight to visually check that the fifth wheel locking jaws are closed and locked.

The trailer brakes have been applied by pressing on either the foot valve or applying the hand valve, or both.

The system shown uses one reservoir and two air valves, a **relay valve** for the service brakes, and a **trailer spring brake valve** that fills the reservoir and controls the spring parking brakes.

Other systems may be equipped with one, two or three air valves and multiple reservoirs. But using more or fewer air valves or additional reservoirs won't alter the basic operation of the system.

The tractor is delivering air through the supply line to the trailer spring brake valve. The spring parking brake valve directs air to fill the reservoir(s) and to release the spring parking brakes.

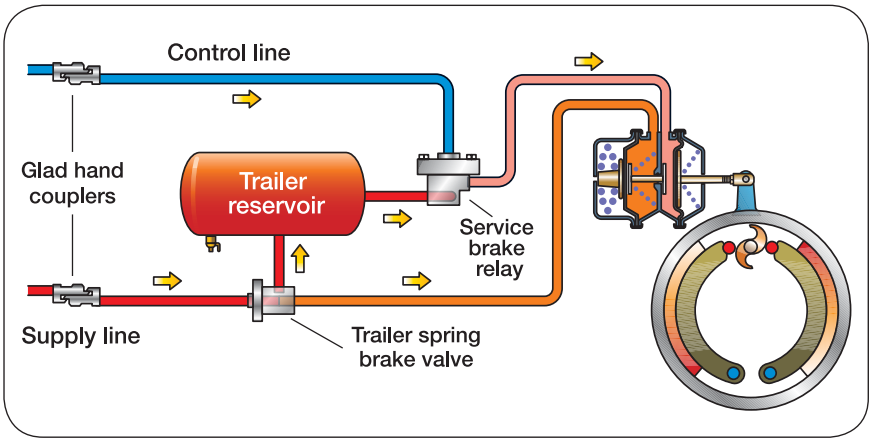
Here are the two types of systems:

- one fills the reservoir(s) before releasing the spring parking brakes
- the other releases the spring parking brakes first, then fills the reservoir(s).

Always perform a tug test after coupling the tractor to the trailer. Follow the coupling procedures as shown in **chapter 5, skills for driving trucks and trailers.**

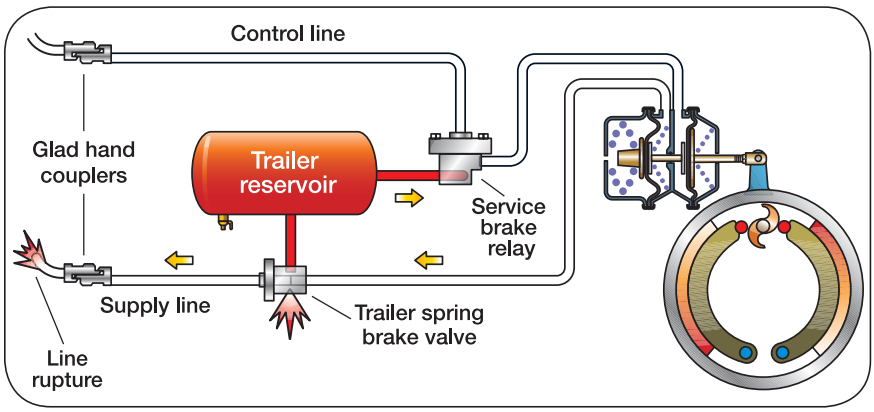
Trailer with spring parking brakes — service brake application

In this diagram, a control signal from the tractor has been sent through the control line to the trailer's relay valve. The relay valve has drawn air from the trailer reservoir and delivered it to the trailer service brake chambers at approximately the same pressure as the control signal.



Trailer with spring parking brakes — dynamited

This diagram shows a broken supply line. The trailer spring brake valve has sensed the loss of pressure in the supply line and has exhausted the air pressure from the spring parking brake chambers, causing the spring parking brakes to apply. Note the burst of air from the exhaust port of the trailer spring brake valve.



The supply line has broken, causing the trailer spring parking brakes to apply.

This action can also be called dynamiting of the trailer brakes. The trailer brakes will also be dynamited each time the glad hands are disconnected, or when the driver closes the trailer supply valve that's located on the tractor dashboard.

Tractor protection

If the mechanical connection between the tractor and trailer fails, causing the trailer to separate from the tractor, the two connecting air lines break. Air pressure from the tractor system rushes out through the broken supply line, and if the driver applies the brake, air pressure would rush out through the broken control line.

To prevent the tractor air from being depleted to an unsafe level, tractors are equipped with a **tractor protection system.**

A tractor protection system consists of a **trailer air supply valve** located in the tractor dash, and a **tractor protection valve**, usually located behind the tractor cab. All of the supply and control air delivered to the trailer passes through the tractor protection valve.

If the trailer breaks away, the tractor protection system will automatically shut off air loss from the tractor, preserving enough pressure for the driver to make a safe stop.

Some tractor protection systems will shut off immediately in a breakaway, but some will allow tractor pressure to drop to as low as 20 p.s.i (138 kPa) before shutting off.

Proper operation of the tractor protection system should be checked as part of the daily pre-trip inspection.

fast fact

A peace officer may place your vehicle out of service if the tractor protection system allows the tractor pressure to drop below 20 p.s.i. (138 kPa) without the trailer air supply valve automatically closing.

Trailer air supply valve

Once the supply line is connected to the trailer, there needs to be a way of directing air pressure to the trailer.

Trailer air supply valve.

This is the job of the dash mounted **trailer air supply valve.** It senses air pressure in the supply line that carries air to the trailer system. Most trailer air supply valves are an octagon-shaped red button.

Hand valve

Applying the foot valve directs approximately the same application pressure to both the tractor and trailer brakes. For example, if you make a 20 p.s.i. foot valve application, this application pressure will be applied to both the tractor and trailer brakes.

There are times when you want to apply only the trailer brakes without applying the tractor brakes, such as when coupling the tractor to a trailer.

The hand valve allows independent control of the trailer brakes. Some are mounted on the steering column, others are mounted in the dashboard.

This is the purpose of the **hand valve**. When the trailer air brake system is fully connected to the tractor, the hand valve allows you to apply the trailer brakes independently of the tractor.

The hand valve should not be used in normal or emergency situation braking. Always use the foot valve for service braking.

Most hand valves are spring-loaded, just like the foot valve, so that when you release it, it will return to the released position. Don't use the hand valve for parking.

warning!

DO NOT use the hand valve for parking.

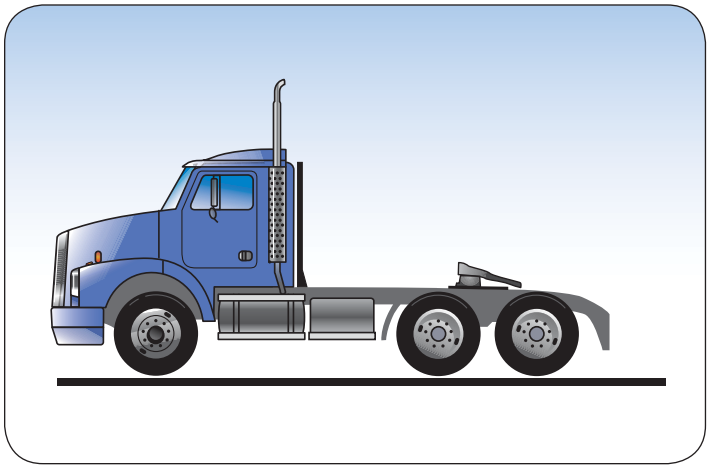
Apply the tractor parking brakes, close the trailer supply valve and block the trailer wheels.

Two-way check valve

The **two-way check valve** allows you to apply the trailer brakes independently. This valve is identical in construction to the one used in spring parking brake installations, except that it allows the highest application pressure from the hand valve or the foot valve to be directed to the trailer brakes.

Bobtail tractors

Driving a tractor without a trailer attached is called **bobtailing**.



Driving a tractor without a trailer attached is called bobtailing.

Because a bobtail tractor has very little weight over the rear drive axles, it's very easy to lock up the rear brakes, even with a light brake application.

To help prevent this unwanted lockup and to increase control, some tractors are equipped with a **bobtail proportioning system.**

This system consists of two special valves: one controlling the steering axle brakes, and the other controlling the drive axle brakes.

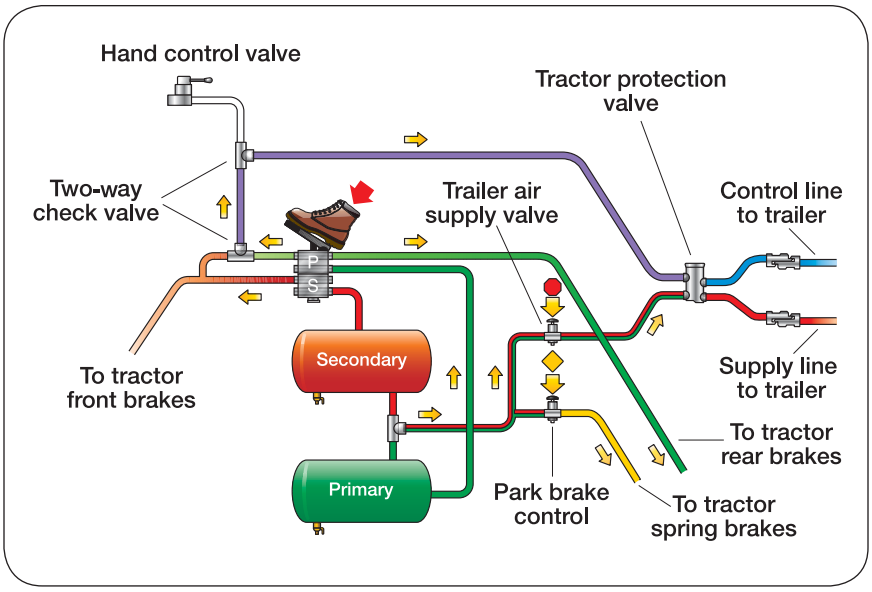
When the tractor is being driven with a trailer attached, the tractor brakes operate normally.

When bobtailing, the braking pressure to the drive axle brakes is reduced by as much as 75 per cent, preventing the rear brakes from locking. The steering axle brakes receive full application pressure.

A tractor with a bobtail proportioning system will stop in a shorter distance and control will be increased, especially on wet or slippery road surfaces.

Because the steering axle brakes are doing most of the braking, a higher than normal pedal pressure is required.

Dual air tractor-trailer system — foot valve applied



A dual air tractor system for towing a trailer.

Note — Depending on the air brake system configuration used, the hand control valve may be supplied from blended air, or from primary or secondary reservoir pressure.

To avoid confusion, the air supply source to the hand valve is not shown in this diagram or in the diagrams on the next two pages.

This diagram shows only the two service reservoirs, the dual foot valve, and the components that are added to a tractor with a dual air system so that it can safely tow a trailer with air brakes.

The components added are a trailer air supply valve, tractor protection valve, hand control valve, and a pair of two-way check valves.

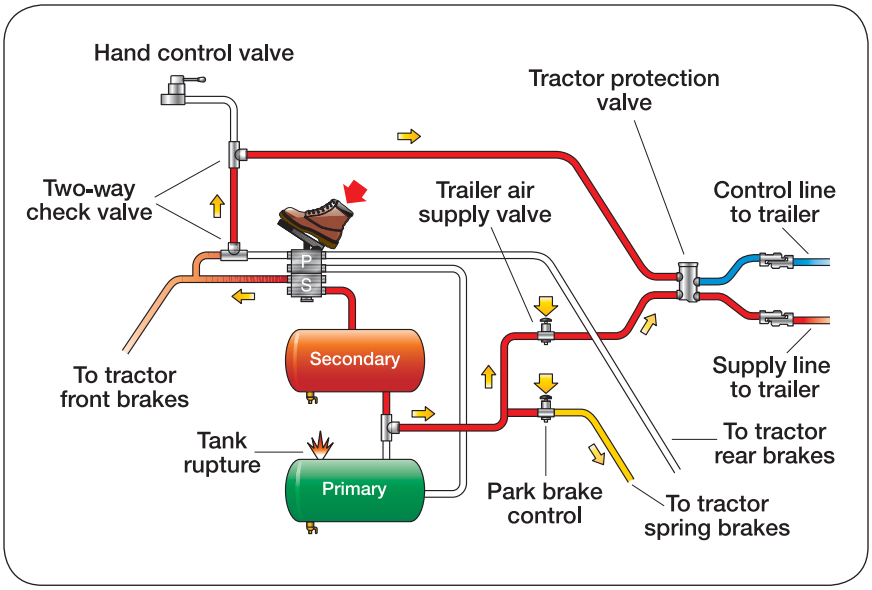
Two-way check valves are installed so that whichever brake is applied — foot valve or hand valve — a control signal will be sent to the trailer.

The driver is making a foot valve application. The tractor front and rear brakes are being applied, and a control signal is being sent to the trailer through both of the two-way check valves.

Note that in most dual systems, the parking brake control valve (yellow button) is interlocked with the trailer supply valve (red button) so that applying the parking brake control valve causes all of the parking brakes on both the tractor and trailer to apply.

Some tractors are equipped with three dashboard control valves — the parking brake control valve (yellow button), the trailer supply valve (red button), plus a tractor parking brake valve with a round blue button that can control the **tractor parking brakes** independently of the trailer brakes.

Dual tractor-trailer system — primary air system failure



Despite the ruptured air line from the primary reservoir, the driver can still make a controlled stop.

fast fact

A peace officer may place a trailer out of service if the trailer brakes don't apply when the trailer air supply valve is closed.

This diagram shows a tractor with a dual air system where there has been a failure in the primary air system on the tractor. The low-air warning would have alerted the driver to the problem and a glance at the reservoir gauges would confirm that only one part of the dual air system had been lost.

The driver is making a foot valve application, causing the tractor front brakes to apply. Application air from the secondary foot valve is also passing through both of the two-way check valves, to the trailer control line, signalling the trailer brakes to apply.

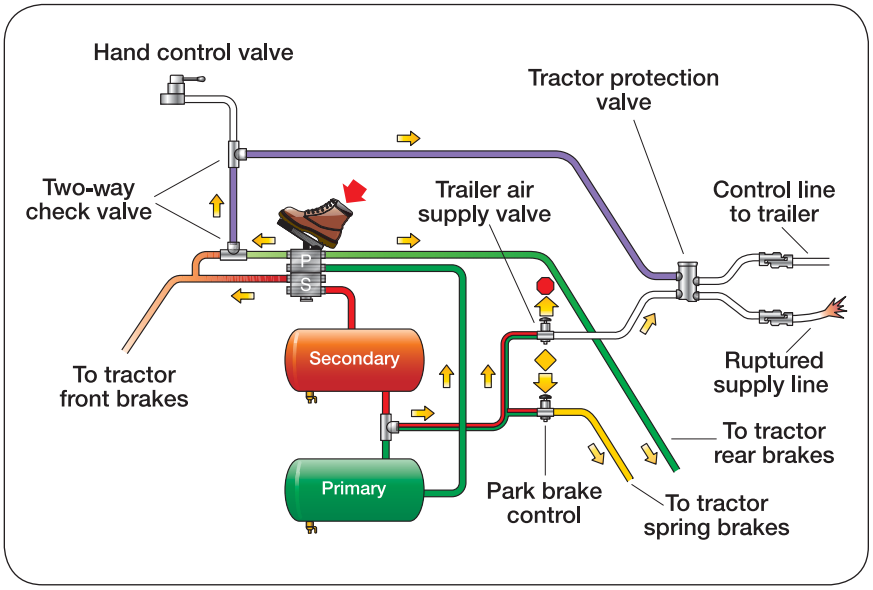
If the secondary system had failed, a foot valve application would apply the rear tractor brakes, directing air through both of the two-way check valves to signal the trailer brakes to apply.

The same motor vehicle safety standards that require automatic shutoff of the air supply to the trailer — in the event that the pressure in the tractor air system is lowered to between 20 and 45 p.s.i. (138 and 310 kPa) — apply equally to tractors with dual air systems.

Because the trailer supply valve is now supplied with "blended air" from a two-way check valve, the automatic shutoff will not occur until the service reservoir with the **highest** pressure is lowered to between 20 and 45 p.s.i. (138 and 310 kPa).

The automatic shutoff requirement should be checked as part of a pre-trip inspection. If it doesn't function properly, the vehicle must be placed out of service until it is repaired.

Dual tractor-trailer system — trailer breakaway



Despite the ruptured supply line, the driver can still make a controlled stop.

This diagram shows how the tractor protection valve and the trailer air supply valve act together to protect the tractor air supply from being depleted to an unsafe level if the trailer separates, causing the connecting lines to rupture. The sudden loss of air through the broken trailer supply line has caused the trailer air supply valve to shut off automatically.

The driver is making a foot valve application, causing the tractor service brakes to apply. The application pressure is also passing through both of the two-way check valves to the tractor protection valve.

Because there is no pressure in the supply line to the trailer, the tractor protection valve has closed the passage to the trailer control line. No application air can be wasted through that broken line.

If the control line separates, nothing will happen until the trailer brakes are applied. When that happens, the tractor protection system will activate to protect the tractor air supply.

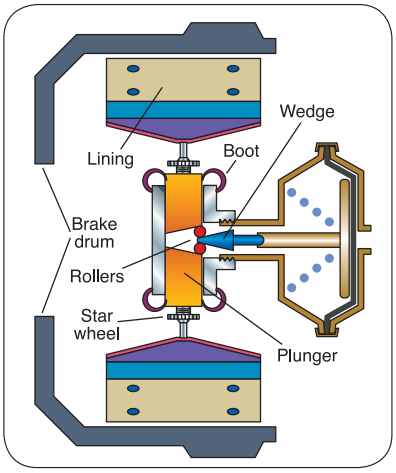
When no trailer is connected, the trailer air supply valve will be in the closed position. This allows the tractor to be driven bobtail so that no air will be lost through the disconnected glad hand couplers.

Other types of foundation brakes

Here are the three other types of foundation brakes found on air-braked vehicles:

- wedge brakes
- air disc brakes
- air-over-hydraulic brakes.

Wedge brakes



A typical wedge brake.

driving tip

Wedge brakes should only be adjusted or repaired by a qualified mechanic.

This type of brake uses one or two small air chambers with wedge-shaped pushrods. Wedge brakes are usually found only on steering axles.

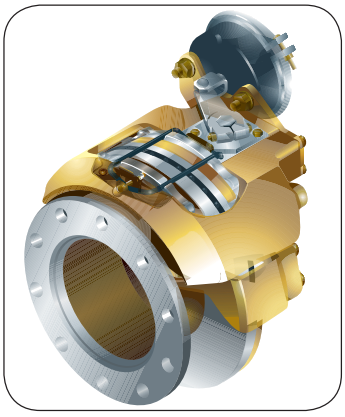
When the brakes are applied, air pressure in the brake chamber pushes the wedge part of the pushrod between two rollers, forcing the brake linings out to contact the brake drum.

Most wedge brakes have internal automatic adjusters. Checking proper adjustment requires that inspection hole covers in the backing plate be removed so that brake linings movement can be checked while the brakes are applied and released. If either linings move more than $\frac{1}{16}$ of an inch, or a total of $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch for both linings, the automatic adjusters have failed.

Unlike conventional s-cam braking systems, drivers can't easily check the wedge brake adjustment of a wedge brake.

Adjustment and repairs to wedge brakes should only be done by a qualified mechanic.

Air disc brakes



An air disc brake.

This type of brake uses a rotor, or disc, that's mounted to the wheel hub and rotates with the wheel. Two brake pads are located on either side of the rotor. When applied, the brake pads are pressed against the rotor. This action is similar to that of a large "C" clamp.

driving tip

Air disc brakes should only be adjusted or repaired by a qualified mechanic.

There are a number of different linkages used between the air chamber and the operating mechanism. This illustration only shows one type, but the principle of the others is similar.

Most air disc brakes feature an internal automatic brake adjustment mechanism to adjust for brake pad wear. Chamber stroke limits are the same as for automatic slack adjusters.

Unlike conventional s-cam braking systems, drivers can't easily check the adjustment of an air disc brake.

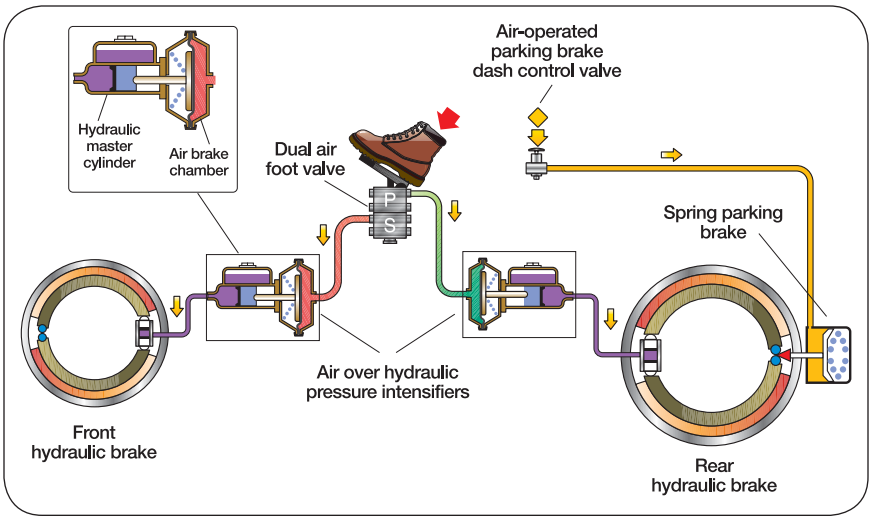
Make sure adjustment and repairs to air disc brakes are only done by a qualified mechanic.

Air-over-hydraulic brakes

Air-over-hydraulic brakes are often found on middleweight trucks and buses. This type of braking system combines the features of an air brake system and a hydraulic braking system.

Hydraulic foundation brakes offer several advantages on commercial vehicles of this size, including light weight, compact size and proven automatic adjusting mechanisms.

Most middleweight commercial vehicles of this size were once powered by gasoline engines, which supplied a source of engine vacuum so that vacuum boosters for the hydraulic brakes could be used. The now-common diesel engine doesn't supply a usable vacuum, so a partial air brake system has been adopted.



An air-over-hydraulic braking system.

An air-over-hydraulic braking system (above) consists of a compressor, governor, air storage tanks, foot valve and two air-over-hydraulic **pressure intensifiers**. The system may also include spring parking brakes. Like a full air brake system, typical air-over-hydraulic braking systems use a standard air pressure of around 125 p.s.i. (862 kPa).

fast fact

An air brake-endorsed driver's licence is required to operate most vehicles equipped with air-over-hydraulic brakes.

The only exception is if the brake system doesn't use an air treadle. In this case, an air brake-endorsed driver's licence isn't required.

driving tip

Check gauges frequently to make sure there's adequate air pressure to apply the brakes.

A standard dual air foot valve is used. Pressing on the foot valve directs air pressure to the air-actuated side of the hydraulic pressure intensifiers, causing the hydraulic-actuated side of the intensifiers to direct hydraulic pressure to the foundation brakes. In other words, air pressure actuates the braking action, but hydraulic pressure delivers the braking force to the foundation brakes to stop the vehicle.

To provide a parking brake, many air-over-hydraulic braking systems have a parking brake chamber attached to the foundation brake.

The parking brake is controlled by the same dashboard-mounted parking brake control valve used on vehicles with full air brake systems. Applying the parking brake control valve on the dashboard applies the spring in the parking brake chamber, which forces a wedge between the brake shoes to apply the brakes. Releasing the parking brake control valve directs air pressure to the parking brake chamber to contract the wedge and spring.

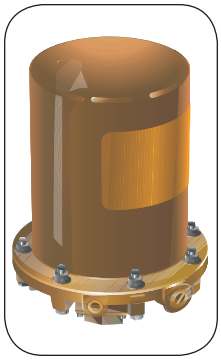
Like a full air brake system, if there were a serious air leak in an air-over-hydraulic system, eventually the brakes would stop functioning properly. For this reason, drivers need to know and understand how the system works, and check air pressure gauges frequently.

Other air brake system components

Here are other components commonly found in air brake systems.

Air dryers

Air dryers are optional devices that are installed in the compressor discharge line between the compressor and the first reservoir. They're designed to remove any water vapour, oil mist and carbon particles from the air before it's delivered to the first reservoir.



The warm, moist air from the compressor enters the dryer where a certain amount of the water vapour condenses on cool metallic surfaces. The air then passes through a filter that removes any oil and through another filter that removes the remaining water vapour. From there the clean air passes through an internal one-way check valve, and onto the first reservoir.

When the reservoir has come up to full pressure, a purge port in the bottom of the air dryer will open. The collected contaminants are ejected along with a sudden burst of air.

Most new air brake systems include an air dryer.

fast fact

Even if the air brake system includes an air dryer, air reservoirs should still be drained regularly to check for contaminants.

At the same time, a certain amount of clean air is allowed to flow back through the filters. This reverse flush effect cleans both filters in readiness for the next compression cycle. The purge port remains open until the compressor resumes pumping.

Some air dryers are equipped with an electric heating element to prevent freezing in cold weather.

In systems with an air dryer, the safety valve is often installed at the air dryer rather than at the supply reservoir.

driving tip

If you notice more than a few drops of water when you drain the supply reservoir, the air dryer or compressor may need servicing.

Check the air dryer operation by periodically looking for water in the reservoirs. More than a few drops may indicate that the air dryer or compressor needs servicing.

Alcohol evaporators and alcohol injectors

Alcohol evaporators and **alcohol injectors** are optional devices that introduce a small amount of alcohol vapour into the air system. The alcohol vapour combines with any moisture that may be present. In effect, the alcohol acts as an anti-freeze, lowering the freezing point of any moisture that's collected in the air system.

Alcohol evaporators are connected to the inlet side of the compressor so that alcohol vapour is drawn in and compressed along with the intake air, which is then carried throughout the system.

Alcohol injectors are installed in the compressor discharge line between the compressor and the supply reservoir. The discharge air passes through a venturi (a tube with a narrow section, which causes air flowing through the tube to create a vacuum), picking up alcohol vapour and carrying it throughout the system.

fast fact

Even if the air brake system includes an alcohol evaporator or alcohol injector, air reservoirs must still be drained regularly.

An alcohol evaporator bottle.

driving tip

Only use products specifically designed for use in air brake systems in alcohol evaporators or alcohol injectors.

The alcohol reservoir should be kept topped up with methyl hydrate during the winter months. It's a good practice to begin before the first freeze of the season to ensure trouble-free operation.

These systems are designed to use pure methyl hydrate to provide the alcohol. Be sure to use only methyl hydrate specifically formulated for use in alcohol evaporators or alcohol injectors.

Automatic drain valves

Automatic drain valves (sometimes called “spitter valves”) are optional devices installed on some or all of the reservoirs on some air brake systems. They intermittently expel any contamination that's collected.

Most are self-contained and open briefly each time reservoir pressure lowers two or three p.s.i. (13.8 or 20.7 kPa), but some are connected to the compressor governor and open briefly each time that the compressor cycles.

Some automatic drain valves are equipped with an electric heating element to prevent freezing in cold weather.

The manual drains should be opened periodically to check for the presence of water in reservoirs.

If you find contaminants or more than a few drops of water, the compressor or air dryer may need servicing, or the automatic drain valve may not be functioning correctly.

Front wheel limiting systems

Some vehicles may have an optional system to reduce the possibility of steering axle brake lockup and loss of steering control on slippery surfaces. There are two types of front wheel limiting systems:

- automatic front wheel limiting systems
- manual front wheel limiting systems.

Automatic front wheel limiting systems

This consists of a limiting valve, sometimes called a ratio valve, mounted near the steering axle. There's no dashboard control.

At very low application pressures, no air pressure is delivered to the steering axle brakes. As application pressure exceeds the holdback point (five to 15 p.s.i. — 34.5 to 103 kPa), limited application pressure is delivered to the steering axle brakes. At brake application pressures below 40 p.s.i. (276 kPa), the steering axle brake pressure is approximately 50 per cent of drive axle pressure.

At application pressures above 40 p.s.i., the percentage gradually rises, until it reaches an application pressure that may be used during an emergency stop (60 to 70 p.s.i. — 414 to 483 kPa) and steering axle and drive axle brakes receive equal pressure. A built-in quick release function helps to speed up the release of the steering axle brakes.

Manual front wheel limiting systems

These are no longer installed on new vehicles. This type of system consists of a limiting quick-release valve mounted near the steering axle brakes, and a dash mounted control valve. The control valve may be a “flip” type switch, as shown, or a push-pull type.

A manual front wheel limiting control.

With the control valve in the “dry” position, the steering axle brakes are applied with the same pressure as the drive axle brakes.

The “slippery” position limits the application pressure to the steering axle brakes to 50 per cent of drive axle brake application.

Commercial vehicle safety standards allow reduced braking on steering axle brakes only when weather and road surface conditions make such operation essential to safety. Tests have shown that front wheel skids aren't as dangerous as the drive axles locking up.

The limiting quick release valve also acts as a normal quick-release valve, helping to speed up the release of the steering axle brakes.

driving tip

On vehicles equipped with a manual front wheel limiting valve, keep the control in the normal (Dry Road) position to have normal braking efficiency.

fast fact

Spring parking brake emergency release systems are sometimes called "California spring parking brake systems."

Spring parking brake emergency release system

This system provides a special emergency release tank that can be used to release spring parking brakes if a disabled vehicle needs to be moved to a safe parking area and its main reservoir pressure is lost.

A second dashboard control valve is added so that air from the emergency release tank can be directed to the spring parking brakes to release them. This control valve is usually a "dead man" type that must be held in place while the vehicle is being moved. Once the vehicle has been moved, the spring parking brakes are re-applied by releasing hand pressure from the control.

Instructions for operating the emergency release system are usually found on the control valve or on a decal on the dashboard.

The popularity of this system was reduced with the introduction of the dual air system, but it's still sometimes used on transit buses, school buses and fire trucks.

Pressure-protection valves

Pressure-protection valves are often installed between the service brake reservoirs and any non-essential air-operated accessories such as air seats, air horns, air windshield wipers, air suspensions, fifth wheel sliders and air shifts. Some air brake systems integrate the air dryer with the supply reservoir — these also use pressure-protection valves.

They're designed to cut off the air supply to these systems if a failed accessory causes the service reservoir pressure to drop below a preset pressure, ensuring that sufficient pressure is maintained in the service system so that a safe stop can be made.

Shutoff pressures vary between 60 and 90 p.s.i. (414 and 620 kPa), depending on the manufacturer's specifications.

Application pressure gauges

Some vehicles have air pressure gauges to indicate application pressure as well as pressure in the reservoirs.

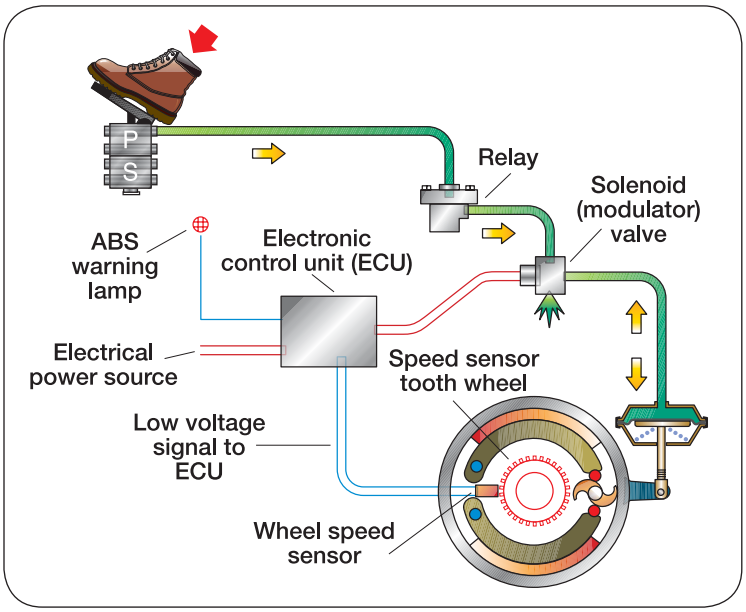
Some trucks and tractors are equipped with one or more optional gauges that indicate the actual pressure being delivered to the service brakes.

There may be a single gauge or separate gauges for tractor and trailer brake application.

Tractors may have a single gauge that indicates application pressure if either the foot valve or trailer hand control valve is applied.

Anti-lock braking systems

Anti-lock braking systems (ABS) are typically made up of three main sections: speed sensing, decision-making, and brake releasing or modulation.



In this diagram, vehicle speed is sensed by magnetic pickups mounted in close proximity to toothed wheels that are attached to some or all of the wheel hubs. As the wheels rotate, a pulsating electrical current is generated.

This pulsating current is monitored by a simple computer called an **electronic control unit** (ECU). The ECU is powered by the vehicle electrical system. During normal brake application, if the ECU detects a sudden change in the pulsating current, the ABS system will activate.

If the brakes are applied too hard for road conditions, and a wheel lockup occurs, the rate of the pulsating current will rapidly decrease. The ECU, sensing the sudden drop in wheel speed, will signal electrically controlled solenoid air valves to release air pressure from the brake chambers at the affected wheels. The solenoid valves are frequently called **modulators**.

As the brakes begin to release, the wheels will regain traction, the pulsating current will be restored, and the ECU will allow the brakes to re-apply. If the lockup re-occurs, the apply-and-release cycle will repeat as often as necessary. Most systems are capable of cycling the brakes up to five times per second.

To achieve the shortest possible stopping distance on extremely slippery surfaces, you simply have to apply and maintain firm continuous pressure on the brake pedal. You need to apply the brake pedal in order to allow the ABS system work to stop the vehicle from skidding. The ABS system will rapidly apply and release the brakes as often as necessary. There may be some noise and vibration. ABS prevents the axle brakes from locking up allowing the driver to retain complete steering control.

The ABS lights for the tractor and trailer brakes should be on when you first start the tractor.

driving tip

When coupling to a trailer, always check to see if it's equipped with ABS.

Stopping in an emergency with a combination unit — where the tractor and all trailers are ABS-equipped — is quite different than stopping a combination where all the units do not have ABS.

Trucks and tractors are equipped with a dash mounted failure warning lamp that monitors the ABS system. When the ignition switch is first turned on, the ABS system performs a self-checking sequence. Depending on the system, the dash lamp may light, flash briefly, then stay lit until vehicle speed reaches 7–11 km/h, or light briefly then turn off.

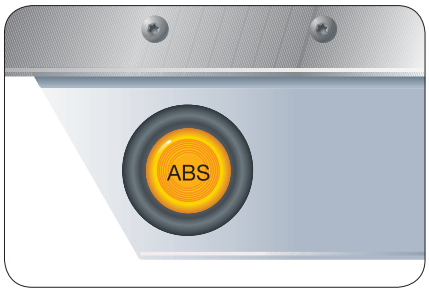
If the lamp doesn't go out, or comes on during vehicle operation, it's signalling that there's been a failure in the ABS system. Normal braking is still operational, only the anti-lock feature is disabled. The vehicle may be driven to a service depot for repairs.

Trailer ABS air brake systems

Trailer ABS systems use similar components as those on trucks and tractors. The ECU may be powered from the stop lamp circuit, or may have a dedicated power source through the electrical connector.

Trailers with ABS air brakes will also have an indicator visible in the tractor's mirror to indicate if the system's not functioning properly. This warning light may be mounted on the front left side of the trailer or on the rear left side of the trailer.

On some air brake systems, there may be a trailer ABS warning indicator on the dashboard of the tractor.



This ABS warning light is positioned on the side of the trailer at the rear. The driver should be able to see it in the tractor side mirror.

Review questions

1. Why are air brakes, rather than hydraulic brakes, used on heavy commercial vehicles?
2. What are the five components of a simple air brake system?
3. What prevents total loss of air pressure in the service brake system in the event of an air line rupture between the compressor and the supply reservoir?
4. How can you tell how much air pressure is in the main reservoirs?
5. What must you do if the low pressure warning indicator activates?
6. What's one advantage of a dual air brake system?
7. In a dual air brake system, if an air line in the secondary braking system ruptures, how would you know? What would happen if you then made a brake application?
8. How does a spring parking brake work?
9. What are the two ways that the spring in a spring parking brake chamber can be held in the released position?
10. Why should you avoid compounding the brakes?
11. Why are spring parking brakes a reliable type of parking brake?
12. What's the purpose of the tractor protection system on a tractor?
13. If a driver makes a 20-pound (138 kPa) brake application with the hand valve, what's the application pressure at the tractor brakes?
14. What would happen if the control line to the trailer becomes disconnected while you're driving the tractor-trailer combination?
15. How does a wedge brake work?
16. How does an air-over-hydraulic braking system work?
17. Where would an air dryer be installed in an air brake system?
18. If you make a full brake application during an emergency stop with an automatic front wheel limiting system, how much air pressure is directed to the front brakes?

9 air brake adjustment

fast fact

Your company may have a maintenance crew to keep vehicles safely running.

But one person is ultimately responsible to ensure that the brakes are operating properly before the vehicle is moved. That person is the driver.

What you'll learn

After reading this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❏ explain why air brake adjustment needs to be regularly checked
- ❏ explain how to measure air brake chamber pushrod travel and how to adjust air brakes.

Brake adjustment — it's critical

The most important part of any braking system is the foundation brakes. If these are not in correct working order and properly adjusted, the best designed air brake system won't be able to safely stop the vehicle.

Brake failures and runaways that result in crashes are almost never caused by an air system failure. The absence of routine brake maintenance or the driver failing to check brakes on a daily basis is a much more common factor.

Daily pre- and post-trip inspections — including checking and adjusting brakes — are mandatory. The driver may be held responsible if the brakes are incorrectly adjusted or not working properly.

fast fact

You will be fined if you're operating a vehicle with brakes that are defective. This includes excessive brake chamber pushrod stroke.

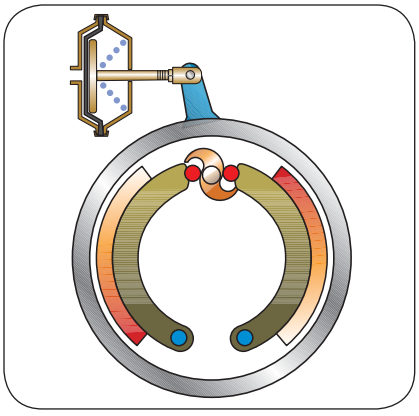
Brake adjustment — it's the law

Federal, Provincial and Territorial laws require that you check manual and automatic slack adjusters daily, during the pre-trip inspection. It's up to you, the professional driver, to ensure your vehicle has safe, correctly adjusted brakes.

You're also required by law to check your brakes before driving down steep grades that are posted with regulatory signs.

You can't always crawl underneath your vehicle to measure air brake chamber pushrod travel, but there are devices available to help you visually check for brake adjustment.

S-cam brake — released



A typical s-cam brake. The brake is shown in the released position.

definition

Slack adjustment means adjusting the brakes to keep air chamber pushrod travel within tolerance to ensure that the brakes are effective.

Pushrod travel means the distance the pushrod extends from the air brake chamber when the brakes are applied.

fast fact

When correctly adjusted, the running clearance between the brake lining and drum is only a few thousandths of an inch — hardly thicker than three sheets of paper.

A typical s-cam brake. The brake is shown in the applied position.

driving tip

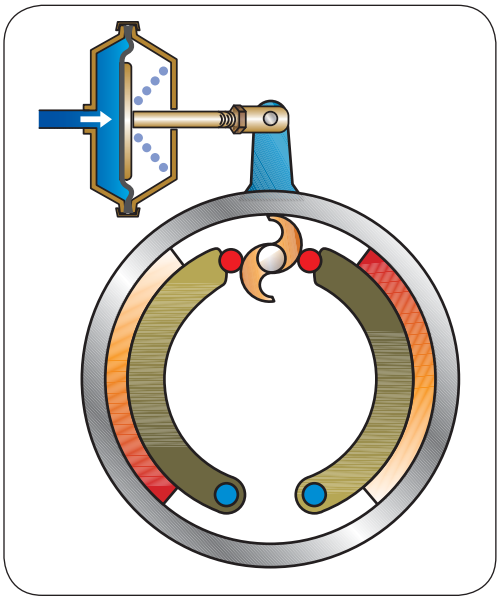
Check air brake chamber pushrod travel at least daily.

Each brake on an axle should be adjusted to have a similar amount of pushrod travel — that is, the pushrod travel of the left brake should be similar to the pushrod travel of the right brake on the axle.

This brake chamber pushrod has excessive travel, but may work as long as the brake drum is cool. But it won't stay cool for long!

The most common type of air brake chamber used on trucks and trailers is the Type 30. These chambers have a maximum available stroke of 2½ inches (65 mm). A long stroke Type 30 is designated Type 30LS, and has a maximum available stroke of three inches.

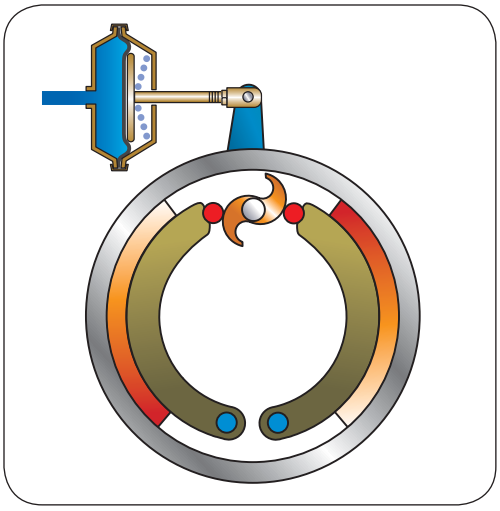
S-cam brake — applied



In this diagram, the brakes have been applied and the brake linings have contacted the brake drum. The brake chamber has stroked less than half of its maximum stroke, indicating that the brake is in correct adjustment.

S-cam brake — incorrectly adjusted and cold brake drum

In this diagram, the brakes are applied and the linings have contacted the brake drum.



fast fact

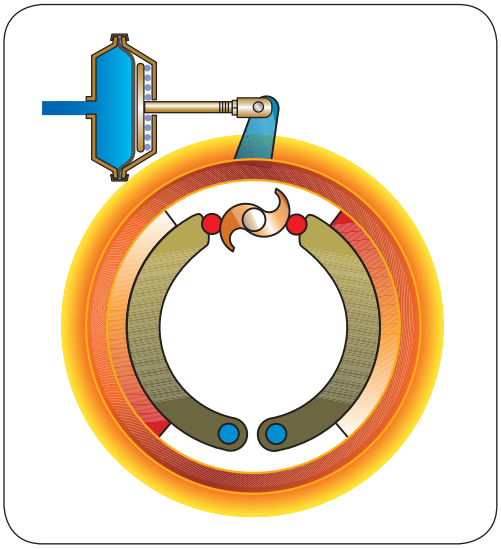
Once you learn how, manual slack adjusters are easy to adjust.

Air-brake-equipped vehicles rarely "lose" their brakes. If the brakes don't work properly, it's likely because the brake system hasn't been well maintained and the driver has failed to regularly check brake pushrod travel.

Note that the brake chamber has stroked more than half of its maximum, which means that this air brake chamber pushrod has excessive travel and the brakes need adjustment.

When the brake drum is cool and with normal brake application pressure, the brake will seem to be effective, so it's easy to be lulled into a false sense of security.

S-cam brake — incorrectly adjusted and hot brake drum



Now that the brake drum is hot, the brake linings will no longer contact the drum. The brake chamber has bottomed out.

This diagram shows the same brake after a few brake applications.

Cast iron brake drums expand when heated, causing the air chamber to stroke further as the temperature rises.

If an unforeseen event required the driver to make a sudden stop, the brake chamber could **bottom out**, and braking power would be greatly reduced.

On long downgrades, the expansion of hot brake drums can cause a total loss of braking and result in a runaway.

warning!

Even incorrectly adjusted brakes may seem to work when brakes are lightly applied.

This could result in a dangerous brake system under moderate to heavy braking, or on a downgrade.

driving tip

Always block the wheels before checking any brakes.

Turn the engine off so that you can also listen for any air leaks.

Checking and adjusting s-cam brakes — manual slack adjuster

Drivers seldom have the luxury of the use of a pit and hydraulic jacks so that brake adjustment can be done with wheels off the ground.

But, brakes can still be adjusted very accurately with the wheels on the ground using one of the following methods.

Be sure that the vehicle is safely parked with the wheels blocked. The air system should be at full pressure and the spring parking brakes released.

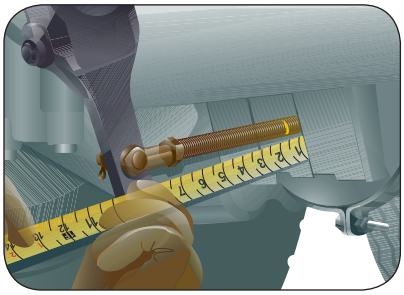
Turn the engine off so that you can listen for air leaks.

There are two methods of checking for correct adjustment, but the measurements that indicate the need for adjustment are different.

Applied stroke method (service brake application)

The **applied stroke** method is the method used by roadside inspectors, and is also a method recommended by commercial fleet maintenance supervisors.

Unless you have a device to apply and hold the service brakes on, this method requires two people — one to apply the brakes and one to measure travel.



Checking the pushrod stroke by applying the brakes.

driving tip

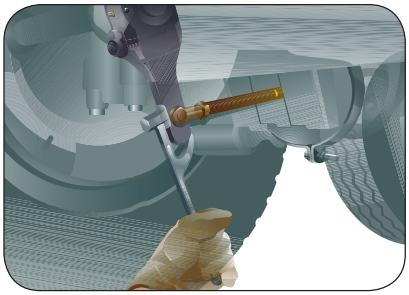
While checking air brakes look for other brake component wear and excessive play including:

- s-cam bushing wear
- s-cam spline wear
- slack adjuster play (worn gear)
- clevis pin wear.

1. With the brakes released, reservoir pressure at least 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa), and the engine off, either:
   a) make a mark on the pushrod where it exits the brake chamber or
   b) measure the pushrod length from the clevis pin to the face of the brake chamber.
2. Apply and hold a full brake application of 90 to 100 p.s.i. (620 – 690 kPa).
3. With the brakes applied, either:
   a) measure the distance between the mark on the pushrod and face of the brake chamber or
   b) re-measure the pushrod length from the clevis pin to the face of the brake chamber.

The distance between the mark on the pushrod and the face of the brake chamber, or the difference between the two pushrod length measurements from the clevis pin to the face of the brake chamber, is called the applied stroke (1 inch to 1½ inches — 25 to 38 mm is a good range). If this distance is more than 1¾ of an inch (45 mm), the brakes need adjustment.

Pry method of free stroke measurement



Using a brake tool to measure brake chamber pushrod free stroke.

To begin, make sure system air pressure is over 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa) and all parking brakes are released.

1. Push against the pushrod to ensure that it's fully retracted into the brake chamber. Then make a mark on the pushrod where it exits the brake chamber.

driving tip

Make sure you have the proper equipment to check the brakes. You'll need:

- a flashlight to inspect components
- chalk or other marker, and a ruler or other marking device, to check pushrod free stroke
- a tool to pry on the air brake chamber pushrod to check for free stroke
- a wrench to adjust manual slack adjusters.

You should also wear sturdy clothing, a hard hat and eye protection.

If the red marking on the pushrod (at the chamber face) is visible, it indicates that the brake is dangerously out of adjustment and it needs **immediate** attention.

driving tip

While checking air brakes look for other brake component wear and excessive play including:

- s-cam bushing wear
- s-cam spline wear
- slack adjuster play (worn gear)
- clevis pin wear.

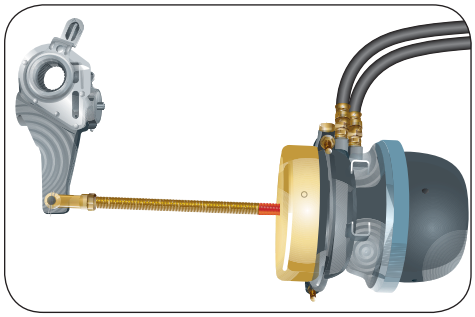
2. Pull the pushrod out from the brake chamber, using a tool like a pry bar for leverage.
3. Measure the distance between the chalk mark and the face of the brake chamber.

The distance between the mark on the pushrod and the face of the brake chamber is called the free stroke (½ to ¾ of an inch — 12 to 20 mm is a good range). If this distance is more than ¾ of an inch (20 mm), the brakes need adjustment.

Brake adjustment indicators

New air brake chamber pushrods have a marking (usually red) to indicate when brake adjustment must be done immediately. If the pushrod travel becomes excessive, the marking will show.

Don't wait until the red marking is exposed before adjusting the brakes.

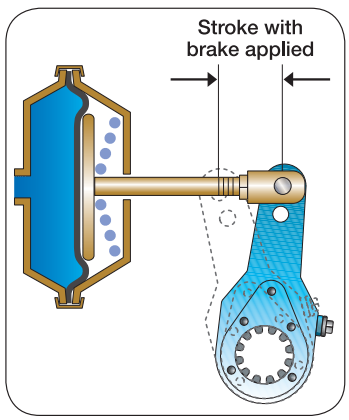


Brake adjustment — manual slack adjuster

With a typical Type 30 clamp type air chamber, you **must** adjust the brakes if pushrod travel is:

- more than ¾ of an inch (20 mm) using the pry method of free stroke measurement, or
- more than 1¾ of an inch (45 mm) using the brake application — applied stroke measurement method.

Note that these are maximum measurements. You should adjust the brakes if your measurements approach these limits.

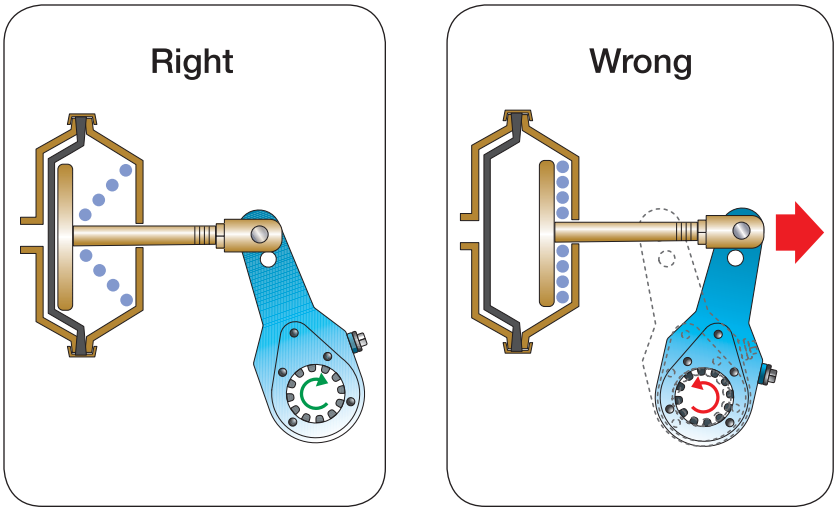


Adjustment

Most manual slack adjusters have a spring-loaded locking sleeve that must be pressed in and held so the adjusting bolt can be turned.

Depending upon the orientation of the slack adjuster, you may need to turn the adjusting bolt clockwise or counter-clockwise. There are two indicators to watch for to ensure that you're tightening and not loosening the slack adjustment.

With a wrench of the proper size, usually a 9/16 inch, depress the locking sleeve and turn the adjusting bolt while watching the end of the camshaft. The camshaft will rotate slightly as the bolt is being turned. If you're turning in the right direction, the cam will rotate in the same direction that it would if the brakes were being applied, as shown by the arrow on the cam end in the diagram below.



If the pushrod goes into the chamber, this indicates that the previous slack adjustment was done incorrectly.

If the slack adjuster is pulling the pushrod out of the chamber when you turn the adjusting bolt, **stop**. The adjusting bolt is being turned in the **wrong** direction.

The pushrod and the slack adjuster arm should **never** move in or out while turning the adjusting bolt.

If the pushrod goes into the chamber, this indicates that the previous slack adjustment was done incorrectly.

Once you know the proper direction, continue turning until solid resistance is met. This indicates that the brake linings have contacted the brake drum.

If the brake has no dust shields, or if you can see the brake shoes and linings through an inspection slot, you can visually verify that the linings have contacted the drum.

Backing off the adjusting bolt about 1/3 of a turn should establish correct running clearance between the lining and drum. Be sure the locking sleeve re-engages the bolt so that the adjustment will not back off.

driving tip

Have an adjusting wrench at hand when checking the brakes so that you can make a brake adjustment if required.

fast fact

Automatic slack adjusters still need to be regularly checked to ensure that correct adjustment is being maintained.

warning!

It's dangerous to manually adjust automatic slack adjusters.

Repeated adjustment can mask other problems and may lead to brake failure.

warning!

Automatic slack adjusters should only be adjusted or repaired by a qualified mechanic.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions in carrying out any adjustment.

It's common, especially on tandem axle units, for the adjusting bolts on one axle to adjust in one direction, while the other axle requires an opposite turn. It's not uncommon to find that the brakes on one or the other axle have been mistakenly backed off, creating a serious safety hazard.

After adjusting, verify that there's enough clearance by re-measuring the free stroke.

S-cam brakes — automatic slack adjuster

All commercial trucks and trailers with air brakes have been manufactured with automatic slack adjusters since 1996. Automatic slack adjusters adjust themselves during normal brake applications made in day-to-day driving.

Automatic slack adjusters are able to maintain brake stroke more reliably than manual slack adjusters. But, automatic slack adjusters must still be checked as part of a pre-trip inspection.

Once properly installed, automatic slack adjusters shouldn't need manual adjustment. If an automatic slack adjuster strokes beyond the maximum allowed, this usually indicates that there are other brake problems that need to be repaired by a qualified brake service mechanic.

Manual adjustment of automatic slack adjusters is dangerous because it gives a false sense of security about the effectiveness of the braking system. A manual adjustment may temporarily shorten the stroke, but the automatic slack will soon re-set to its designed stroke.

Repeated manual adjustment can cause undue wear on the internal components of the slack adjuster and possibly lead to early failure.

Manufacturers generally recommend that automatic slack adjusters be checked by a mechanic at every chassis lubrication interval, every 40,000 km, or every three months, whichever comes first.

The National Safety Code of Canada as well as American and Mexican laws require a daily check of brake adjustment as part of a pre-trip inspection. As well, in certain mountainous areas of North America, signs are posted requiring trucks to stop and check brakes before proceeding down long grades. These brake checks are required regardless of whether manual or automatic slack adjusters are used.

If a pushrod stroke is excessive during one of these checks, the automatic slack adjuster has either failed, been incorrectly installed, or there is a problem within the foundation brake.

Checking and adjusting automatic slack adjusters

Most manufacturers of automatic slack adjusters specify that pushrod stroke be checked by making a 90 to 100 p.s.i. (620 to 690 kPa) application. If you have no application pressure gauge, turn the engine off and pump the reservoir pressure down to between 90 and 100 p.s.i. (620 to 690 kPa) — then make a full application.

driving tip

It's strongly recommended that you get the service data books for the make of automatic slack adjusters that you are using.

They contain all the information needed to keep them operating properly, including lubrication requirements, initial setup, inspection and testing. They're available where truck parts are sold.

warning!

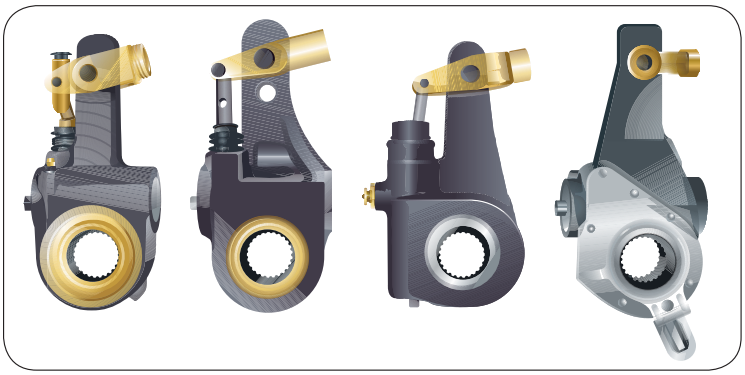
It's dangerous to manually adjust automatic slack adjusters.

The adjustment procedures shown here are for use in emergencies as a last resort where qualified brake personnel can't attend, such as driving the vehicle to a service depot.

Remember — as the driver, you're responsible for the condition of the vehicle you're operating — including the brakes.

Pushrod strokes with automatic slack adjusters are usually slightly longer than with well-adjusted manual slack adjusters. With a typical Type 30 clamp type air chamber and an automatic slack adjuster, the brakes need repair if pushrod measurements are:

- more than ¾ of an inch (20 mm) using the pry method of free stroke measurement, or
- more than two inches (50 mm) using the brake application — applied stroke method.



Four types of automatic slack adjusters.

If a pushrod stroke is excessive, the automatic slack adjuster has either failed, been incorrectly installed, or there is a problem within the foundation brake.

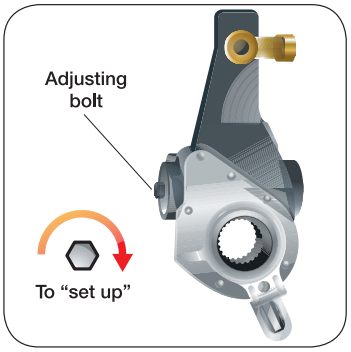
THE FOLLOWING ARE EMERGENCY PROCEDURES ONLY. A REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT MUST BE MADE AS SOON AS POSSIBLE.

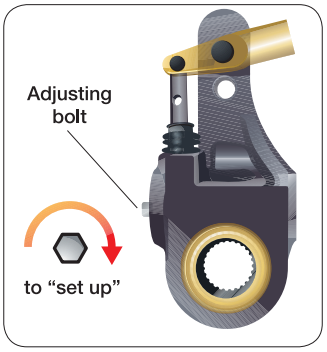
Be sure that the vehicle is safely parked with the wheels blocked. The air system should be at full pressure and the spring parking brakes released.

If you make an emergency adjustment of an automatic slack adjuster, be sure to record it on your daily post-trip inspection report. After adjusting, verify that there is sufficient clearance by re-measuring the free stroke.

Slack adjusters with hexagonal adjusting bolts

If the slack adjuster has a hexagonal (six-sided) adjusting bolt, the brakes may be set up by turning the adjusting bolt in a **clockwise** direction until the lining contacts the drum. Backing off the adjusting bolt by ½ a turn should restore running clearance. Backing off may take considerable force and you may hear or feel ratcheting. This is normal.





These two types of automatic slack adjusters both have hexagonal adjusting bolts.

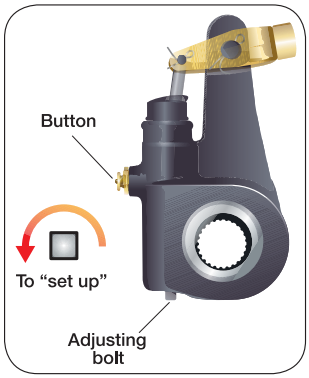
fast fact

There's no reliable substitute for physically checking brake adjustment.

Slack adjusters with square adjusting bolts

If the slack adjuster has a square adjusting bolt located at the bottom end of the body, **don't try** adjusting until a spring-loaded pawl that meshes with internal teeth is disengaged. These units have a ¾ inch hexagonal (hex) cap located on the slack adjuster body. Some of these hex caps are equipped with a round "button" that can be pried up approximately 1/32 of an inch (.75 mm) and held, using a screwdriver. On units that don't have the button, the hex cap, spring and pawl must be removed. With the spring and pawl disengaged, you can do the adjustment.

These brakes must be set up with a **counter-clockwise** turn until the lining contacts the drum. Turning the adjusting bolt ½ a turn clockwise will restore running clearance. Release the button or re-install the spring and pawl if you removed them.



This type of slack adjuster has a square adjusting bolt.

Air brake adjustment myths

There's some misinformation about air brakes that you may hear. These myths could be dangerous, if you believe them.

Myth #1:
Brake adjustment can be checked from the cab by making a full brake application and checking for an initial pressure drop of between 8 to 12 p.s.i. (55.2 to 82.8 kPa). The assumption is that as the brake chambers stroke further and further, that more air volume will be required, and this should show up on the reservoir gauges.

Fact #1:
Modern trucks have very large air reservoirs, and even if all the brakes had excess pushrod travel, the pressure drop would not reach the 8 to 12 p.s.i. (55.2 to 82.8 kPa) range. Also, most truck reservoir gauges don't have fine enough markings to accurately estimate such pressure changes.

Myth #2:
A 90-degree angle between the centre of the slack adjuster arm and the chamber pushrod with the brakes applied is a good indication that the brake is adjusted correctly.

Fact #2:
The 90-degree angle is more dependent on the length of the chamber pushrod than on brake adjustment. Also, to prevent interference between the slack adjuster and suspension parts, some manufacturers will vary the angle up to plus or minus 10 degrees.

Myth #3:
A clockwise turn of the adjusting bolt on a manual slack adjuster will set up the brakes.

Fact #3:
Depending on the orientation of the slack adjuster on the brake assembly, the correct direction to set up the brakes may be clockwise, or counter-clockwise. On vehicles with tandem axles, it's common to find that one axle sets up with a clockwise turn, while the other requires a reverse direction.

Myth #4:
As long as the parking brake control valve is open and the trailer supply valve is open (charged), spring brakes are off and slack adjustment can be checked.

Fact #4:
Some parking brake control valves and trailer supply valves will remain in the open position with as little as 20 p.s.i. (138 kPa) system air pressure. Yet the spring brakes may be partially or fully applied. For this reason, make sure system air pressure is at least 90 to 100 p.s.i. (620 to 690 kPa)and all parking brakes are released before checking brake adjustment.

Myth #5:
Replacing automatic slack adjusters with manual slack adjusters better ensures that the brakes are kept properly adjusted.

Fact #5:
Automatic slack adjusters, as the name implies, automatically adjust for brake wear as the brakes are used. Manual slack adjusters don't adjust for brake wear until they are manually adjusted. A Transport Canada study showed that vehicles with manual slack adjusters were put out-of-service at a rate 150 per cent higher than those with automatic slack adjusters, because there's a higher probability that a brake with a manual slack adjuster would be out of adjustment.

Under Yukon Commercial Vehicle Safety and Enforcement rules, it's illegal to retrofit manual slack adjusters on a vehicle manufactured with automatic slack adjusters.

Review questions

1. Why's it so critical to check slack adjustment?
2. Who's ultimately responsible for the brakes on a vehicle?
3. What are the dangers of operating a vehicle where the pushrod travel is barely within tolerance when the brake drums are cold?
4. What items should you carry to measure and adjust slack adjusters?
5. What's the first thing you should do when preparing to measure slack adjustment?
6. How much pressure should you apply to the foot valve when measuring slack adjustment using the applied stroke method?
7. How do you know you're turning the adjusting bolt in the correct direction when adjusting a slack adjuster?
8. What's an advantage of automatic slack adjusters?

10 vehicle and air brake pre-trip inspections

What you'll learn

After reading this chapter you'll be able to:

- ❏ explain the importance of conducting a pre-trip inspection
- ❏ explain how to perform an air brake system inspection
- ❏ list what to include in required reports
- ❏ complete a trip inspection report.

You're responsible

Vehicle manufacturers have done their best to design safe, efficient vehicles. It's the responsibility of the driver to ensure that all the safety features are operating properly.

To ensure that the vehicle you'll be driving is safe, you'll be expected to know how and when to conduct several types of inspections.

If you're applying for a commercial licence or heavy trailer endorsement, you'll be required to conduct a pre-trip inspection as part of your road test.

If the vehicle has air brakes, or if you're applying for an air brake endorsement, you'll be required to conduct a pre-trip inspection of the vehicle's air brake system. If tested on a vehicle equipped with manual slack adjusters, you'll also be required to demonstrate your ability to adjust a brake for proper pushrod travel. If your vehicle has automatic slack adjusters, you'll be asked to explain how to adjust manual slack adjuster brakes for proper pushrod travel.

fast fact

The National Safety Code (NSC) applies to most commercial vehicles and requires the vehicle you'll be driving to be inspected daily.

You're responsible for ensuring your vehicle is safe every time you drive it.

The pre-trip inspection is designed to help you do this.

fast fact

The NSC sets out minimum safety standards for all commercial carriers and drivers operating in Canada.

fast fact

Copies of the NSC regulations that apply in Yukon are available at Government weigh scales and at http://www.gov.yk.ca.

fast fact

You may be fined if you fail to carry a trip inspection report.

If you operate an unsafe vehicle, you may also be fined and/or your vehicle may be placed out of service.

Vehicle condition

You must determine that your vehicle is in safe operating condition before you drive it. This is part of your job and your responsibility as a professional driver. If you operate your vehicle when it's not safe, you're putting yourself and others at risk.

Taking the time for pre-trip inspections can prevent costly en route delays and reduce the chances of a crash caused by a mechanical failure.

All commercial vehicles that fall under the National Safety Code (NSC) must be inspected before they're used each day (pre-trip inspections) or at the end of the final trip of each day (post-trip inspections). These inspections are required under the *Motor Vehicle Act Regulations*.

Either you or another person specified by the carrier must do these inspections. Both you (the driver) and the carrier share the responsibility to ensure these inspections are done properly.

If you drive any of these vehicles, you must complete daily written inspection reports:

- bus, school bus, special activity bus, special vehicle or limousine with a seating capacity of more than 10 including the driver
- two-axle truck or truck-tractor with a licensed GVW greater than 14,600 kg
- truck or truck-tractor towing a trailer that has a licensed GVW greater than 8,200 kg.

Cargo securement

Under the NSC, all vehicles transporting cargo on a highway regardless of the gross vehicle weight must be inspected for cargo securement.

This includes all articles or materials carried by a vehicle, including those used in its operation.

You must inspect the vehicle prior to driving it to:

- confirm that the equipment used in the vehicle's operations (such as tailgate, tailboard, doors, tarpaulins and spare tire) are secured
- ensure that cargo doesn't interfere with safe operation of the vehicle
- ensure that cargo doesn't interfere with exiting the vehicle, and
- make any necessary adjustments to the cargo and cargo securement system.

Make this a part of your inspection routine.

You must also re-inspect the cargo securement system within 80 km from the point where the cargo was loaded, and on a regular basis during the trip at the earliest of:

- a change in duty status of the driver
- three hours of driving, or
- 240 km of driving since the last inspection.

You're required to record cargo securement inspections on your daily logs. You don't need to inspect cargo if it's sealed and you've been ordered not to inspect it, or if the cargo is inaccessible.

fast fact

All trip inspection reports must be given to the carrier within 20 days.

driving tip

To conduct a pre-trip inspection use:

- *a flashlight to inspect components*
- *tire pressure gauge to check tires*
- *chalk or other marker, and a ruler or other measuring device to check pushrod free stroke*
- *a tool to pry on the air brake chamber pushrod to check for free stroke*
- *a wrench to adjust air brakes*
- *a watch or other timing device to check air brake leakage and buildup time.*

You should also wear sturdy clothing, a hard hat and eye protection.

Written report requirements

Every written trip inspection report must:

- include the licence plate or unit numbers for the commercial vehicle and/or trailers
- specify all defects that may affect the safe operation of the vehicle, or
- state that no defect was discovered, if that was the case
- include the date and the vehicle's odometer reading
- be signed by the person making the report
- be completed prior to the first trip of the day.

If a trip lasts more than one day, new inspection reports must be completed no later than the first rest stop of every subsequent day of the trip.

If you couple to another trailer during the day, you must obtain and carry the trip inspection report completed for that trailer that day. If a trip inspection report for that trailer hasn't been done, you must complete one.

You, or the carrier's agent, must use your written trip inspection report to record all defects found during your trip inspection. For each defect you find, you must state on the form that either the defect has been corrected or that no correction is necessary.

When more than one driver is sharing a vehicle during a trip, only one of the drivers is required to sign the trip inspection report, provided there's no disagreement. All drivers must agree about which, if any, defects are to be reported and how these defects are to be reported (for example, have they been repaired or whether they need immediate repair).

If there's a disagreement over the defects to be reported, all drivers must sign and indicate the nature of the disagreement.

Pre-trip inspection report for your road test

During the pre-trip portion of your road test, your driver examiner will give you a copy of the trip inspection report form found on the next page.

This sample has been filled in as if a driver had found some minor defects during a pre-trip inspection. In this case, the driver also filled out the Carrier/Agent's Report. The report shows that all defects that could have made the vehicle unsafe have been fixed. The driver signed the report to say the vehicle is now safe to use. If the vehicle had no defects, the Carrier/Agent's Report section would have been left blank.

Your driver examiner will give you a blank form to complete and return during your test. Part of your grade will be based on how completely and accurately you fill out this trip inspection report.

fast fact

If any defect was identified and repaired during your pre-trip inspection, your report must note the defect and show a signature that certifies the defect was corrected.

If a defect does not affect you operating your vehicle safely, repairs may wait but the defect must still be recorded and it must be noted that the defect doesn't require immediate repair.

warning!

You may not be able to safely inspect all components on vehicles with low ground clearance or air suspension. The components that you can't inspect or access should be checked by a mechanic as part of regular preventative maintenance of your vehicle.

Pre-trip Inspection Test
SAMPLE REPORT

Yukon Government

2222222
DRIVER'S LICENCE NO.

TRIP INSPECTION REPORT

Type of Inspection: [X] Pre-trip Inspection [ ] Post-trip Inspection

Bus/Truck/Tractor # 409 **Odometer Reading** 87654 [X] Km [ ] Miles

[ ] I detected no defect or deficiency in this commercial motor vehicle.
[X] I found the following defects as noted below:

[ ] Air Compressor	[ ] Drive Lines	[ ] Load Security Devices
[ ] Air Lines	[ ] Emergency Equipment	[ ] Lubrication System(s)
[ ] Axles	[ ] Emergency Windows/Exits	[ ] Mirrors
[ ] Battery(s)	[ ] Engine	[ ] Mud Flaps
[ ] Belts/Hoses	[ ] Exhaust System	[ ] Oil Pressure
[ ] Body/Frame	[ ] Fire Extinguishers	[ ] Rear End
[X] Brakes/Adjustment	[ ] First Aid Kit	[ ] Recording Device(s)
[ ] Brakes - Service System	[ ] Fluid Leaks	[ ] Seats
[ ] Brakes - Parking System	[ ] Frame	[ ] Suspension
[ ] Charging System	[ ] Fuel System	[ ] Steering Mechanism
[ ] Clutch	[ ] Heaters/Defrosters	[ ] Transmission(s)
[ ] Cooling System	[ ] Horns	[ ] Wheels/Tires/Studs
[ ] Coupling Devices	[ ] Inspection Decal/Licence Plates	[ ] Windows/Visibility
[ ] Documents (insurance, permits, etc.)	[ ] Interior Lights	[ ] Wipers/Washers
[ ] Doors/Compartments	[ ] Lights/Reflectors	[X] Other

Trailer(s) #1 54 **#2**

#1	#2		#1	#2		#1	#2	
[ ]	[ ]	Air Lines/Glad Hands	[ ]	[ ]	Coupling - Kingpin	[ ]	[ ]	Load Security/Dunnage
[ ]	[ ]	Axles	[ ]	[ ]	Doors/Compartments	[ ]	[ ]	Mud Flaps
[ ]	[ ]	Body/Frame	[ ]	[ ]	Inspection Decal/Plates	[ ]	[ ]	Suspension
[ ]	[ ]	Brakes/Adjustment	[ ]	[ ]	Landing Gear	[ ]	[ ]	Wheels/Tires/Studs
[ ]	[ ]	Coupling Devices	[X]	[ ]	Lights/Reflectors	[ ]	[ ]	Other

Remarks: Adjusted left brake on rear axle
Replaced left rear taillight
Fuel gauge not working – not corrected

Dave Driver — SIGNATURE OF PERSON INSPECTING VEHICLE
January 10, 2011 — DATE
9:10 — TIME
[X] AM [ ] PM

Carrier/Agent's Report

[X] Above defects corrected.
[X] Above defects need not be corrected for safe operation of vehicle.

Dave Driver — SIGNATURE
January 10, 2011 — DATE
9:10 — TIME
[X] AM [ ] PM

Driver — TITLE

MV2930 (022009)

driving tip

By conducting a good pre-trip inspection, you can avoid dangerous situations and legal and job-related consequences.

Conducting a pre-trip inspection

The following pages show detailed pre-trip inspection procedures for a Class 1 tractor-trailer combination including air brakes, a Class 2 or 4 bus, a Class 3 single-unit truck including air brakes and a Class 4 taxi. The various pre-trip inspections are colour-coded for ease of reference.

If you're applying only for an air brake endorsement, you'll need to complete an air brake pre-trip inspection. The air brake inspection portions of the Class 1 and 3 pre-trip inspections are shown in red.

Study and practise the one that applies to the class of licence or endorsement you're working toward. Practise your pre-trip inspection on the vehicle you bring for your road test.

The procedures included here are guidelines for you to follow during your road test. Your vehicle may require you to check different items than those listed. Each pre-trip inspection has been given an allotted time. You should be able to complete your inspection within that time.

You may conduct a pre-trip inspection in any order, but you should get in the habit of conducting it in the same order every time to avoid missing items. The pre-trip inspections shown on the next pages show a good order to follow. They begin with checking under the hood, then walking around the vehicle to do a circle check to inspect certain items, then getting into the cab to check gauges, etc. The final step is to pull ahead slowly to check for brake and steering response.

Before you begin

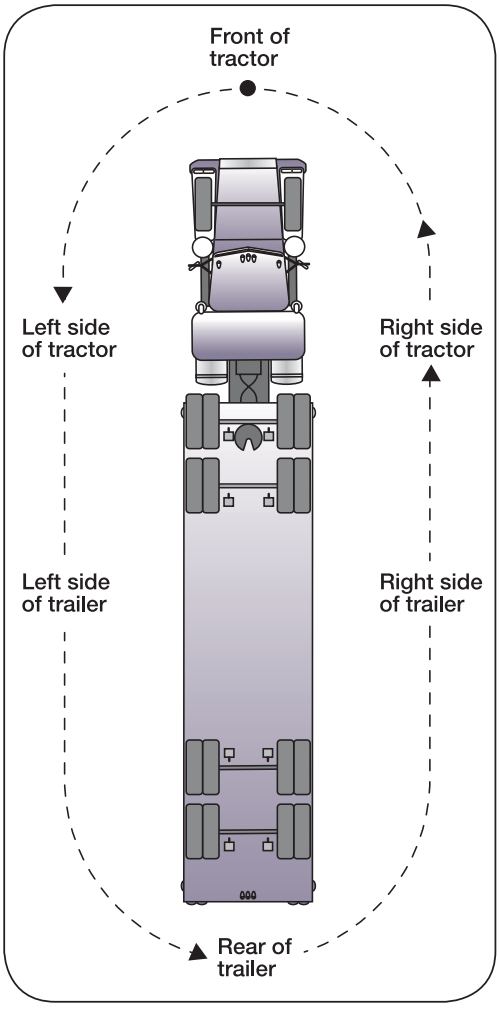
- Choose a safe location to park your vehicle away from traffic. Park on level ground if possible.
- Set the parking brakes. Shut off the engine.
- If it's a large commercial vehicle, block the wheels securely by placing a block in front of and behind the tire on the same axle of the tractor. Ensure the blocks will keep your vehicle from moving.
- You should walk in a counter-clockwise direction when you do the circle check, so you're facing oncoming traffic.

Tractor-trailer combination pre-trip inspection — Class 1

You should be able to complete this pre-trip inspection in less than 45 minutes.

You must demonstrate your ability to set up a slack adjuster during your pre-trip inspection test. Refer to **chapter 9, air brake adjustment** for more information on setting up slack adjusters.

If you're applying for a heavy trailer endorsement, follow the Class 1 pre-trip inspection, deleting the air brake inspection steps.



fast fact

As part of your road test, Class 1 pre-trip inspection, you'll be tested on your ability to complete a pre-trip inspection. If the vehicle has air brakes with manual slack adjusters, you'll also be tested on your ability to perform a brake adjustment.

You should assume that the vehicle hasn't been operated on the day of your test and that a pre-trip inspection hasn't been done. During the test, point to or touch the things you're inspecting, and tell the driver examiner what you're looking for: for example, "I'm checking the front clearance lights to make sure they work, the lenses are clean and not cracked, and for correct colour."

Before you begin:

- set the parking brakes
- shut off the engine
- block the wheels.

Class 1 pre-trip inspection

driving tip

It's often easier to spot leaks and body damage as you approach your vehicle than when you're right beside it.

fast fact

All reservoirs should be drained daily.

It can be hard to tell the supply reservoir from the primary and secondary reservoirs. Checking the air pressure gauges while draining the reservoirs may help you to tell which reservoir is which.

driving tip

As you're circling the vehicle conducting the pre-trip inspection, check each tire, wheel and mud flap. Also check suspension and frame, brake lines, brake chambers and slack adjusters. Measure air brake chamber pushrod travel.

Also remove the keys from the ignition to ensure that nobody tries to move the vehicle while you're checking underneath.

1. Under hood

As you approach, look under the vehicle for leaks.

Drain the reservoirs (for your road test, you're only required to drain the supply reservoir).

Check the following:

❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate and valid decal
❑ **Fluids**	• check fluid levels and condition (for example, colour, smell) including: engine oil, engine coolant, power steering fluid and windshield washer fluid
❑ **Belts**	• ensure any drive belts have good tension with no cracks, frayed cord or missing teeth
❑ **Hoses**	• ensure hose connections are secure with no kinks, leaks, cuts, abrasions or cracks
❑ **Compressor**	• ensure lines are securely attached with no kinks, leaks, cuts or abrasions • compressor is securely mounted
❑ **Steering components**	• check steering shaft, steering box, tie-rods, idler arm and connections • ensure they're secure • no bends or cracks
❑ **Suspension**	As you inspect the vehicle, check the suspension at all wheels: • ensure there are no cracked, missing or broken springs, torsion bars or walking beams • no loose, missing or broken U-bolts • if air suspension, no cracked, worn or inoperative airbags • mounts are secure
❑ **Frame**	As you inspect the vehicle, check the frame: • ensure there are no cracks, broken welds, holes or other damage to the frame including cross members and floor

Class 1
pre-trip inspection

❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	As you inspect the vehicle, check all tires, wheels and mud flaps: • check tires for inflation, signs of bulges, sidewall separation, cuts to cord, exposed or frayed belts • adequate tread depth • tire wear is even • duals aren't touching and nothing is stuck between them • check wheels/rims for cracks, missing pieces or bends • ensure wheel lugs and nuts are secure, not missing, broken or loose (rust streaks may indicate loose wheel nuts) • with spoke wheels, also check that rims are securely fastened to the spokes (polished or shiny areas at flanges or clamps may indicate rim slippage from loose fasteners) • check wheel hub oil level by viewing through sight glass (if present) • check that mud flaps are secure • mud flaps don't rub tires
❑ **Foundation brakes**	As you inspect the vehicle, check each foundation brake including brake chambers, slack adjusters, air hoses, s-cams, brake drums and linings: • brake chamber mounting and retention clamps are secure • no signs of cracks, corrosion or holes • nothing will obstruct the mechanism • no audible air leaks • pushrod travel is within tolerance • check slack adjuster, s-cam and bushings for mechanical condition and wear • air lines are secure • no leaks, abrasions, cuts or cracks • no kinks • brake drums aren't cracked or broken • linings or drums not contaminated • lining thickness is within tolerance (if visible)

fast fact

A peace officer may place your vehicle out of service if drum brake linings are less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) thick or air disc brake pads are less than $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) thick.

Close and secure hood.

Close supply reservoir.

2. In cab

Turn ignition to the "on" position. Check the following:

❑ **Gauges/warning lights**	• check oil pressure warning light or gauge

Depress clutch, shift transmission to neutral and start engine.

Class 1 pre-trip inspection

While air pressure is building, check the following:

❑ **Air pressure gauges**	• check gauges to confirm that only the supply reservoir air was drained (if other reservoirs have lost pressure, this may indicate that a one-way check valve is not functioning)
❑ **Instrument panel**	Ensure that all gauges and warning lights are working properly, and that they respond properly as the engine warms up: • charge rate indicator or gauge — ensure voltmeter or ammeter works properly and the charge is good • oil pressure indicator or gauge — ensure that it indicates normal pressure soon after engine starts • coolant temperature indicator or gauge — check that indicator rises to normal operating temperature — light should go off after engine starts • fuel gauge — ensure it's working properly — indicates sufficient fuel • instrument lights — ensure they work
❑ **Windshield wipers/ washers**	• ensure wipers and washers work
❑ **Heater/defroster**	• ensure heater and defroster controls work including fan, in heater and defroster positions
❑ **Interior lights**	• ensure they work
❑ **Horns (air and electric)**	• ensure they work
❑ **Emergency equipment**	• warning devices — ensure they're in working condition • fire extinguisher (if required or present) — ensure the date on the label is valid
❑ **Four-way flashers**	• check that both indicators on dashboard work (the exterior lights will be checked later as part of checking the turn signals)
❑ **Seats, seatbelts**	• ensure driver's seat and seatbelt are adjusted for you • fastening devices are in working order and accessible

Class 1
pre-trip inspection

driving tip

On some air brake systems, one service reservoir may begin to fill first. When pressure reaches approximately 85 to 95 p.s.i., (586 to 655 kPa) the other reservoir will begin to fill, then pressure in both service reservoirs will build to full pressure.

Regardless of the type of system, pressure must build from 50 to 90 p.s.i. (345 to 620 kPa) within three minutes.

❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're adjusted for you and are clean and free of cracks
❑ **Windows/windshield**	• ensure they're clean and free of cracks and that they open and close
❑ **Documentation**	Ensure that all documentation is in the vehicle, valid and up-to-date including: • vehicle licence, registration and insurance (including trailers) • logbook (if required) • PMVI inspection report (if required) • PMVI inspection decal on windshield (if required)
❑ **Engine noises**	• listen for unusual sounds

Check that compressor stops pumping between 105 and 135 p.s.i. (724 and 931 kPa).

Release all parking brakes and charge trailer air system.

3. Air brake system test

Start lowering the air pressure by pumping the brake pedal.

Perform these steps:

1. Pump down to approximately 80 per cent of maximum pressure (for example, if maximum is 125 p.s.i., pump down to 100 p.s.i.). Pause and check that air pressure begins to build (to confirm governor cut-in pressure). In all cases, the governor must cause the compressor to cut in before pressure falls below 80 p.s.i. (552 kPa).
2. Pump down farther. Check that low-air warning device(s) activate at or above 60 p.s.i. (414 kPa).
3. Pump down farther. Check that trailer air supply valve closes when the highest reservoir pressure gauge reads between 20 to 45 p.s.i. (138 to 310 kPa).
   Note: Parking brake control valve may — or may not — also close.
4. Shut off engine.
5. Go to trailer. Check to ensure that trailer brakes have applied.
6. Go to the rear of the tractor. Disconnect supply and control line glad hands. Check that no air escapes from either the tractor or the trailer through the glad hands.
7. Go to cab. Make a foot brake application. Listen to ensure that no air escapes through either the supply line or control line.
8. Exit cab. Reconnect supply and control line glad hands. Also check trailer electrical connection, and that air and electrical lines aren't damaged, tangled, or chafing, and that there's sufficient slack for turns.

   Go to cab.

   Start engine.
9. Check that air reservoir pressure builds from 50 to 90 p.s.i. (345 to 620 kPa) within three minutes at a fast idle (1,000 to 1,200 r.p.m.).

Class 1
pre-trip inspection

driving tip

Carry a rag with you to wipe all lenses as you make sure the lights are working. Also use it to clean reflective tape to make sure it's visible to other road users.

fast fact

Typical emergency equipment on a commercial vehicle includes:

- *flags or flares*
- *first aid kit*
- *fire extinguisher.*

4. Circle check for lights

Turn on left turn signal, low-beam headlights and clearance lights.

Conduct circle check by walking counter-clockwise to face traffic. Be particularly cautious when you're walking with your back to traffic.

❑ **Lights**	As you inspect the vehicle, check all lights: • ensure they work • lenses are clean and not cracked • lenses are correct colour

1. Check left-turn signals, low-beam headlights, tail lights, licence plate lights and clearance lights.

Return to cab.

Turn off left turn signal. Turn on high-beam headlights and right-turn signal.

2. Check that right-turn signal and high-beam headlights are working.
3. Check that brake lights are working.

Turn off lights.

Release all parking brakes.

Turn off engine.

5. Mechanical circle check

Leave cab and begin circle check.

Left side of tractor

❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're securely attached
❑ **Steps and hand rails**	• ensure they're secure
❑ **Fuel tanks**	• ensure tanks, fuel caps and fuel lines are securely fastened
❑ **Exhaust system**	• ensure it's in good condition • no leaks • mufflers, pipes and shields securely fastened
❑ **Battery compartments**	• batteries securely fastened to battery compartment and battery compartments securely fastened • no corrosion on batteries • no battery leaks • battery cables secure
❑ **Storage compartments**	• ensure compartments are securely fastened • doors open and close properly • contents are secure
❑ **Body**	• check for body damage

Class 1 pre-trip inspection

❑ **Frame**	• check frame
❑ **Fifth wheel connection**	• plate is flush to the trailer apron (no daylight is visible between fifth wheel and apron) • ensure slider is locked and secure with sufficient space for trailer to turn without striking tractor • locking jaws are closed around trailer kingpin
❑ **Other type of trailer connection**	• ensure pintle hitch or ball hitch is not worn • locking mechanism is closed and secure • chains or cables (if equipped) have no stress cracks or weld breaks and are securely attached to truck and trailer
❑ **Suspension**	• check tractor rear suspension
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check tractor drive wheels
❑ **Cargo lift (if equipped)**	• fully retracted • securely latched • no leaks, or damaged or missing parts
❑ **Cab protector (if equipped)**	• secure to frame • free of damage
❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate

Left side of trailer

❑ **Load security devices**	• load is secured • adequate load security devices are in place and are tight
❑ **Landing gear**	• fully raised • no missing parts • crank handle is secured
❑ **Frame**	• check frame
❑ **Suspension**	• check trailer suspension including sliding axle assembly (if equipped)
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check trailer wheels
❑ **Trailer body**	• check for body damage

Class 1 pre-trip inspection

Rear of trailer

❑ **Load security devices**	• load is secured • adequate load security devices are in place and are tight
❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate and valid decal

Open trailer rear doors (if applicable).

❑ **Cargo**	• load is secured • adequate load security devices are in place and are tight
❑ **Trailer doors/ lift/ tailgate**	• doors are securely mounted • securely closed or latched • lift is fully retracted • lift has no leaks, damage or missing parts

driving tip

Make sure the load you're carrying is secure.

Right side of trailer

❑ **Load security devices**	• load is secured • adequate load security devices are in place and are tight
❑ **Frame**	• check frame
❑ **Suspension**	• check trailer suspension including sliding axle assembly (if equipped)
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check trailer wheels
❑ **Trailer body**	• check for body damage • check for PMVI inspection decal

Underside of tractor and trailer

❑ **Foundation brakes**	• check brakes
❑ **Axle assembly**	• ensure there are no breaks, bends, cracks, holes, broken seals or leaks • securely fastened to tractor or trailer
❑ **Frame**	• check frame
❑ **Tanks**	• ensure any tanks such as air reservoirs are securely mounted
❑ **Suspension**	• check tractor and trailer suspension including trailer sliding axle assembly (if equipped)
❑ **Drive line**	• check u-joints for free play • check for leaks

driving tip

Check brake adjustment when you're underneath the truck and trailer.

Class 1 pre-trip inspection

Right side of tractor

❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're securely attached
❑ **Steps and hand rails**	• ensure they're secure
❑ **Fuel tanks**	• ensure tanks, fuel caps and fuel lines are securely fastened
❑ **Exhaust system**	• ensure it's in good condition • no leaks • mufflers, pipes and shields are securely fastened
❑ **Battery compartments**	• batteries securely fastened to battery compartment and compartments securely fastened • no corrosion on batteries • no battery leaks • battery cables secure
❑ **Storage compartments**	• ensure compartments are securely fastened • doors open and close properly • contents are secure
❑ **Body**	• check for body damage • check for valid PMVI inspection decal
❑ **Frame**	• check frame
❑ **Fifth wheel connection**	• plate is flush to the trailer apron (no daylight is visible between fifth wheel and apron) • ensure slider is locked and secure • locking jaws are closed around trailer kingpin
❑ **Other type of trailer connection**	• ensure pintle hitch or ball hitch is not worn • locking mechanism is closed and secure • chains or cables (if equipped) have no stress cracks or weld breaks and are securely attached to truck and trailer
❑ **Suspension**	• check tractor rear suspension
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check tractor drive wheels

Return to cab.

Check that air pressure is at least 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa).

Check that parking brakes are released.

driving tip

Use a flashlight to check the fifth wheel connection from both the left and right sides of the tractor, and from underneath the trailer.

Class 1
pre-trip inspection

driving tip

Check for air leakage with the engine off. This allows you to listen for leaks.

Make a full brake application (90 to 100 p.s.i., 620 to 690 kPa) and hold it for one minute:

- *Check to ensure that, after the initial pressure drop, air loss is not more than 4 p.s.i. (27.6 kPa) per minute. 6 p.s.i. (41.4 kPa) per minute with two trailers.*
- *Check that there are no audible air leaks.*

Set parking brakes. Remove wheel blocks.

6. Brake response, tug and steering wheel slack tests

Perform these steps:

1. Depress clutch. Shift transmission into neutral and start engine.
2. Ensure air pressure is up to operating range.
3. Release tractor parking brakes and apply the trailer brakes.
4. In low gear, gently tug against the trailer parking brakes. The brakes should prevent the combination from moving.
5. Apply the tractor parking brakes. Open the trailer supply valve to charge the trailer and release the trailer brakes.
6. In low gear, gently tug against the tractor parking brakes. The brakes should prevent the combination from moving.
7. Release all brakes.
8. Move the vehicle ahead slowly and gently apply the foot brake to check brake response.
9. Move the vehicle ahead slowly and gently apply the hand valve to check trailer brake response.
10. Move the steering wheel to check for excessive slack or lash (play).

driving tip

Make sure the spring brakes are released before making a heavy brake application to avoid compounding the brakes.

Note: If the trailer isn't equipped with air brakes, check that the trailer brakes will apply in a trailer breakaway situation. For most electric trailer brakes, this can be checked by disconnecting the trailer electrical cable. Then, pull the pin from the trailer breakaway switch housing, and check that the trailer brakes have applied. Then reinstall the pin in the trailer breakaway switch housing and reconnect the trailer electrical cable.

Inspecting double trailers

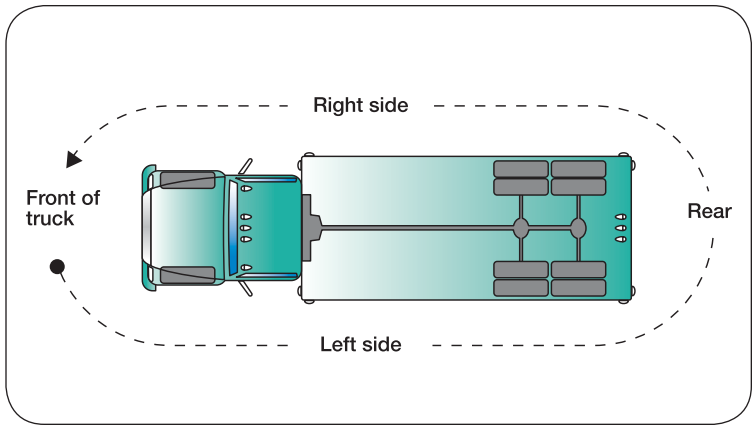
Inspect double trailers and their couplers and air brake systems in the same way as the preceding inspection.

Single unit truck pre-trip inspection — Class 3

The next pages detail the suggested pre-trip inspection of a truck with air brakes.

You should be able to complete this pre-trip inspection in less than 30 minutes.

If the truck you're using is equipped with air brakes, you must demonstrate your ability to set up a slack adjuster during your pre-trip inspection test. Refer to **chapter 9, air brake adjustment** for more information.



Before you begin:

- set the parking brakes
- shut off the engine
- block the wheels.

Class 3 pre-trip inspection

driving tip

It's often easier to spot leaks and body damage as you approach your vehicle than when you're right beside it.

fast fact

All reservoirs should be drained daily.

It can be hard to tell the supply reservoir from the primary and secondary reservoirs. Checking the air pressure gauges while draining the reservoirs may help you to tell which reservoir is which.

driving tip

As you circle the vehicle conducting the pre-trip inspection, check each tire, wheel and mud flap. Also, check suspension and frame, brake lines, brake chambers and slack adjusters. Measure air brake chamber pushrod travel.

Also, remove the keys from the ignition to ensure that nobody tries to move the vehicle while you're checking underneath.

1. Under hood

As you approach, look under the vehicle for leaks.

Drain the reservoirs (for your road test, you're only required to drain the supply reservoir).

Check the following:

❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate and valid decal
❑ **Fluids**	• check fluid levels and condition (for example, colour, smell) including: engine oil, engine coolant, power steering fluid and windshield washer fluid
❑ **Belts**	• ensure any drive belts have good tension with no cracks, frayed cord or missing teeth
❑ **Hoses**	• ensure hose connections are secure with no kinks, leaks, cuts, abrasions or cracks
❑ **Compressor**	• ensure lines are securely attached with no kinks, leaks, cuts or abrasions • compressor is securely mounted
❑ **Steering components**	• check steering shaft, steering box, tie-rods, idler arm and connections • ensure they're secure • no bends or cracks
❑ **Suspension**	As you inspect the vehicle, check the suspension at all wheels: • ensure there are no cracked, missing or broken springs, torsion bars or walking beams • no loose, missing or broken U-bolts • if air suspension, no cracked, worn or inoperative airbags • mounts are secure
❑ **Frame**	As you inspect the vehicle, check the frame: • ensure there are no cracks, broken welds, holes or other damage to the frame including cross members and floor

Class 3
pre-trip inspection

❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	As you inspect the vehicle, check all tires, wheels and mud flaps: • check tires for inflation, signs of bulges, sidewall separation, cuts to cord, exposed or frayed belts • adequate tread depth • tire wear is even • duals aren't touching and nothing is stuck between them • check wheels/rims for cracks, missing pieces or bends • ensure wheel lugs and nuts are secure, not missing, broken or loose (rust streaks may indicate loose wheel nuts) • with spoke wheels, also check that rims are securely fastened to the spokes (polished or shiny areas at flanges or clamps may indicate rim slippage from loose fasteners) • check wheel hub oil level by viewing through sight glass (if present) • check that mud flaps are secure • mud flaps don't rub tires
❑ **Foundation brakes**	As you inspect the vehicle, check each foundation brake including brake chambers, slack adjusters, air hoses, s-cams, brake drums and linings: • brake chamber mounting and retention clamps are secure • no signs of cracks, corrosion or holes • nothing will obstruct the mechanism • no audible air leaks • pushrod travel is within tolerance • check slack adjuster, s-cam and bushings for mechanical condition and wear • air lines are secure • no leaks, abrasions, cuts or cracks • no kinks • brake drums aren't cracked or broken • linings or drums not contaminated • lining thickness is within tolerance (if visible)

fast fact

A peace officer may place your vehicle out of service if drum brake linings are less than ¼ inch (6.4 mm) thick or air disc brake pads are less than ⅛ inch (3.2 mm) thick.

Close and secure hood.

Close supply reservoir.

2. In cab

Turn ignition to the "on" position. Check the following:

❑ **Gauges/warning lights**	• check oil pressure warning light or gauge

Depress clutch, shift transmission to neutral and start engine.

Class 3 pre-trip inspection

While air pressure is building, check the following:

❑ **Air pressure gauges**	• check gauges to confirm that only the supply reservoir air was drained (if other reservoirs have lost pressure, this may indicate that a one-way check valve isn't functioning)
❑ **Instrument panel**	Ensure that all gauges and warning lights are working properly, and that they respond properly as the engine warms up: • charge rate indicator or gauge — ensure voltmeter or ammeter works properly and the charge is good • oil pressure indicator or gauge — ensure that it indicates normal pressure soon after engine starts • coolant temperature indicator or gauge — check that indicator rises to normal operating temperature — light should go off after engine starts • fuel gauge — ensure it's working properly — indicates sufficient fuel • instrument lights — ensure they work
❑ **Windshield wipers/ washers**	• ensure wipers and washers work
❑ **Heater/defroster**	• ensure heater and defroster controls work including fan, in heater and defroster positions
❑ **Interior lights**	• ensure they work
❑ **Horns (air and electric)**	• ensure they work
❑ **Emergency equipment**	• warning devices — ensure they're in working condition • fire extinguisher (if required or present) — ensure the date on the label is valid
❑ **Four-way flashers**	• check that both indicators on dashboard work (the exterior lights will be checked later as part of checking the turn signals)
❑ **Engine noises**	• listen for unusual sounds

Class 3 pre-trip inspection

❑ **Seats, seatbelts**	• ensure driver's seat and seatbelt are adjusted for you • fastening devices are in working order and accessible
❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're adjusted for you and are clean and free of cracks
❑ **Windows/windshield**	• ensure they're clean and free of cracks and that they open and close
❑ **Documentation**	Ensure that all documentation is in the vehicle, valid and up-to-date including: • vehicle licence, registration and insurance • logbook (if required) • PMVI inspection report (if required) • PMVI inspection decal on windshield (if required)

Check that the compressor stops pumping between 105 and 135 p.s.i. (724 and 931 kPa).

Release all brakes.

3. Air brake system test

Start lowering the air pressure by pumping brake pedal.

Perform the following steps:

1. Pump down to approximately 80 per cent of maximum pressure (for example, if maximum is 125 p.s.i., pump down to 100 p.s.i.). Pause and check that air pressure begins to build (to confirm governor cut-in pressure). In all cases, the governor must cause the compressor to cut in before pressure falls below 80 p.s.i. (552 kPa).
2. Pump down farther. Check that low-air warning device(s) activate at or above 60 p.s.i. (414 kPa).
3. Pump down to below 50 p.s.i. (345 kPa).
4. Rebuild air pressure. Check that air pressure builds from 50 to 90 p.s.i. (345 to 620 kPa) within three minutes at fast idle (1,000 to 1,200 r.p.m.).
5. Release spring parking brakes (if they had previously applied).

driving tip

On some air brake systems, one service reservoir may begin to fill first. When pressure reaches approximately 85 to 95 p.s.i. (586 to 655 kPa), the other reservoir will begin to fill, then pressure in both service reservoirs will build to full pressure.

Regardless of the type of system, pressure must build from 50 to 90 p.s.i. (345 to 620 kPa) within three minutes.

4. Circle check for lights

Turn on left turn signal, low-beam headlights, and clearance lights.

- Conduct circle check by walking counter-clockwise to face traffic. Be particularly cautious when you're walking with your back to traffic.

❑ **Lights**	As you inspect the vehicle, check all lights: • ensure they work • lenses are clean and not cracked • lenses are correct colour

driving tip

Carry a rag with you to wipe all lenses as you make sure the lights are working.

Class 3 pre-trip inspection

1. Check that left-turn signal, low-beam headlights, tail lights, licence plate lights, and clearance lights are working.

Turn off left-turn signal. Turn on high-beam headlights and right-turn signal.

2. Check that right-turn signal and high-beam headlights are working.
3. Check that brake lights are working.

Return to cab. Turn off lights. Turn off engine.

5. Mechanical circle check

Leave cab and begin circle check.

Left side of truck

❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're securely attached
❑ **Steps and hand rails**	• ensure they're secure
❑ **Fuel tanks**	• ensure tanks, fuel caps and fuel lines are securely fastened
❑ **Exhaust system**	• ensure it's in good condition • no leaks • mufflers, pipes and shields securely fastened
❑ **Battery compartments**	• batteries securely fastened to battery compartment and compartments securely fastened • no corrosion on batteries • no battery leaks • battery cables secure
❑ **Storage compartments**	• ensure compartments are securely fastened • doors open and close properly • contents are secure
❑ **Body**	• check for body damage
❑ **Frame**	• check frame
❑ **Load security devices**	• load is secured • adequate load security devices are in place and are tight
❑ **Suspension**	• check rear suspension
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check truck drive wheels
❑ **Cab protector (if equipped)**	• secure to frame • free of damage

driving tip

Check for air leakage with the engine off. This allows you to listen for leaks.

fast fact

Typical emergency equipment on a commercial vehicle includes:

- *flags or flares*
- *first aid kit*
- *fire extinguisher.*

Class 3 pre-trip inspection

driving tip

Make sure the load you're carrying is secure.

Rear of truck

❑ **Cargo doors/lift/ tailgate**	• doors are securely mounted • securely closed or latched • lift is fully retracted • lift has no leaks, or damaged or missing parts
❑ **Cargo**	• load is secured • adequate load security devices are in place and are tight
❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate

Underside of rear of truck

❑ **Foundation brakes**	• check truck brakes
❑ **Axle assembly**	• ensure there are no breaks, bends, cracks, holes, broken seals or leaks • securely fastened to truck
❑ **Drive line**	• check u-joints for free play • check for leaks
❑ **Frame**	• check frame for damage or loose or missing cross members • no holes, bends, cracks or weld separations

Right side of truck

❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they are securely attached
❑ **Steps and hand rails**	• ensure they're secure
❑ **Fuel tanks**	• ensure tanks, fuel caps and fuel lines are securely fastened
❑ **Exhaust system**	• ensure it's in good condition • no leaks • mufflers, pipes and shields securely fastened
❑ **Battery compartments**	• batteries securely fastened to battery compartment and compartments securely fastened • no corrosion on batteries • no battery leaks • battery cables secure
❑ **Storage compartments**	• ensure compartments are securely fastened • doors open and close properly • contents are secure
❑ **Body**	• check for body damage • check for valid PMVI inspection decal
❑ **Suspension**	• check rear suspension
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check drive wheels

Class 3 pre-trip inspection

driving tip

Make sure the spring brakes are released before making a heavy brake application to avoid compounding the brakes.

driving tip

Check brake adjustment when you are underneath the truck.

Return to cab.

Check that air pressure is at least 100 p.s.i. (690 kPa).

Check that parking brakes are released.

Make a full brake application (90 to 100 p.s.i., 620 to 690 kPa) and hold it for one minute:

- *Check to ensure that, after the initial pressure drop, air loss is not more than three p.s.i. (20.7 kPa) per minute.*
- *Check that there are no audible air leaks.*

Set parking brakes. Remove wheel blocks.

6. Brake response, tug and steering wheel slack tests

Perform these steps:

1. Depress clutch. Shift transmission into neutral and start engine.
2. Ensure air pressure is up to operating range.
3. In low gear, gently tug against the parking brakes. The brakes should prevent the truck from moving.
4. Release all brakes.
5. Move the truck ahead slowly and apply the foot brake to check brake response.
6. Move the steering wheel to check for excessive slack or lash (play).

Bus pre-trip inspection — Class 2 or Class 4

The next pages detail the suggested pre-trip inspection of a bus. If the bus is equipped with air brakes, you should also refer to the Class 3 pre-trip procedures to check the air brake system.

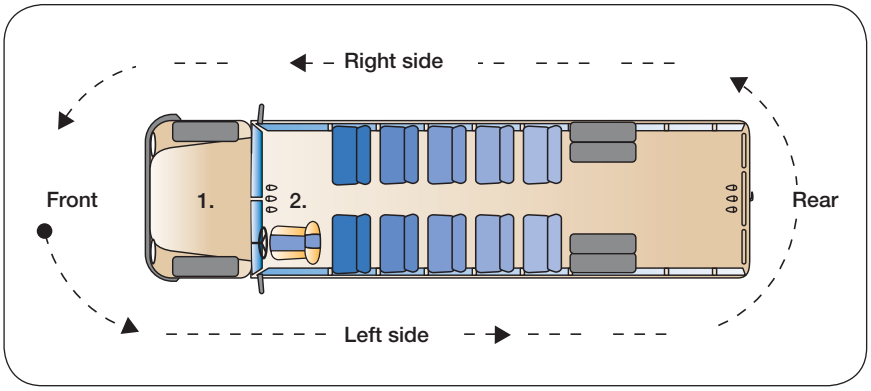
On some types of buses, you may not be able to access all of the components listed.

You should be able to complete a Class 2 pre-trip inspection in less than 30 minutes, or a Class 4 pre-trip inspection in less than 20 minutes.

If the bus is equipped with air brakes, you must demonstrate your ability to set up a slack adjuster during your pre-trip inspection test. Refer to **chapter 9, air brake adjustment** for more information on this.

driving tip

It is often easier to spot leaks and body damage as you approach your vehicle than when you're right beside it.



Before you begin:

- set the parking brakes
- shut off the engine
- block the wheels.

Class 2 or Class 4 pre-trip inspection

1. Engine compartment

As you approach, look under the vehicle for leaks.

Check the following:

❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate and valid decal
❑ **Fluids**	• check fluid levels and condition (for example, colour, smell) including: engine oil, engine coolant, power steering fluid, brake fluid and windshield washer fluid
❑ **Belts**	• ensure any drive belts have good tension with no cracks, frayed cord or missing teeth
❑ **Hoses**	• ensure hose connections are secure with no kinks, leaks, cuts, abrasions or cracks
❑ **Steering components**	• check steering shaft, steering box, tie-rods, idler arm and connections • ensure they're secure • no bends or cracks
❑ **Suspension**	As you inspect the vehicle, check the suspension at all wheels: • ensure there are no cracked, missing or broken springs, torsion bars or walking beams • no loose, missing or broken U-bolts • if air suspension, no cracked, worn or inoperative airbags • mounts are secure
❑ **Frame**	As you inspect the vehicle, check the frame: • ensure there are no cracks, broken welds, holes or other damage to the frame including cross members and floor
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	As you inspect the vehicle, check all tires, wheels and mud flaps: • check tires for inflation, signs of bulges, sidewall separation, cuts to cord, exposed or frayed belts • adequate tread depth • tire wear is even • duals are not touching and nothing is stuck between them • check wheels/rims for cracks, missing pieces or bends • ensure wheel lugs and nuts are secure, not missing, broken or loose (rust streaks may indicate loose wheel nuts) • with spoke wheels, also check that rims are securely fastened to the spokes (polished or shiny areas at flanges or clamps may indicate rim slippage from loose fasteners) • check wheel hub oil level by viewing through sight glass (if present) • check that mud flaps are secure • mud flaps don't rub tires

driving tip

As you are circling the vehicle conducting the pre-trip inspection, check each tire, wheel and mud flap. Also check suspension and frame, brake lines, brake chambers and slack adjusters. Measure air brake chamber pushrod travel.

Also remove the keys from the ignition to ensure that nobody tries to move the vehicle while you're checking underneath.

Class 2 or Class 4 pre-trip inspection

❑ **Brakes**	As you inspect the vehicle, check each brake: • for leaks • for missing or loose brake parts • for brake lines with cracks or leaks

Close and secure engine compartment.

2. In cab

❑ **Seats, seatbelts**	• ensure driver's seat and seatbelt are adjusted for you • fastening devices are in working order and accessible
❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're adjusted for you and are clean and free of cracks
❑ **Windows/windshield**	• ensure they're clean and free of cracks and that they open and close
❑ **Documentation**	Ensure that all documentation is in the vehicle, valid and up-to-date including: • vehicle licence, registration and insurance • logbook (if required) • PMVI inspection report (if required) • PMVI inspection decal on windshield (if required) • school bus permit (if required)

Turn ignition to the "on" position. Check the following:

❑ **Gauges/warning lights**	• check oil pressure warning light or gauge

Start engine.

❑ **Instrument panel**	Ensure that all gauges and warning lights are working properly, and that they respond properly as the engine warms up: • charge rate indicator or gauge — ensure voltmeter or ammeter works properly and the charge is good • oil pressure indicator or gauge — ensure that it indicates normal pressure soon after engine starts

fast fact

A peace officer may place your vehicle out of service if drum brake linings are less than ¼ inch (6.4 mm) thick or air disc brake pads are less than ⅛ inch (3.2 mm) thick.

Class 2 or Class 4 pre-trip inspection

❑ **Instrument panel (cont.)**	• coolant temperature indicator or gauge — check that indicator rises to normal operating temperature — light should go off after engine starts • fuel gauge — ensure it's working properly — indicates sufficient fuel • instrument lights — ensure they work
❑ **Windshield wipers/ washers**	• ensure wipers and washers work
❑ **Heater/defroster**	• ensure heater and defroster controls work including fan, in heater and defroster positions
❑ **Interior lights**	• ensure they all work including dome lights, courtesy lights and step lights
❑ **Horn**	• ensure it works
❑ **Four-way flashers**	• check that both indicators on dashboard work (the exterior lights will be checked later as part of checking the turn signals)
❑ **Emergency equipment**	• warning devices — ensure they are in working condition • fire extinguisher — ensure the date on the label is valid • first aid kit — check that the contents are adequate
❑ **Engine noises**	• listen for unusual sounds
❑ **School bus stop sign (if equipped)**	• ensure that it works and is secure

Shut off engine. Leave key in the "on" or "accessory" position so that the lights may be turned on.

Class 2 or Class 4 pre-trip inspection

3. Circle check

Turn on left-turn signal, low-beam headlights, clearance lights and school bus lights.

- Conduct circle check by walking counter-clockwise to face traffic. Be particularly cautious when you're walking with your back to traffic.

❑ **Lights**	As you inspect the vehicle, check all lights: • ensure they work • lenses are clean and not cracked • lenses are correct colour

driving tip

Carry a rag with you to wipe all lenses as you make sure the lights are working.

Left side of bus

❑ **Lights**	• check low-beam headlights, left front turn signal, clearance lights and school bus lights
❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're securely attached
❑ **Fuel cap**	• ensure fuel cap is securely fastened
❑ **Exhaust system**	• ensure it's in good condition • no leaks • mufflers, pipes and shields securely fastened
❑ **Battery compartments (if accessible)**	• batteries securely fastened to battery compartment and compartments securely fastened • no corrosion on batteries • no battery leaks • battery cables secure
❑ **Storage compartments**	• ensure compartments are securely fastened • doors open and close properly • contents are secure
❑ **Body**	• check for body damage
❑ **Frame**	• check frame
❑ **Suspension**	• check bus rear suspension
❑ **Drive line**	• check u-joints for free play • check for leaks
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check bus wheels
❑ **Brakes**	• check brakes

driving tip

As you circle the vehicle conducting the pre-trip inspection, check each tire, wheel, mud flap and brake.

Class 2 or Class 4 pre-trip inspection

Rear of bus

❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate
❑ **Lights**	• check left rear turn signal, clearance lights, school bus lights, licence plate light and brake lights
❑ **Axle assembly**	• ensure there are no breaks, bends, cracks, holes, broken seals or leaks • securely fastened to bus
❑ **Rear emergency exit door**	• check that it opens and closes from the outside

Return to cab.

Turn off left-turn signal and school bus lights.

Turn on high-beam headlights and right-turn signal.

Exit cab and go to right side of bus.

Right side of bus

❑ **Lights**	• check right-turn signals
❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're securely attached
❑ **Steps and hand rails**	• ensure they're secure
❑ **Fuel cap**	• ensure fuel cap is securely fastened
❑ **Exhaust system**	• ensure it's in good condition • no leaks • mufflers, pipes and shields securely fastened
❑ **Battery compartments (if accessible)**	• batteries securely fastened to battery compartment and battery compartments securely fastened • no corrosion on batteries • no battery leaks • battery cables secure
❑ **Storage compartments**	• ensure compartments are securely fastened • doors open and close properly • contents are secure
❑ **Body**	• check for body damage • check for valid PMVI inspection decal
❑ **Tires/wheels/mud flaps**	• check drive wheels
❑ **Lights**	• check right-turn signals, clearance lights and high-beam headlights

Class 2 or Class 4 pre-trip inspection

Remove wheel blocks, making sure that parking brakes are set.

Return to cab.

4. Passenger compartment check

❑ **Passenger seats**	• ensure all are securely fastened • no broken seat frames • check seatbelts (if equipped) • check for cleanliness
❑ **Passenger doors and entrances**	• ensure doors open and close properly • ensure step lights are working properly • hand rails are secure
❑ **Windows**	• ensure emergency windows are secure
❑ **Emergency exits**	• ensure emergency exits are secure • open emergency exits (where feasible) to ensure that emergency alarm sounds

Start engine.

5. Brake response, tug and steering wheel slack tests

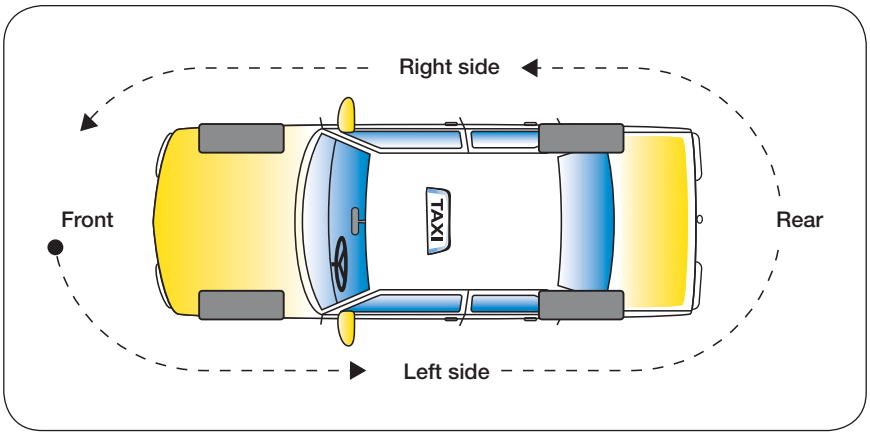
Perform these steps:

1. In low gear, gently tug against the parking brakes. The brakes should prevent the bus from moving.
2. Release brakes.
3. Move the bus ahead slowly and apply the foot brake to check brake response.
4. Move the steering wheel to check for excessive slack or lash (play).

Passenger vehicle pre-trip inspection — Class 4

The next pages detail the suggested pre-trip inspection of a taxi.

You should be able to complete this pre-trip inspection in less than 15 minutes.



1. Under hood

As you approach, look under the vehicle for leaks. Check the following:

❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate
❑ **Fluids**	• check fluid levels and condition (for example, colour, smell) including: engine oil, engine coolant, power steering fluid, brake fluid and windshield washer fluid
❑ **Belts**	• ensure any drive belts have good tension with no cracks, frayed cord or missing teeth
❑ **Hoses**	• ensure hose connections are secure with no kinks, leaks, cuts, abrasions or cracks
❑ **Battery**	• check for visible corrosion or leaks • terminal connections are secure • battery is securely mounted • battery fluid level (if accessible)
❑ **Engine compartment**	• check for fuel, oil or coolant leaks

Close and secure hood.

Class 4 pre-trip inspection

2. In passenger compartment

❑ **Seats, seatbelts**	• check driver's seat is adjusted for you and that seatbelt is in working order • check that all seatbelts are in good condition and work well • seats and passenger compartment is clean
❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they're adjusted for you and that they're clean and free of cracks
❑ **Windows/windshield**	• ensure they're clean and free of cracks and that they open and close
❑ **Documentation**	Ensure that all documentation is in the vehicle and is valid and up-to-date including: • vehicle licence, registration and insurance • logbook (if required) • PMVI inspection report (if required) • PMVI inspection decal on windshield (if required)

Start engine, check the following:

❑ **Instrument panel**	Ensure that all gauges and warning lights are working properly, and that they respond properly as the engine is started and warms up: • charge rate indicator or gauge — ensure voltmeter or ammeter works properly and the charge is good • oil pressure indicator or gauge — ensure that it indicates normal pressure soon after engine starts • coolant temperature indicator or gauge — check that indicator rises to normal operating temperature — light should go off after engine starts • fuel gauge — indicates sufficient fuel • instrument lights — ensure they work
❑ **Windshield wipers/ washers**	• ensure wipers and washers work
❑ **Heater/defroster**	• ensure heater and defroster controls work including fan, in heater and defroster positions

Class 4 pre-trip inspection

❑ **Interior lights**	• ensure they work
❑ **Four-way flashers**	• check that both indicators on dashboard work (the exterior lights will be checked later as part of checking the turn signals)
❑ **Horn**	• ensure it works
❑ **Engine noises**	• listen for unusual sounds

3. Circle check

Turn on left-turn signal and low-beam headlights.

Walk to the front of vehicle to begin circle check.

- Conduct circle check by walking counter-clockwise to face traffic. Be particularly cautious when you're walking with your back to traffic.

❑ **Lights**	As you inspect the vehicle, check all lights: • ensure they work • lenses are clean and not cracked • lenses are correct colour

1. Check that left-turn signal, low-beam headlights, tail lights and licence plate lights are working.

Return to cab.

Turn on right-turn signal and high-beam headlights.

❑ **Lights**	• check right-turn signals, high-beam headlights, licence plate light and brake lights
❑ **Mirrors**	• ensure they are securely attached
❑ **Doors**	• ensure they open and close securely
❑ **Exhaust system**	• ensure it's in good condition • no leaks • muffler is securely fastened
❑ **Fuel cap**	• ensure it's present and secure
❑ **Body**	• check for body damage

Class 4
pre-trip inspection

❑ **Tires/wheels**	• check tires for inflation, signs of bulges, sidewall separation, cuts to cord, exposed or frayed belts • adequate tread depth • check wheels for damage • ensure wheel lugs are secure, not missing, broken or loose (if visible)
❑ **Licence plate**	• check for licence plate and decal
❑ **Trunk**	• ensure trunk lid opens and closes securely • check spare tire and jack • ensure propane tank, if present, is secure and not leaking

driving tip

As you circle the vehicle conducting the pre-trip inspection, check each tire and wheel.

Return to cab. Turn off headlights and right-turn signal.

4. Brake response tests

Perform these steps:

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Shift transmission into low gear.
3. In low gear, gently tug against the parking brake. The brake should hold the vehicle.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Move the vehicle ahead and apply the foot brake to check brake response.

Note: Whenever possible, have an assistant check the brake lights for you.

Pre-hill inspections

It's important to understand when and how to do pre-hill inspections. Yukon has many mountainous roads. For your safety and the safety of others on the road, you must know how to perform these inspections properly, and do them frequently.

In some areas of the Territory, signs are posted in advance of steep or long downgrades.

You must stop the vehicle in the pullout area and inspect the vehicle's braking system before proceeding. Check load security at the same time.

Check that:

- the compressor maintains full reservoir pressure
- there are no audible air leaks
- glad hands and air lines are secure
- brake drums and hubs are not overheated
- pushrod travel is within limits.

Note: You must check pushrod travel even if your vehicle is equipped with automatic slack adjusters.

If your vehicle is equipped with hydraulic brakes, check before you start down the hill that:

- there's adequate pedal reserve
- brake drums aren't over-heated
- there are no hydraulic fluid leaks

fast fact

You may be fined for failing to stop to conduct a brake pre-hill inspection.

driving tip

While drivers of heavy non-commercial vehicles such as motorhomes and truck-RV trailer combinations are not required by law to stop, they may use these pullout areas to check their brakes, too.

In-service brake checks

You need to be aware of the condition of the vehicle's braking system at all times. You can do this by:

1. Checking air pressure gauges frequently.
2. Checking the dashboard to see if the low-air warning indicator is on.
3. Feeling the braking response when you make a brake application.

En route inspections

Your pre-trip inspection should ensure your vehicle is safe before you start your day's trip. As you drive, the condition of your vehicle may change. It's important that you inspect your vehicle at regular intervals so you can identify any problems as soon as possible.

As well, the NSC requires you to re-inspect the cargo securement system within 80 km from the point where the cargo was loaded, and on a regular basis during the trip at the earliest of:

- a change in your duty status
- three hours of driving, or
- 240 km of driving since the last inspection.

You must record cargo securement on your daily log. You don't need to inspect cargo if it's sealed and you've been ordered not to inspect it, or if the cargo is inaccessible.

Stop your vehicle in a rest area or pull over to a safe area on the side of the highway. Then, take a careful walk around your vehicle. Walk counter-clockwise so that you're facing oncoming traffic.

warning!

Don't continue driving a vehicle if there's smoke coming from an oil-filled hub, or where the hub is too hot to touch.

Check the following:

✪ **Tires and wheels**	• check tires for inflation • excessive heat build-up • signs of damage such as bulges, sidewall separation, cuts to cord, exposed or frayed belts • tire wear is even • duals aren't touching and nothing is stuck between them • check that wheels, wheel nuts and clamps are secure, not broken or loose or missing • signs of damage such as cracks or dents • rim slippage on spoke wheels
✪ **Brakes and hubs**	• check that brake drums and hubs aren't overheated • air lines are secure
✪ **Trailer coupling**	• ensure fifth wheel or other coupling device is securely fastened
✪ **Cargo and dangerous goods signs**	• check that blocks, bracing, ties or chains are secure • header board (if present) is secure • sideboards or stakes are secure • canvas or tarp (if used) is secure • cargo doors are securely latched • dangerous goods signs (if required) are securely fastened and in the appropriate places
✪ **Suspension and driveline**	• check that axles aren't leaking • check that springs, shock absorbers, struts, etc., are in good condition

driving tip

Commercial trailers with an overall width of 2.05 m or more are required to have reflective markings to the rear and sides.

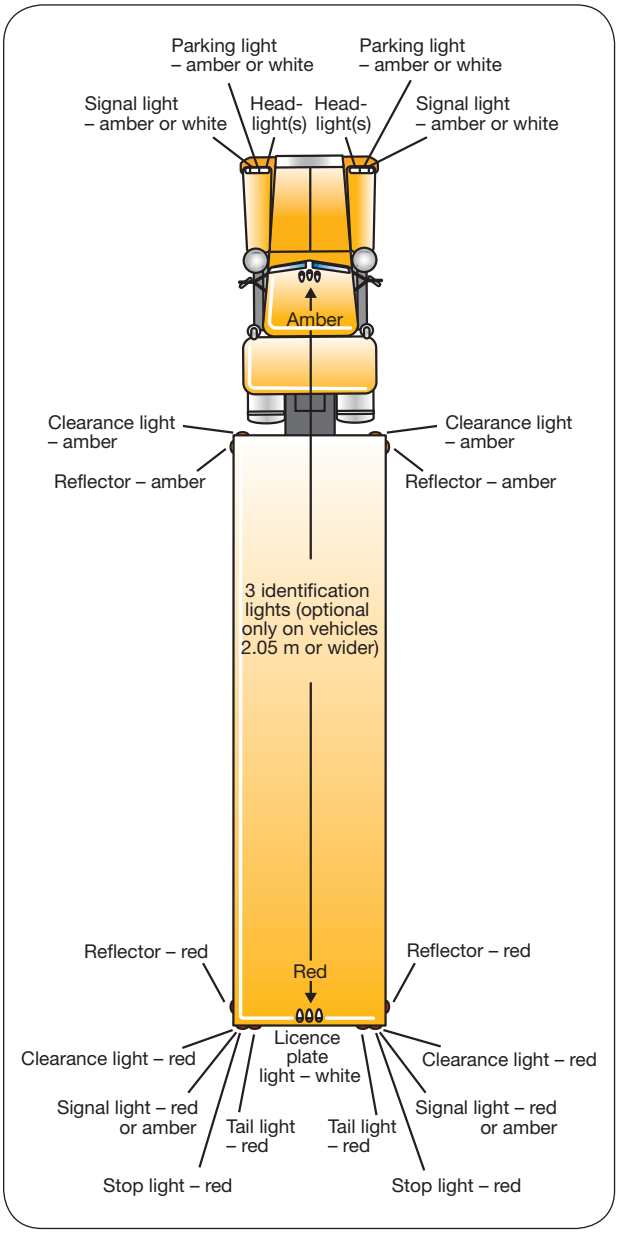
Reflective markings, in addition to the required lights and reflectors, help improve the visibility of large commercial vehicles.

Post-trip inspections

At the end of the final trip of the day you must inspect the commercial vehicle you've been driving and complete a trip inspection report. This report must note any defects you find during your inspection. Your post-trip inspection report may be added to the pre-trip inspection report you completed for the same vehicle earlier that day.

Lights and reflectors

Examine your lights and reflectors every time you inspect your vehicle to ensure they're in good condition. Check for proper colour, operation, mounting and visibility. Refer to the *Motor Vehicle Act Regulations* for the specific light and reflector requirements for your vehicle.



This illustration shows the general position and colour of lights and reflectors you will find on most vehicles.

Review questions

1. Why are drivers required to complete a trip inspection report?
2. Under what circumstance are both drivers of a vehicle required to sign a trip inspection report?
3. When and why are you required to complete a pre-hill inspection?
4. How often are you required to inspect your vehicle during a trip?
5. Regardless of maintenance policies, who's responsible for ensuring that the brakes of a vehicle are in working order before the vehicle is placed into operation?
6. What's the advantage of doing a regular pre-trip vehicle inspection?
7. Is it always necessary that drivers of large trucks stop and check their brakes if a sign requiring drivers to stop and check their brakes is posted?
8. How often should you inspect your vehicle?
9. How do you check for air leakage during an air brake pre-trip inspection?
10. How do you check that the compressor and governor are operating correctly?
11. How do you check the brake chamber pushrod travel?
12. What parts of the air brake system should you check at a brake check stop?
13. What components should be checked during an en route inspection?

11 signs, signals and road markings

This chapter is a handy reference section that gives examples of the most common signs, signals and road markings that keep traffic organized and flowing smoothly.

What you'll learn

After studying this chapter you'll be able to:

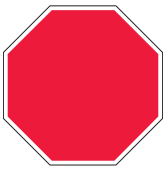
- ❏ describe the various shapes and colours used to identify different types of signs
- ❏ identify a wide variety of signs, signals and road markings that may be seen on the roads throughout Yukon.

fast fact

Signs specific to commercial drivers are shown in other chapters of this guide.

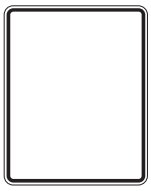
Signs

There are three ways to read signs: by their shape, colour and the messages printed on them. Understanding these three ways of classifying signs will help you figure out the meaning of signs that are new to you.

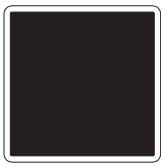


Stop

Yield the right-of-way



Shows driving regulations



Explains lane use

School zone signs are fluorescent yellow-green

Tells about motorist services

Shows a permitted action

Shows an action that is not permitted

Warns of hazards ahead

Warns of construction zones

Railway crossing

Shows distance and direction

Regulatory signs

These signs tell you about driving laws and regulations. It's an offence under the Yukon *Motor Vehicle Act* to disregard them. Drivers who don't follow the instructions on these signs may receive penalties.

Stop completely — continue only when safe

Give the right-of-way to other vehicles and crossing pedestrians

The fastest you may drive in good conditions

Indicates a lower speed limit ahead

Do not enter

Do not go this way — usually mounted on exit ramps

One way — gives direction of traffic on cross street

Winter tires or chains must be used when sign is displayed

Stay off this road during major disasters — road may be used only by emergency vehicles

Move into right lane if driving slower than regular traffic

Keep right unless passing

Passing lane ahead

Do not pass

Two-way traffic — keep right unless passing

Keep right of the divider

No stopping between here and the next no-stopping sign

No stopping during posted times between here and the next sign

No bicycle riding beyond this point

No right turn on red light

School, playground and crosswalk signs

These signs tell you the rules to follow in areas where you need to be extra cautious.

School zone — reduce speed when children are present

School zone — if the tab underneath only indicates the speed limit, that limit is in effect from 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. on school days

School zone — the tab underneath indicates the speed limit and the hours that it is in effect (in this case, the 30 km/h limit is in effect from 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. on school days)

School zone — 50 km/h limit is in effect from 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. on school days when children are on the roadway or shoulder

Playground nearby — be prepared to slow down

Playground zone — 30 km/h limit is in effect 24 hours a day every day

Pedestrian crosswalk — yield to people crossing

School crosswalk — yield to pedestrians — if there is a crossing guard, follow directions

Pedestrian activated crosswalk — prepare to stop if the light is flashing

Lane use signs

Signs showing which lanes may be used to turn or go straight are mounted above the lane or at the side of the lane before the intersection. If you're in a designated lane, you must follow the direction indicated by the arrows. You may not move into or out of a designated lane while you're in an intersection.

Turn left only

Continue straight only

Go through or turn left

Go through or turn right

Vehicles in both these lanes must turn left

Vehicles from both directions must turn left, no through traffic allowed

Turn control signs

Turn control signs are mounted directly above the intersection. You must follow the direction of the arrow.

Left turn only

Go straight only — no turns

Turn right or left only

No right turns during posted times

Parking signs

Parking signs let you know where and when you're allowed to park. You may receive fines or your vehicle may be towed (or both) if you park illegally.

Time-limited parking during posted times

Do not park here

Parking is not allowed during posted times

Parking only for vehicles displaying the disabled parking sign and carrying a person with disabilities

Reserved lane signs

A white diamond painted on the road surface marks reserved lanes. Reserved lane signs are also placed over or beside lanes that are reserved for certain vehicles such as buses or high occupancy vehicles (HOVs). Other HOV signs may give additional information on who may use the HOV lane.

Only buses in this lane

Only buses and HOVs in this lane — may show how many people must be in the HOV

Curb lane of cross street ahead is a reserved lane

Warning signs

Most warning signs are yellow and diamond-shaped. They warn of possible hazards ahead.

Winding road ahead

Hidden side road ahead

Sharp curve ahead — slow to suggested speed

Curve ahead — slow down

Merging traffic ahead

Road merges with another road — added lane to the right ahead

Right lane ends ahead

Divided highway ends ahead — keep right

Two-way traffic ahead

Road narrows ahead

Narrow structure ahead — often a bridge

Bump or rough road ahead

Road may be slippery ahead

Steep hill ahead — slow down

Stop sign ahead

Signal lights ahead

Signal lights ahead — prepare to stop when lights are flashing

Roundabout ahead

Pedestrian crosswalk ahead

School crosswalk ahead — this sign is fluorescent yellow-green

School bus stop ahead

Cyclists may be on roadway

Fire truck entrance ahead

Truck crossing ahead

Recommended exit speed — drive slower in poor conditions

Pavement ends ahead

Hazard or danger ahead — turn right or left

Watch for deer ahead

Opening bridge ahead

Watch for rocks on the road ahead

Object markers

Pay special attention to object markers — they are mounted on obstructions.

Obstruction — keep right or left

Obstruction — keep right

Obstruction — keep left

Construction signs

These signs warn of construction and maintenance work. You must pay attention to the warnings and obey the instructions on these signs. Obey traffic-control persons, travel within the posted speed, stay well back from all equipment and pass only when it's safe.

Detour ahead

Soft shoulder ahead — stay off

Construction ahead

Traffic-control person ahead

Crew working — obey posted speed limit

Survey crew — obey posted speed limit

End of construction zone speed limit

Follow the lighted arrow

Blasting ahead — follow instructions on sign

Information and destination signs

These signs give information about destinations, route numbers and facilities. Here are a few samples.

Destination sign — distances are in kilometres

Directional sign

Trans-Canada Highway route marker

Primary highway marker sign

Hospital nearby

Gas available ahead

Accommodation ahead

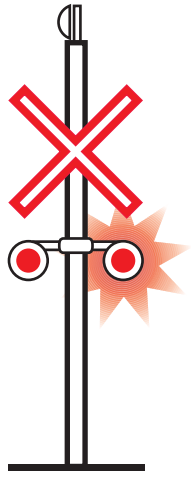
Travel information ahead

Railway signs

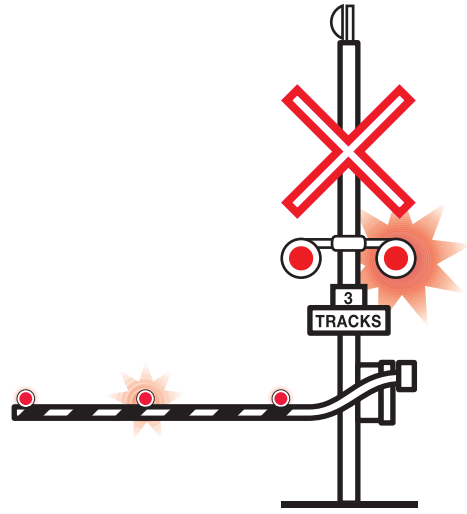
Public railway and highway crossings are indicated with signs or pavement markings and may also have mechanical or electrical warning devices for your protection. Watch for them and remember you must always yield to trains.

Railway crossing ahead — be prepared to stop

Railway crossing on side road ahead — be prepared to stop



Railway crossing — stop, then proceed when it's safe



Railway crossing — stay stopped until the gate is fully raised

Signals

Lighted signals are a way of controlling traffic flow.

Lane control signals

Lane control signals are placed over lanes to indicate which ones are open for driving.

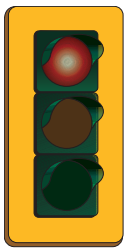
Do not drive in this lane

Move out of this lane and into a lane with a green arrow. If the lane control signals over all of the lanes are flashing yellow, slow down and proceed with caution

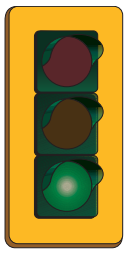
Drive in this lane

Traffic lights

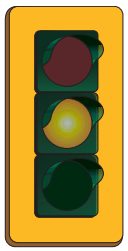
Traffic lights are used to help organize the flow of traffic. Generally, a red light means "stop," a yellow light means "caution" and a green light means "go." These signals can have slightly different meanings if they're flashing or if they're shaped as arrows rather than circles. In some places green arrows may flash and in others they may not.



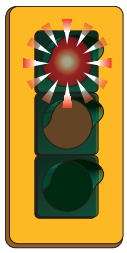
Steady red — stop — after coming to a full stop, you may turn right or turn left onto a one-way street unless a sign forbids it



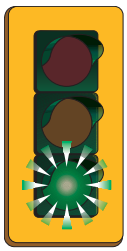
Steady green — continue if the intersection is clear



Steady yellow — slow down and stop before the intersection unless you can't safely stop in time

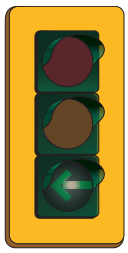


Flashing red — stop, then continue only when it is safe

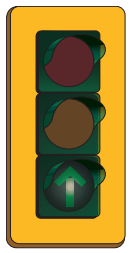


Flashing green — pedestrian-controlled light — go only if the intersection is clear

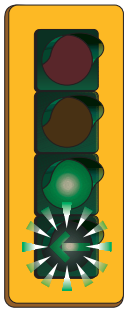
Flashing yellow — slow down and proceed with caution



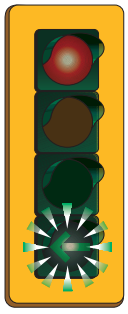
Green arrow — turn in the direction of the arrow



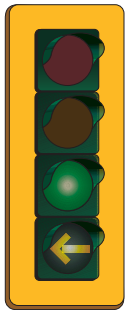
Green arrow — no turn permitted; go straight through only



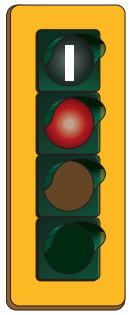
Flashing green arrow with a steady green light — may turn in the direction of the arrow or proceed



Flashing green arrow with a steady red light — left turn allowed; through traffic must stop for red light



Yellow arrow — advance left-turn signal is about to change, slow down and stop before the intersection unless you can't safely stop in time



Transit priority signal — steady white rectangular light — only buses may go on this signal

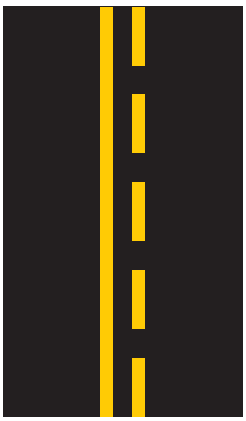
Road markings

Road markings give you warnings or direction. They're painted on the roadway, curbs or other surfaces. It's illegal to drive over freshly painted, wet pavement markings.

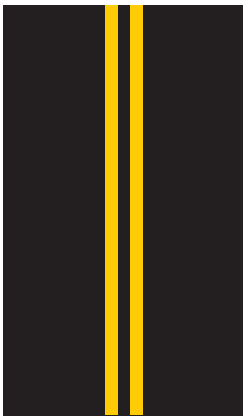
Yellow lines

Yellow lines divide traffic moving in opposite directions. If there's a yellow line to your left, there'll be traffic coming towards you on the other side of that yellow line.

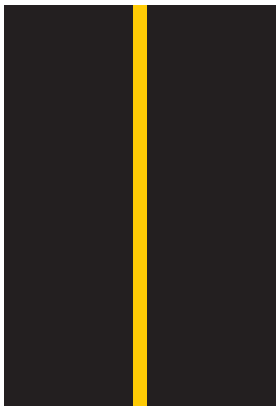
Broken line — passing is allowed when safe



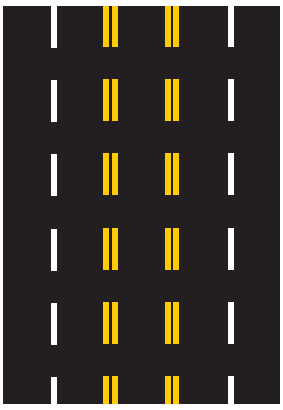
Broken line and solid line — you may pass only when it's safe and the broken line is on your side



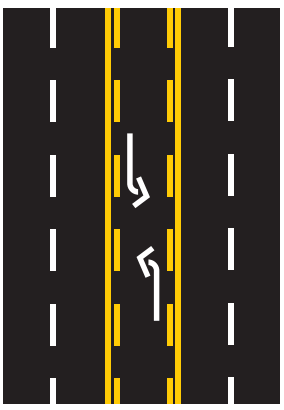
Double solid line — no passing allowed



Single yellow line — passing is allowed in some circumstances



Double broken yellow line — lane is reversible — lane control signal will show whether you may use this lane



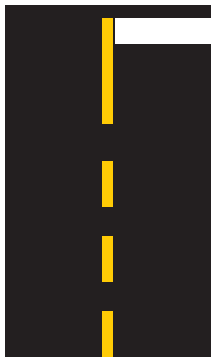
Two-way left-turn lane — drivers travelling in opposite directions share this lane for left turns — markings may be reversed (solid lines inside the broken lines)

White lines

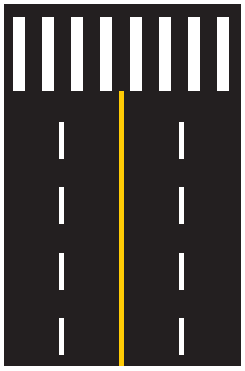
White lines are used to separate lanes of traffic moving in the same direction. White lines also mark crosswalks, stopping positions and the right shoulders of highways.

Solid line — do not change lanes

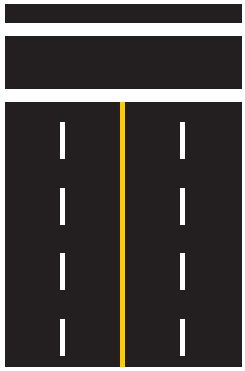
Broken line — lane changing is allowed when safe



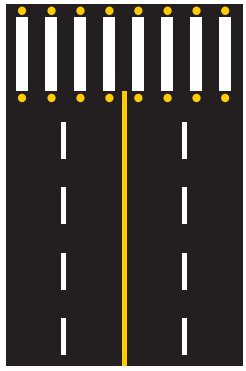
Stop line — stop before this line



Pedestrian crosswalk — stop for pedestrians in the crosswalk



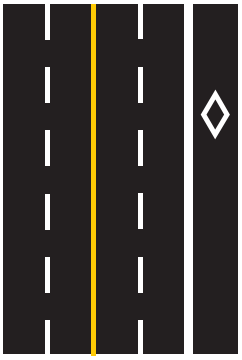
Pedestrian crosswalk — stop for pedestrians in the crosswalk



Pedestrian-activated crosswalk with illuminating lights in pavement — stop for pedestrians in the crosswalk

Reserved lane markings

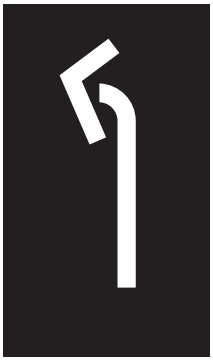
These markings set off lanes for HOVs, buses and bicycles. HOV lanes are marked with thick solid or broken lines and white diamond symbols.



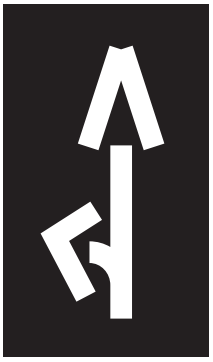
Reserved lane — additional signs or markings state which vehicles are allowed

Bicycle lane — for cyclists only — cyclists must travel in the same direction as the traffic beside them (the lane is marked with an outline of a bicycle and sometimes with a diamond)

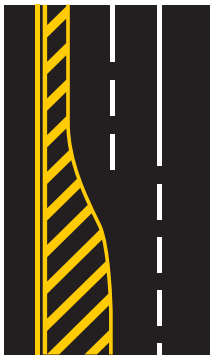
Other markings



Vehicles in this lane must turn left



Vehicles in this lane must go straight or turn left



Painted island — keep to the right and do not drive on or over

Review questions

1. What colour and shape is:
   - a warning sign
   - a stop sign
   - a yield sign
   - a school sign
   - a lane use sign
   - a construction zone sign
   - a railway crossing sign?
2. What should you do when approaching:
   - a flashing red light
   - a steady red light
   - a flashing yellow light
   - a steady yellow light
   - a flashing green light?
3. What can you do when approaching a flashing green arrow with a steady red light?
4. Name five regulatory signs and five warning signs.
5. What's the difference between a lane-use sign and a turn-control sign?
6. What must you do when approaching a railway crossing that displays flashing red lights?
7. Over which of the following roadmarkings are you permitted to pass:
   - a broken yellow line
   - a single yellow line
   - a broken line and solid line where the broken line is on your side
   - a broken line and solid line where the broken line is not on your side
   - a double yellow line?
8. What colour are the lines that separate lanes of traffic moving in the same direction?
9. What colour are the lines that divide traffic moving in opposite directions?
10. What must you do when approaching a stop sign? What must you do when approaching a yield sign?
11. When a speed limit tab is shown under a school zone sign, when's that speed limit in effect? What if the tab is under a playground zone?

12 for more information

Dangerous goods

Dangerous goods training is available through some colleges, driving schools and consultants who specialize in this field. Contact the ones nearest you for information about courses.

In case of an emergency

You're required to notify these people and agencies any time you're in control of dangerous goods and there is a spill or other type of dangerous occurrence:

- Yukon spill line at 867-667-7244, *or*
- local police.

After calling one or both of the above immediately, you must also notify:

- your employer
- the owner of your vehicle
- the consignor or owner of the goods.

For spills of Class 6.2 Infectious Substances, or for accidental release from a cylinder that has suffered catastrophic failure, call CANUTEC at 613-996-6666 (call collect).

It's the driver's responsibility to immediately take all reasonable emergency measures to repair, remedy or reduce any danger to life, health, property or the environment whenever there's a dangerous goods incident.

The Yukon spill line, 667-7244, is staffed 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. Call this number to report any possible spill of dangerous goods.

Federal contacts

Canadian Transport Emergency Centre (CANUTEC)

CANUTEC provides technical advice on dangerous goods. Staff will answer questions about the specific properties of different materials and the best methods for storing and cleaning up specific goods. CANUTEC will also refer you to companies who provide appropriate clean-up services.

- 24-hour emergency information: 613-996-6666 (call collect)
- Emergency cellphone number: *666
- Non-emergency number: 613-992-4624 (call collect)

Transport Canada

Transport Dangerous Goods is a division of Transport Canada that promotes public safety and monitors compliance with the *Transportation of Dangerous Goods Act and Regulations*. Inspectors make spot checks to check that dangerous goods cargoes are properly labeled and contained.

- Information: 204-984-3457

For smart ways to be fuel-efficient, contact Natural Resources Canada's Office of Energy Efficiency.

- Information: 1-800-387-2000
- Website: www.oee.nrcan.gc.ca

Commercial vehicle information

Carrier compliance, enforcement and permits

Government of Yukon weight scales:
Whitehorse 867-667-5729
Watson Lake 867-536-7400

Licensing information

Contact your nearest Yukon Motor Vehicles office to get information on licence classifications and requirements.

For general information call:

- Whitehorse, 667-5315
- toll-free throughout Yukon: 1-800-661-0408, ext. 5315

Commercial driver medical standards

For commercial driver medical standards and information on driver fitness call the Government of Yukon Driver Sanctions Coordinator at 867-667-3563

Acts and regulations

National Safety Code

Pamphlets on the National Safety Code and Safety Code regulations are available at Yukon weigh scales and at www.gov.yk.ca.

Information is also available during regular business hours from the Yukon National Safety Code office in Whitehorse.

- Information: 867-667-5066

Other acts and regulations

Brochures providing information on the various Yukon and federal acts and regulations that affect the commercial transport industry are available at all Yukon weigh scales.

Acts and regulations may also be viewed on the Government of Yukon website at www.gov.yk.ca.

Travel information

Road reports

The Department of Highways and Public Works provides daily road reports.

- Toll free 5-1-1
- Website: www.511yukon.ca

Weather

Environment Canada provides weather information by phone and on its website.

- 867-668-6061

For local, national and international weather information:

- Website: www.weatheroffice.com

Travelling into the U.S.

Get information on medical standards for driving commercial vehicles into the U.S. by contacting:

- Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration: 360-753-9875
  Suite 502 Evergreen Plaza Building
  711 South Capitol Way
  Olympia, Washington
  U.S.A., 98501
- Website: www.fmcsa.dot.gov/index.htm

Canada Customs

Provides detailed information on importation, restricted goods, tariffs, etc. Recorded information is available 24 hours a day. Customs officers are available during regular business hours.

- Toll free 1-800-461-9999
- web: www.cbsa-asfc.gc.ca

Reporting forest fires

- Toll free 1-888-798-3473

Taxi Permits

For permits or information on the city of Whitehorse vehicle for hire bylaw call bylaw services at 668-8317.

Metric conversion table

p.s.i. to kPa	
p.s.i.	kPa
1	6.89
2	13.78
3	20.68
4	27.57
5	34.47
6	41.36
7	48.26
8	55.15
9	62.05
10	68.94
15	103.42
20	137.89
25	172.36
30	206.84
35	241.31
40	275.78
45	310.26
50	344.73
55	379.20
60	413.68
65	448.15
70	482.62
75	517.10
80	551.57
85	586.04
90	620.52
95	654.99
100	689.47
105	723.94
110	758.41
115	792.89
120	827.36
125	861.83
130	896.31
135	930.78
140	965.25
145	999.73
150	1034.20

kPa to p.s.i.	
kPa	p.s.i.
5	0.72
10	1.45
15	2.17
20	2.90
25	3.62
30	4.35
35	5.07
40	5.80
45	6.52
50	7.25
60	8.70
70	10.15
80	11.60
90	13.05
100	14.50
150	21.75
200	29.00
250	36.29
300	43.51
310	44.96
350	50.76
400	58.01
415	60.19
450	65.26
500	72.51
550	79.77
585	84.84
600	87.02
650	94.27
700	101.52
725	105.15
750	108.77
800	116.03
850	123.28
900	130.53
950	137.78
1000	145.03
1050	152.29

Licensing information

Contact your nearest Yukon Motor Vehicles office to get information on licence classifications and requirements.

For general information call:

- Whitehorse, 667-5315
- toll-free throughout Yukon: 1-800-661-0408, ext. 5315

Booking road tests

- Whitehorse, 667-5315
- other communities, contact the territorial agents or territorial representatives

Yukon Territorial Agents

Dawson City Liquor Store, 993-5348

Faro Liquor Store, 994-2724

Haines Junction Liquor Store, 634-2201

Mayo Liquor Store, 996-2276

Watson Lake Liquor Store, 536-7311

Yukon Territorial Representatives

Carmacks Community Housing Office, 863-6411

Carcross Community Housing Office, 821-4281

Teslin Community Housing Office, 390-2024

Old Crow, VGFN Office, 966-3261

Ross River Community Housing Office, 969-2347

Website addresses

- Visit Motor Vehicles, www.yukon.ca/en/driving-and-transportation
- Road Safety information, www.roadsafety.gov.yk.ca
- Yukon road report, www.511yukon.ca

MV2677 (122011)